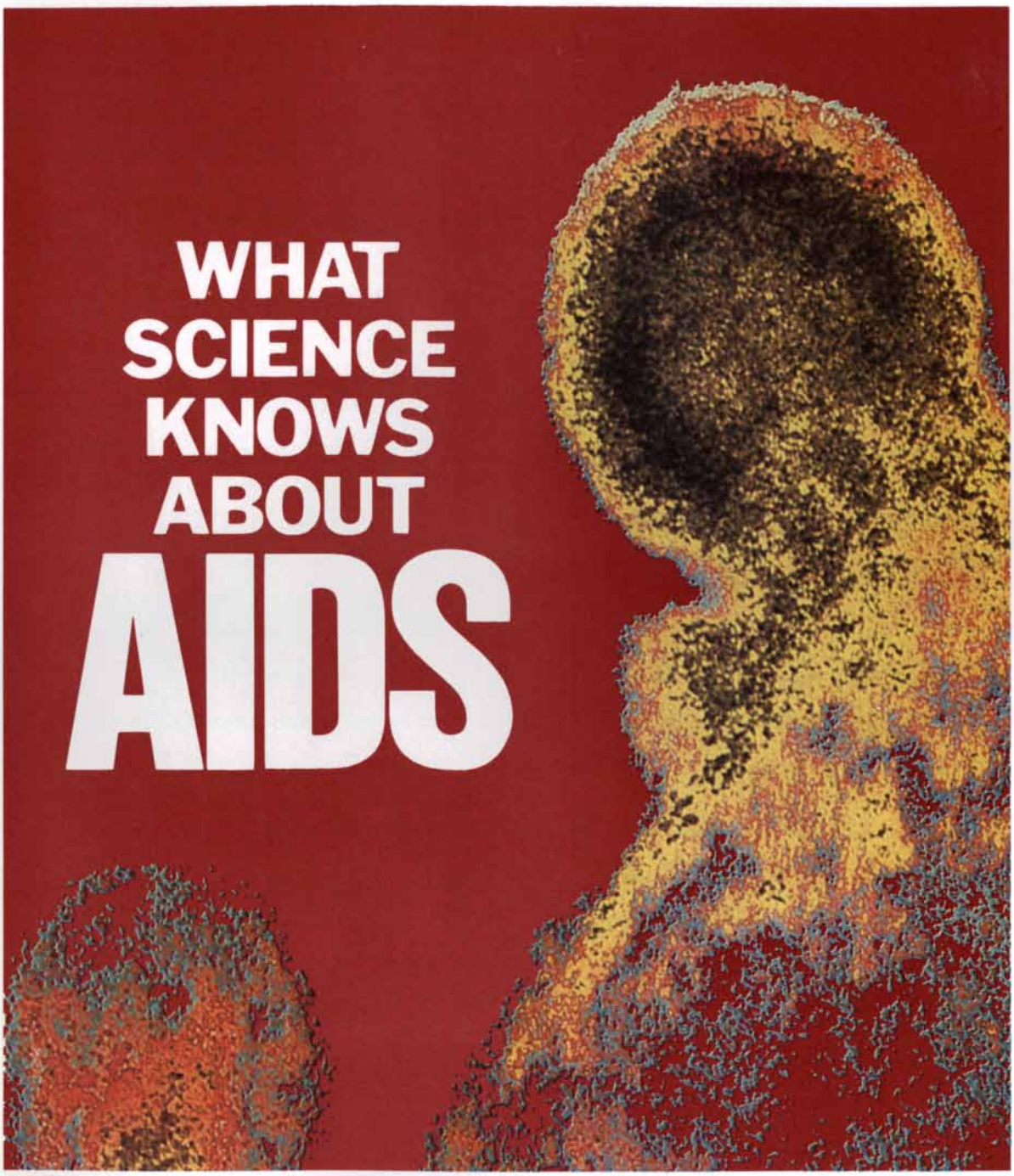
SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN

OCTOBER 1988
$2.95



A SINGLE-TOPIC ISSUE

In The Best Theaters, The Sound Is As Big As

The Picture.

From the people who brought you big screen television comes the sound to go with it. Introducing Mitsubishi Home Theater Systems. For the Mitsubishi dealer nearest you, call (800) 556-1234, ext. 145. In California, (800) 441-2345, ext. 145. © *1988 Mitsubishi Electric Sales America, Inc.*

MITSUBISHI®

SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN

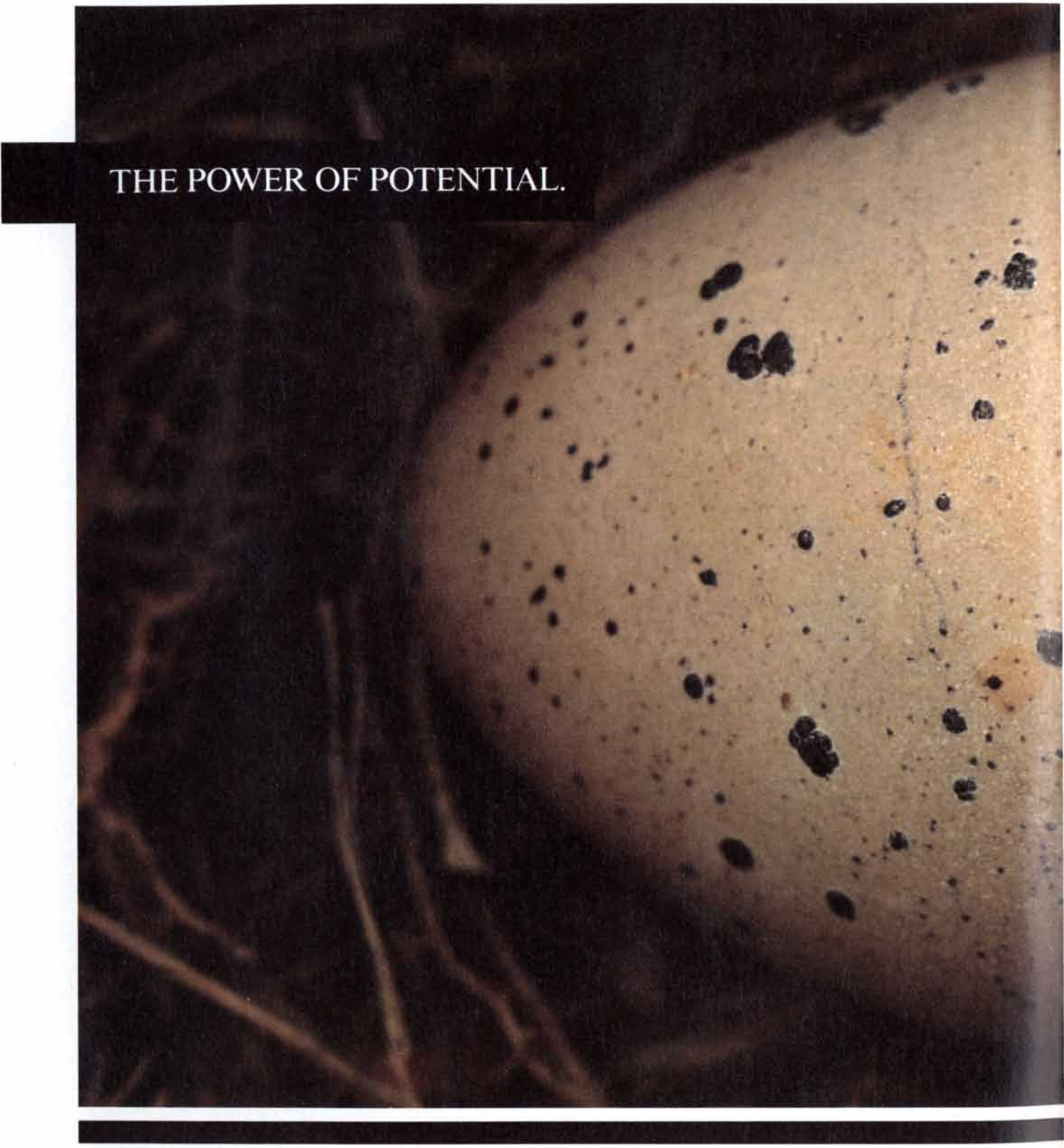
October 1988 Volume 259 Number 4

DEPARTMENTS

A new generation of precision materials. It is a resource powerful enough to transform entire industries.

At GTE, our Precision Materials Group can give you that power. To make your products stronger, faster, more efficient. And to bring breakthrough ideas to life.

Right now, for example, we are involved in a joint project with the Eaton Corporation to utilize a unique GTE ceramics technology in the manufacture

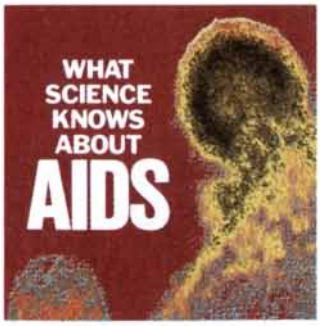


of a new breed of automotive engine components.

From aerospace to telecommunications to consumer electronics. In virtually any field that bases its strength on competitive technology and innovative application, our materials development capabilities can offer you the advantage of untapped, untouched potential. It's the power of a new manufacturing edge.

And at GTE, the power is on.

THE POWER IS ON



THE COVER of this single-topic issue of SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN shows a particle of the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) forming at the outer membrane of an infected cell. (The new particle is the circular form at the upper right.) HIV, the AIDS virus, can enter a cell and remain latent until it is activated to make new viral components. The particles then self-assemble in the process depicted on the cover. HIV causes a broad spectrum of diseases, of which AIDS is only the culmination.

THE ILLUSTRATIONS

Cover image by Charles Dauguet, Pasteur Institute

Page	Source
40	Lennart Nilsson, ©Boehringer Ingelheim International GmBH
42	Hans Gelderblom
43	George V. Kelvin
44	Johnny J. Johnson
45	Photothèque Institut Pasteur
46	Muhsin Özel
48	Muhsin Özel
53	Hans Gelderblom
54-55	George V. Kelvin
56	Hans Gelderblom (*top*), George V. Kelvin (*bottom*)
57-62	George V. Kelvin
65	Patti Murray, Animals Animals
66-71	Patricia J. Wynne
73	Linda M. Baron, The New York Times Photo Service
74-78	Joe Lertola
79	Abraham Menashe/ Science Source (*top*), Joe Lertola (*bottom*)
80-81	Joe Lertola
83	Robert Caputo
84-87	Joe Lertola
88	Robert Caputo
89	Murray Greenfield
91	Lynn Johnson, Black Star
92-94	Ian Worpole
95	Patricia J. Wynne
96-97	Ian Worpole
100	David Hockley, National Institute for Biological Standards and Control, England
102	George Retseck
103	George Retseck (*top*), Paul R. Clapham (*bottom*)
104	George Retseck
106	Carol Donner
108	George Retseck
111	S. Varnedoe
112-113	Hank Iken
114	Hiroaki Mitsuya
115-116	Hank Iken
118	Johnny J. Johnson
121-125	George Retseck
126	Johnny J. Johnson
129	Laurie Burnham
130	Harvey V. Fineberg
131	Laurie Burnham
132	©1988 Joseph T. Barna
133	Laurie Burnham
140-143	Michael Goodman
144-146	Andrew Christie
147	AP/Wide World Photos

Scientific American (ISSN 0036-8733), published monthly by Scientific American, Inc., 415 Madison Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10017. Second-class postage paid at New York, N.Y., and at additional mailing offices. Authorized as second-class mail by the Post Office Department, Ottawa, Canada, and for payment of postage in cash. Subscription rates: one year $24, two years $45, three years $60 (outside U.S. and possessions add $11 per year for postage). Postmaster: Send address changes to Scientific American, Box 3187, Harlan, Iowa 51593.

SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN

Established 1845

EDITOR: Jonathan Piel

BOARD OF EDITORS: Armand Schwab, Jr., *Managing Editor;* Timothy Appenzeller, *Associate Editor;* Timothy M. Beardsley; John M. Benditt, *Issue Editor;* Laurie Burnham; Elizabeth Corcoran; Ari W. Epstein; Gregory R. Greenwell; John Horgan; June Kinoshita; Philip Morrison, *Book Editor;* Tony Rothman; Ricki L. Rusting; Russell Ruthen; Karen Wright

ART Samuel L. Howard, *Art Director;* Murray Greenfield, *Associate Art Director;* Edward Bell, *Assistant Art Director;* Johnny Johnson

COPY: Sally Porter Jenks, *Copy Chief;* M. Knight; Michele Moise; Dorothy R. Patterson

PRODUCTION: Richard Sasso, *Vice-President Production and Distribution; Managers:* Carol Eisler, *Manufacturing and Distribution;* Carol Hansen, *Electronic Composition;* Leo J. Petruzzi, *Manufacturing and Makeup;* Carol Albert; Madelyn Keyes; Nancy Mongelli; Jody Seward; William Sherman; Julio E. Xavier

CIRCULATION: Bob Bruno, *Circulation Director;* Lorraine Terlecki, *Business Manager*

ADVERTISING: Peter B. Kennedy, *Advertising Director;* Laura Salant, *Sales Services Director;* Diane Greenberg, *Promotion Manager;* Ethel D. Little, *Advertising Coordinator*

OFFICES: NEW YORK: Scientific American, 415 Madison Avenue, New York, NY 10017; Lisa Carden, Kate Dobson, Robert Gregory. CHICAGO: 333 North Michigan Avenue, Chicago, IL 60601; Litt Clark, Patrick Bachler. DETROIT: 3000 Town Center, Suite 1435, Southfield, MI 48075; William F. Moore. ATLANTA: Reese & Associates. CANADA: Fenn Company, Inc. DALLAS: Griffith Group. PRINCETON: William Lieberman, Inc. WEST COAST: Frank LoVerme & Associates

INTERNATIONAL: AUSTRALIA: International Media Reps, (02) 977-3377. FRANKFURT: Infopac, 6172-347-25. GENEVA: Infopac, 41-22-43-9435. HONG KONG/SOUTHEAST ASIA: C. Cheney & Associates, (852) 5-213671. KOREA: Biscom, Inc., (822) 739-7840. LONDON: Infopac, (441) 734-1343. PARIS: Infopac, 14-722-1265. SINGAPORE: Cheney Tan Associates, (65) 2549522. TOKYO: Nikkei International, Ltd., (13) 270-0251

BUSINESS MANAGER: John J. Moeling, Jr.

PRESIDENT OF MAGAZINE DIVISION AND PUBLISHER: Harry Myers

SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC.
415 Madison Avenue
New York, NY 10017
(212) 754-0550

PRESIDENT AND CHIEF EXECUTIVE OFFICER: Claus-Gerhard Firchow

EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE: Claus-G. Firchow; *Executive Vice-President and Chief Financial Officer,* R. Vincent Barger; *Senior Vice-President,* Harry Myers; *Vice-Presidents:* Linda Chaput, Jonathan Piel, Carol Snow

CHAIRMAN OF THE BOARD: Georg-Dieter von Holtzbrinck

CHAIRMAN EMERITUS: Gerard Piel

The Great Lands' End Attache.

We've sold over 300,000 of them. Isn't it time we sold one to you?

This is a teaser photo of just one busy corner of our well-traveled Lands' End Square Rigger Attache—a legend in its own brief lifetime.

Note the texture of the canvas that never gives up; yet that bends and stretches to let you stuff far more into the case than it was ever meant to hold. Note the zipper ring that's merely the self-starter to the smoothest, longest-running zipper ever made by mortal man. Zi-i-ip it's open. Zi-i-ip, it's shut. Beautiful.

Like the people who carry it, it's a "piece of work."

Some of the world's most interesting people carry this remarkable little bag. Not merely because its padded handles are easy on the hands, or that it's carry strap spares your shoulder. No. They do so because it suits their every mood and need.

It accompanies young athletes on the way to the gym. It goes along on overnights. It rides commuter trains in both New York and Chicago; and it peeks out from under seats on the nation's airlines. And were you able to peek through the smoked glass windows on those stretch limos, you'd find our Lands' End attaches on the pinstriped laps of top executives. It's so much more practical than those expensive leather cases their spouses give them for Christmas.

The price: (are you sitting down?) just $39.50.

That's correct. Just $39.50, and you, too, can put our great little Lands' End attache to your own personal uses.

One thing more: if you look closely at our photo above you may notice a few hard-won marks of soil. Aficionados of our bag consider them, like the dinge on well-worn trench coats, to be proof to the world that you're getting the job done, at home and on the road, in a manner worthy of high commendation.

But, send for our free catalog or phone us for one. You deserve a more thorough look at all our luggage—and everything else Lands' End has for you.

All items GUARANTEED. PERIOD.® Our toll-free number: 1-800-356-4444. Call us between planes—we're always here!

LANDS' END® DIRECT MERCHANTS

Please send free catalog.
Lands' End, Inc. Dept. **Q-02**
Dodgeville, WI 53595

Name _____

Address _____

City _____

State _____ Zip _____

Or call Toll-free:

1-800-356-4444

©1988, Lands' End, Inc.

LETTERS

To the Editors:

In "The Neurobiology of Feeding in Leeches," by Charles M. Lent and Michael H. Dickinson [SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, June] there is a minor inaccuracy in a statement of comparative gluttony. Lent and Dickinson say: "Massive amounts of blood are ingested—from seven to nine times the weight of the leech itself, among the largest meals of any animal." A ratio of fed-to-unfed weight of nine to one will impress many readers, but that figure pales when compared to the performance of some blood-sucking arthropods.

The world record probably goes to female ticks of the family Ixodidae. These arachnids commonly attain a fed-to-unfed ratio of between 75 and 125 to one following a sojourn of seven to 14 days on the host. (Some authors have suggested that the upper limit may approach 200 to one.) Impressive as the latter figures may seem, even they account for only a fraction of the total blood imbibed by the tick. During the feeding period itself, excess fluid in the blood meal is constantly excreted, together with undigested hemoglobin in some species. It turns out that the gorged weight of the tick may represent as little as 20 percent of the weight of blood actually removed from the host. Thus the unfed female of the infamous *Dermacentor andersoni* (the vector of Rocky Mountain spotted fever and tick paralysis in North America), weighing in at only seven to 10 milligrams, imbibes approximately 4,000 milligrams of host blood! Incidentally, the ticks do not excrete this excess fluid by way of the Malpighian tubules (the analogue of the kidney in insects and ticks). Instead the salivary glands secrete this fluid back into the host's circulation, and most of the tick-borne pathogens transmitted to the host go along for the ride.

W. REUBEN KAUFMAN

Department of Zoology
University of Alberta

To the Editors:

The recent article on the historical aspects of Trembley and his work on hydras ["Trembley's Polyps," by Howard M. Lenhoff and Sylvia G. Lenhoff; SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, April] was very interesting. The discovery of this organism and some of its remarkable characteristics should, however, be attributed to Antony van Leeuwenhoek, the draper of Delft, who described it in a letter to the Royal Society of London on December 26, 1702, some eight years before Trembley's birth. Unfortunately, the description was forgotten, partly because of Leeuwenhoek's self-effacing nature and because he lacked the tenacity or the time and energy to follow up on his bewildering range of microscopic discoveries. It is very probable that Trembley learned of hydras when he moved to Holland (possibly from Christiaan Huygens), since Leeuwenhoek was always happy to share his discoveries.

TREVOR HYDE

Tecumseh, Ontario

To the Editors:

Dr. Hyde certainly has a point; we probably should not have deleted mention of Leeuwenhoek during the editing of our article. To quote from page 4 of our translation into English of Trembley's *Mémoires,* Trembley points out that hydras were first reported in 1703 by both Leeuwenhoek and an "anonymous Englishman":

"These animals were not hitherto entirely unknown. They are mentioned in the *Philosophical Transactions* of 1703.... The observations on these little creatures made by Leeuwenhoek and by an anonymous Englishman are recorded there. There is much consistency between the observations of these two gentlemen. Both noticed one of the most remarkable characteristics of the polyps, that is, their natural mode of multiplying. They were struck by it and certainly would not have failed to study it further had they possessed a substantial number of polyps." (Leeuwenhoek had only a few polyps and the Englishman just one.)

We have to take Trembley at his word when he says (page 94), "I was unaware of the discoveries made by the two naturalists when chance introduced me to the polyps." For one, Trembley's formal education had been not in the natural sciences but in mathematics. Furthermore, his books and correspondence show him to be highly deferential in giving credit to other observers. And like the great Leeuwenhoek he was extremely generous in sharing his discoveries. As Count William Bentinck wrote in 1744, Trembley "makes himself a *Point d'honneur* of being communicative, and concealing nothing of what he knows [about the polyps]."

Hyde suggests that Trembley might have learned of Leeuwenhoek's observations through Christiaan Huygens. But Huygens died in 1695, seven years before Leeuwenhoek's report and 15 years before Trembley was born.

Without meaning to detract in any sense from Leeuwenhoek's important observation, we would like to emphasize that although he described the budding of hydras and characterized them as animals, Leeuwenhoek did not realize that he had witnessed animal reproduction that was asexual. Trembley's contribution was to prove through numerous experiments that the polyps are, in his words, "an exception to an allegedly universal rule, that *there is no reproduction without copulation,*" a finding that flew in the face of the centuries-old so-called "general rules" on animal generation.

Leeuwenhoek is fully recognized today as the great microscopist and observer of his time. Our premise is that Abraham Trembley should also be seen as a major figure, whose elegant experiments on hydras marked the dawn of experimental zoology.

HOWARD M. LENHOFF

SYLVIA G. LENHOFF

To the Editors:

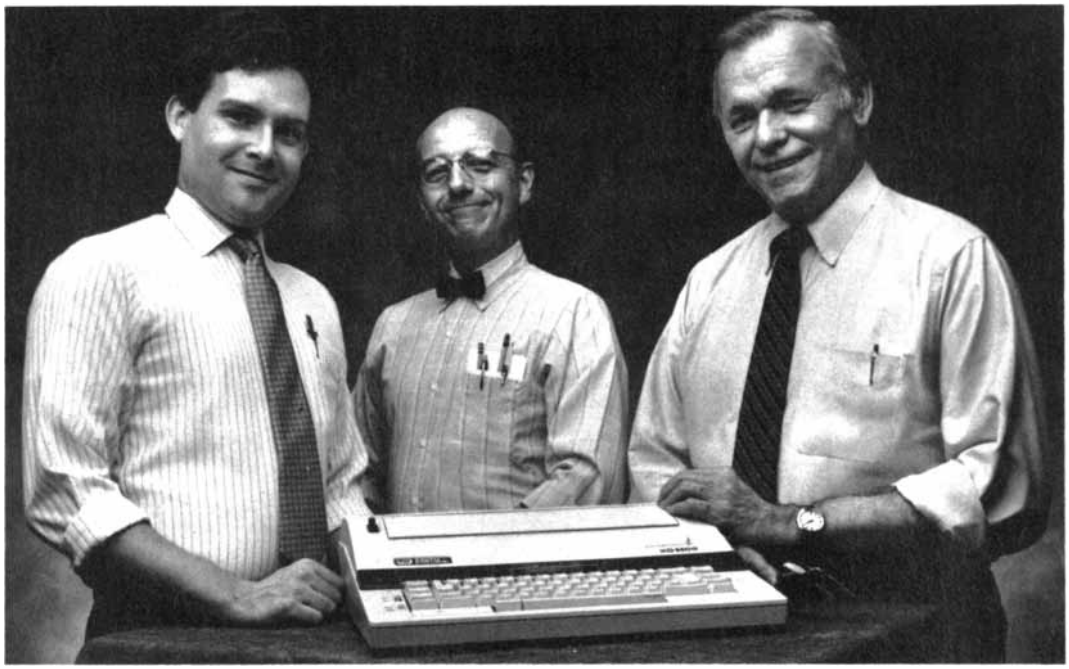
It is fascinating to note that the biological link Rose E. Frisch discusses in "Fatness and Fertility" [SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, March] was recognized long ago by the peoples of the southwestern Sahara and is currently applied in their premarital behaviors.

Among the Moors, including such groups as the Trarza, Tagant and Hod, brides-to-be are forced to drink huge quantities of camel's milk until they become obese, a condition that is considered to be both sexually appealing and an indication of wealth, since this special treatment demands up to 10 liters of milk per day. Logically, a female thus endowed would, in time of famine (an ever-present threat in the Sahara), be able not only to give birth to a normal child but also to breast-feed it for one or even two years, as is prescribed by the Koran. This process of natural lipidic investment may well be pre-Islamic, since similar practices still exist among Jews in Tunisia. They represent a living example of an evolutionary strategy against famine and the resulting threat to human fertility.

CLAUDE PAQUE

Rabat, Morocco

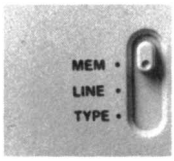
At Smith Corona, simplicity is the mother of invention.



Our engineers racked their brains so you won't have to.

We started out with a very simple idea.

To make electronic typewriters and word processors that have lots of great features but are very simple to use.



We make the simplest typewriters in memory.

So simple you don't have to keep one eye on your typing and one eye on the instruction manual.

So simple you don't need a degree in computer programming to operate them.

So simple they can even make a confirmed non-typist comfortable at the keyboard.

Call it human engineering if you like. Or call it ergonomics. Or call it plain old inspiration.

What we came up with is a line of remarkable typewriters that are sophisticated without being complicated.

In fact, they're unlike any other typewriters you've ever seen before... or used before...or muttered at before.

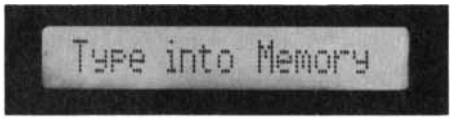
Take our new Smith Corona XD 5500. (Lots of people are going to.)

We call the XD 5500 the Memory Typewriter. You just may call it the simplest typewriter in memory.

It features a 7,000 character editable memory you can access with the mere flip of a switch.

Combined with the 16 character LCD display, you can proofread, correct and make changes before you ever put anything down on paper.

Of course, should you want to make changes on paper, we've made that simpler than ever too.



Give your typing a screen test.

On the XD 5500, as well as on every new Smith Corona typewriter, you'll find our new correcting cassette.

It's an easy-to-load, drop-in correction tape you can insert in seconds.

There are no spools to unwind. No complicated threading. No tangles.

So now correcting mistakes is as easy as making them.

We've reformed the correction system.

Add features like a Spell-Right™ 50,000 word electronic dictionary, WordFind,® WordEraser,® Full Line Correction and much more and you've got a typewriter that's not just incredibly simple to use, but simply impossible to pass up.

Of course, the same goes for every other Smith Corona typewriter and word processor as well.

Which is why we recommend that you hurry to your nearest store and try our machines yourself.

Obviously, they won't come to you.

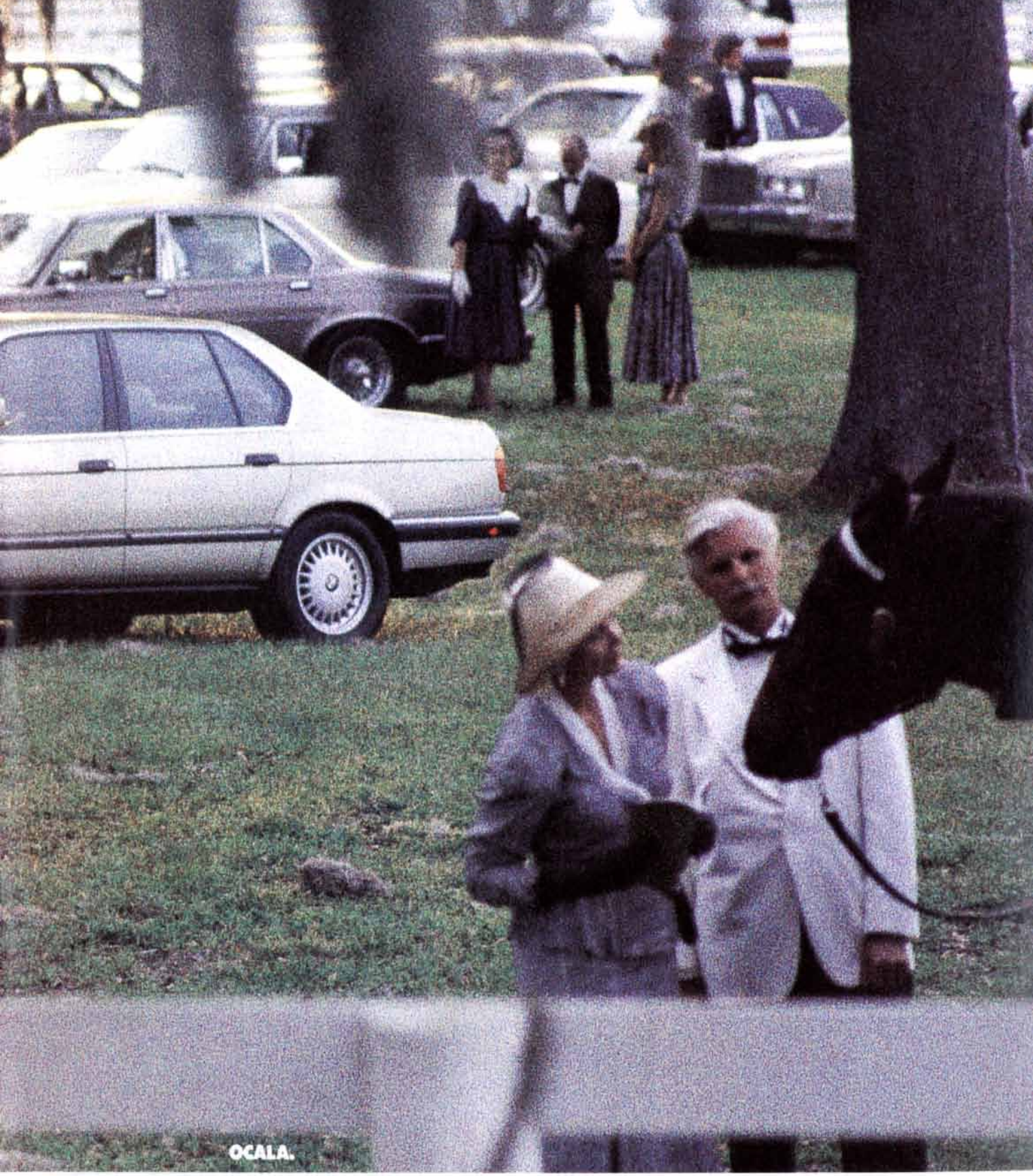
Yet.

SMITH CORONA®

TOMORROW'S TECHNOLOGY AT YOUR TOUCH

For more information on this product, write to Smith Corona Corporation, 65 Locust Avenue, New Canaan, CT 06840 or Smith Corona (Canada Ltd.), 440 Tapscott Road, Scarborough, Ontario, Canada M1B 1Y4.

THE BMW 7-SERIES. IT BRINGS NEW BLOOD TO A CLASS OF AUTOMOBILE THAT CAN CERTAINLY BENEFIT FROM IT. An eight-year, billion-dollar quest to rethink every aspect of the luxury car has produced what one industry observer deems "the world's first sports limousine." It is an astonishingly roomy, quiet sanctuary whose inventive amenities can even include a telephone as standard



equipment. Yet it moves with the force of a hurricane and handles with the exhilarating deftness of a true European sports car.

It is called the BMW 7-Series. And the well-to-do have paid the sincerest of tributes by buying it in gratifying numbers.

Which proves our contention that, contrary to proverbial wisdom, many of them would rather not be idle.

THE ULTIMATE DRIVING MACHINE.®

50 AND 100 YEARS AGO

SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN

OCTOBER, 1938: "In 1928, Dr. Hans Berger of Jena reported that it is possible to show and record a quite strange electrical rhythm of the human brain. Borrowing a vacuum tube, Berger built an amplifier powerful enough to magnify weak electric impulses a millionfold. This powerful amplifier, in the hands of Berger and later of many others, has disposed of the old, static picture of the brain. Today, a motion picture of the true, the dynamic brain can be exhibited. And already features of this cinema are being practically applied to common but heretofore completely baffling medical problems, such as epilepsy, man's fitful malady."

"Two hundred and four miles an hour is the speed at which a stretched rubber band snaps, as measured by ultra-high-speed motion pictures recently taken in the laboratory of Gustavus J. Esselen, Inc., consultants."

"It is interesting to consider what transatlantic flying boats may be like in a very few years. According to a paper by I. M. Laddon and T. P. Faulkner in the *Consolidator,* even the latest Boeing Clipper is but a forerunner of greater things to come. These authors predict: (1) an increase in size to a gross weight of 400,000 pounds and more; (2) 300 passengers, with baggage, mail, and express, and a range sufficient to cross any ocean non-stop; (3) speeds of over 300 miles an hour in the stratosphere."

SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN

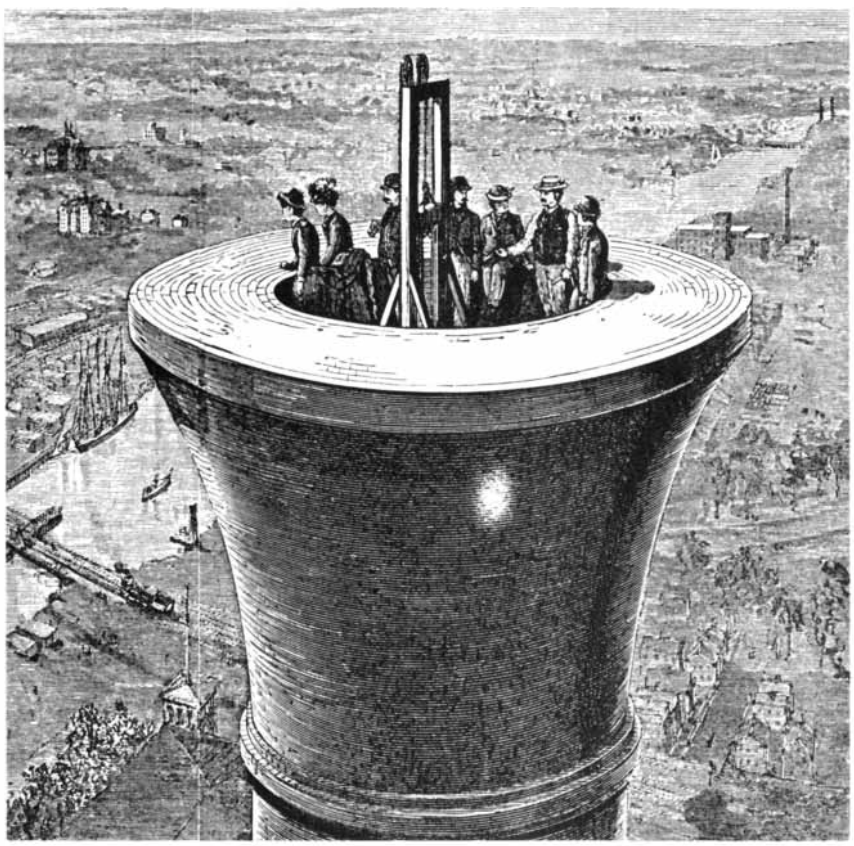
OCTOBER, 1888: "Professor Oliver J. Lodge has been endeavoring to manufacture light by direct electric action without the intervention of heat, utilizing for the purpose Maxwell's theory that light is really an electric disturbance or vibration. The means adopted is the oscillatory discharge of a Leyden jar, whose rate of vibration has been made as high as 1,000 million complete vibrations per second. The waves so obtained are about three yards long, and are essentially light in every particular except that they are unable to affect the retina."

"The only place in which amber has been found in paying quantities is in the Baltic Sea. In former years the production of amber depended principally on the storms occurring in the winter time, for when the sea was convulsed the amber lying on the bottom was thrown up on the shore; but human enterprise stimulated by the demand for amber has changed all this, and for the last twenty-five years various engineering appliances have been used for getting out the amber in the quickest and cheapest way."

"The buffalo has now become so scarce that the death of one is recorded as a matter of news in the daily papers. A Laurel, Montana, correspondent of the *Forest and Stream* writes that, on July 30, a buffalo bull came within 200 yards of a round-up camp at Rock Creek, about thirty miles south of the Yellowstone. Two cowboys at once started in pursuit, armed with revolvers, and after a chase of ten miles brought him down. He was so old and thin that even the hide was not worth saving."

"The way in which railroad officials keep track of their freight cars, which are run thousands of miles over other railroad lines, has no doubt excited the wonder of many. Nearly all the great roads employ a corps of what are known as 'lost car searchers' or 'tracers.' Every freight car is numbered and used for a certain purpose, and whether it be a 'gondola,' or flat open car, or a box car, it can be traced from one end of the country to the other. At last one great trunk-line road has dispensed with the searcher in favor of a large force of clerks, with the telegraph and telephone as auxiliaries."

"We illustrate in this issue the great chimney recently erected at Kearney, near Newark, N.J., by the Clark Thread Co. It possesses the distinction of being the tallest chimney in America, and the fourth tallest in the world. It is the highest one ever built for boiler furnaces; twenty-one boilers of 200 h.p. each will depend upon the great chimney, whose total height is 335 feet. It is believed that much more of the waste heat can be economized than is usual, as, owing to the great height of the chimney, a comparatively slight heat in the products of combustion will generate ample draught."



The highest chimney in the U.S., recently erected at the Clark Thread Works

Ever since the first phone call, we've been listening to the voices of tomorrow.

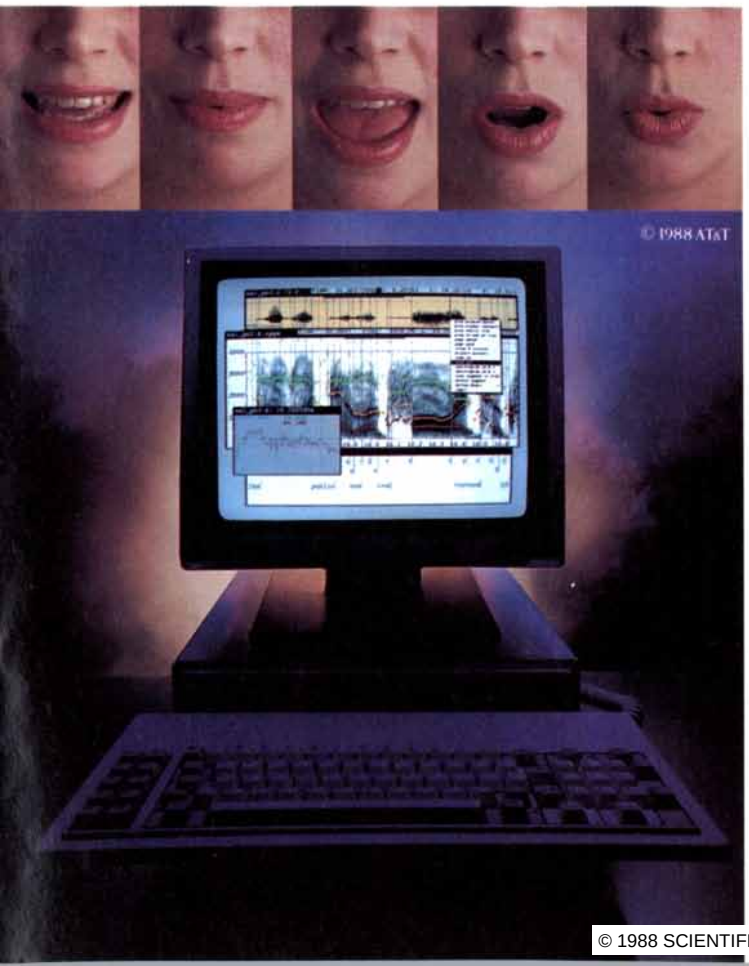
It started with the genius of Alexander Graham Bell. And from the beginning, AT&T has been committed to helping the people of the world communicate better.

We've been the world's most ambitious sound laboratory for more than a century. And the results speak for themselves—75 million times each business day.

Calls placed today over AT&T's Worldwide Intelligent Network are predictably clear. Noise, echo and static free. And our experiments in digital high fidelity transmission point to a future when your AT&T calls will ring truer still.

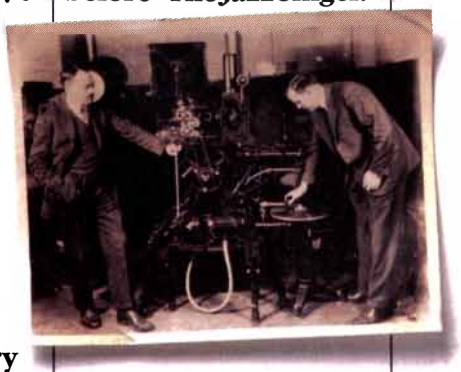
Because we've always believed that by improving the way things sound for the people of the world, we help bring them closer to one voice.

Funny, how the future seems to repeat itself.



1929
Sound Motion Pictures

AT&T brought sound to the motion picture "Don Juan"—the first full-length movie with a synchronized sound track—released a year before "The Jazz Singer."



Today
Cordless Clarity

Because AT&T sound quality is the industry standard, we've worked hard to achieve it in our cordless models. Today's AT&T cordless phones bring you clear sound which equals the quality you've come to expect from our corded models. The perfect combination of convenience and clarity.

Tomorrow
Interactive Synthetic Speech

Technology now exists which enables computers to "speak" words to us in any language that is entered on their keyboards—while machines which respond to verbal commands, act upon them and converse with us by simulating human speech are the already audible voices of tomorrow.

AT&T
The right choice.

SCIENCE AND THE CITIZEN

AIDS and the Election

Currently neglected, it could be a sleeper issue

During the next president's term of office the number of Americans dead or dying from AIDS will probably exceed 250,000. The National Academy of Sciences and the Institute of Medicine earlier this year estimated that the direct annual cost of caring for AIDS patients will rise to more than $10 billion by 1991. Such a toll would seem to merit high-level concern. Yet neither presidential candidate has given much attention to the subject. One reason may be that political strategists regard AIDS as a no-win topic that evokes fear and deep-seated biases.

Both Governor Michael Dukakis and Vice-President George Bush have endorsed the report of the President's Commission on AIDS, which calls for Federal legislation to protect the civil rights of people infected with HIV. Most public-health figures think that, without such measures, fear of discrimination will keep potential carriers from seeking tests, making them more likely to spread the disease. Experience seems to justify the concern. Workers at the University of South Carolina School of Public Health reported that the number of homosexual men coming forward to be tested fell by 51 percent at one voluntary testing site in South Carolina after the state enacted a law requiring that the names and addresses of infected individuals be recorded.

Yet people who are politically active on behalf of AIDS victims do make distinctions between Bush and Dukakis. For one thing, Bush is often seen as being compromised by his association with the current administration, which has approached the AIDS issue gingerly. For instance, a Federal mass mailing providing information about the disease was not sent out until May of this year, some seven years after the epidemic was first recognized. The Administration has also consistently asked for less money for fighting the epidemic than Congress wanted. President Reagan has not even implemented the principal recommendations of his own commission's report.

In addition to being unhappy with the administration Bush represents, AIDS advocates were disappointed by his selection of Senator Dan Quayle of Indiana as running mate. Since October, 1987, Quayle has voted five times to restrict the content of educational materials on AIDS, and he opposed a plan that set aside $30 million to supply the drug zidovudine (also called AZT) to indigent patients.

Bush himself, however, has shown interest in the epidemic. During the past year he has had briefings from officials of the National Institutes of Health and from Senator Lowell P. Weicker, Jr., of Connecticut, who has introduced legislation that would protect the civil rights of infected people. Bush has also met with AIDS patients. According to Anthony S. Fauci, a prominent AIDS researcher and the director of the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, Bush has called him several times for information on scientific points and "asked all the right questions." Bush cheered the AIDS lobby recently by urging the Food and Drug Administration to expedite the approval of drugs that have shown potential against AIDS.

Unlike Dukakis, Bush supports "routine" testing of people seeking marriage licenses, of patients in clinics treating drug abuse or sexually transmitted diseases and of all would-be immigrants. He thinks, however, that testing should be mandated by the states rather than by the Federal Government. He recognizes that confidentiality is "imperative" and believes educational materials on AIDS should be tailored to address the concerns of groups vulnerable to infection.

During the drafting of the Republican platform Weicker offered amendments that would have put the party on record as supporting the report of the President's Commission on AIDS. In deference to the wishes of the party's powerful right wing the proposal was rejected, however. As adopted, the Republican platform does not mention discrimination or advocate special measures to protect the civil rights of infected people, although it does support expedited review of AIDS drugs. It also states that educational materials should emphasize avoiding sex outside marriage and drug abuse as the best ways to avoid infection. The AIDS Action Council and other advocacy groups scorn the document and denounce its moralizing.

The Democratic Party's response to the epidemic is distinctly more aggressive. The Democratic platform advocates comprehensive public-health education, the adoption of the public-health-community consensus on testing and counseling (which is generally understood to call for universally available, anonymous testing together with counseling and education), civil-rights protection for infected people and an expedited review of drugs. Dukakis himself mentioned AIDS in his acceptance speech, and he recently played to the cameras by visiting an AIDS hospice. Like Bush, however, he supports mandatory testing of certain groups, including members of the armed forces and donors to blood, organ and sperm banks. He also favors testing of immigrants—but only those from countries with a high incidence of HIV infection.

AIDS activists generally give Dukakis high marks for his record in Massachusetts. That state currently spends more per capita on AIDS than any other, and it was the first to conduct a statewide mailing of AIDS information. Dukakis has supported state legislation prohibiting discrimination, and the drug-addiction treatment program in Massachusetts has been significantly expanded. He did, however, oppose proposals to initiate a needle-exchange program for drug addicts. Dukakis' running mate, Senator Lloyd Bentsen of Texas, has been briefed on AIDS by public-health experts such as Mervyn Silverman, president of the American Foundation for AIDS Research and the former director of public health in San Francisco, and June E. Osborn, dean of the School of Public Health at the University of Michigan.

How will these contrasting records weigh in the electoral scales? The disease could meld those it threatens into a strong single-issue constituen-

SCIENCE/SCOPE®

A new computer system provides accurate, timely reports at an annual cost savings of $152,000. Designed and built by Hughes Aircraft Company, the Parts Logistics Analysis Network (PLAN) is used to track data on electronic components from their inception as engineering requirements through procurement, receiving, inventory, and the work cycle of Hughes satellite programs. PLAN "digests" requests for specific data banks, and promotes user control through "friendly" connections. PLAN also enables those who are most familiar with the data to manage the information, and requires minimal programmer intervention of system control languages.

Hughes has earned the 1987 Herschel Award for improving the sensitivity and producibility of infrared detector arrays. The technological breakthrough was achieved by using and adapting a process of liquid phase epitaxy developed by Hughes. Detector arrays make infrared imaging possible for applications such as satellite-generated weather and remote Earth sensing information, and night vision systems for military vehicles. The award is the highest yearly accolade given to an organization by the Infrared Information Symposia Specialty Group on Infrared Detectors.

Heat pipe technology will be used to cool future nuclear-powered space systems for the first time. Heat pipes are passive thermal control devices that are used to cool computers, signal processors, communications devices, and various other equipment in military and commercial applications. Under development by Hughes for NASA's SP-100 Advanced Radiator Program, the heat pipe's radiators will be as large as 8,881 square feet and will take on exotic shapes. Because they must be able to unfold after deployment from the Space Shuttle, the radiators will require the first-time use of heat pipes with rotating or flexible joints. The heat pipes' projected cooling medium will be a liquid metal, such as cesium, mercury, or potassium, and will operate at either 600 or 950 degrees Kelvin.

A new Space Based Radar Program will involve the placement of a constellation of sensor platforms in the Earth's orbit between 600 and 6,000 nautical miles in altitude for wide area surveillance of ships, aircraft, and cruise missiles. Hughes, as a member of the Grumman-led team, will define technology requirements and an implementation plan for the radar RF and processing sections, which will interface with Grumman's SBR system. An operational demonstration-validation phase will lead to a first launch in the mid-1990's. The Space Based Radar Program is a joint U.S. Air Force and Navy program.

Support Systems in Southern California designs, develops, and manufactures some of the most sophisticated training simulators and a wide array of automatic and manual test systems. In addition, field engineering and technical support of a wide range of electronic systems keep Hughes' systems operating at top efficiency worldwide. Opportunities are available for a variety of engineers qualified by degree or work experience. They include systems, radar, MATE control and support software engineers, logic designers and image processors. Please send your resume to Lowell Anderson, Professional Employment, Dept. S2, Hughes Aircraft Company, P.O. Box 9399, Long Beach, CA 90801-0463. Equal opportunity employer. U.S. citizenship required.

For more information write to: P. O. Box 45068, Los Angeles, CA 90045-0068

HUGHES

Subsidiary of GM Hughes Electronics

cy; a close election could turn on such a block vote. Whatever the outcome of the election, the AIDS epidemic and its retinue of volatile political, social and policy issues will be waiting—bigger than ever—for the next president and his administration. —*Tim Beardsley*

Test-Ban Countdown

As START stalls, arms controllers focus again on nuclear testing

The perennial debate over nuclear-weapon tests has been overshadowed during the past year or two as the superpowers tried to negotiate missile reductions. Now that the intermediate-range nuclear forces (INF) treaty has been ratified and the strategic arms reduction talks (START) have bogged down, however, testing has once again taken center stage. Arms-control advocates still contend that banning nuclear explosions or greatly limiting yields would promote stability by preventing the development of increasingly lethal nuclear explosives. The Reagan Administration still responds that testing is crucial to deterrence and should cease only in that millennial age when nuclear arms are banished from the earth.

But events of the past year have weakened several of the Administration's key positions on testing. Administration officials have maintained, for example, that tests are needed to ensure that weapons in the stockpile are "reliable." Late last year Ray E. Kidder, a weapons designer at the Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory, did a study that concluded otherwise. The Department of Energy can maintain a viable arsenal without testing "for the foreseeable future," Kidder said, by making exact duplicates of aging warheads whose reliability has been proved. Kidder urged the Energy Department, which oversees the production of nuclear weapons, to institute a "readiness program" so that the materials and expertise needed for remanufacturing weapons are available in the event of a test ban.

The Administration's position on reliability was further undermined in June when Representative Edward J. Markey of Massachusetts released a confidential memorandum written in 1986 by a physicist at the Los Alamos National Laboratory. In the memorandum the physicist warned his superiors that some of the Energy Department's statements about the need to ensure reliability through testing were "on thin ground." Soon after these revelations a joint conference of the Senate and House of Representatives ordered the department to institute the readiness program recommended by Kidder.

At about the same time the Office of Technology Assessment, which advises Congress on technical matters, issued a report on seismic verification that had been delayed by Energy Department censors for several months. The report disputed the Administration's contention that the Soviets have violated the 1974 Threshold Test Ban Treaty, which limits yields to 150 kilotons. (The bomb that destroyed Hiroshima had a 13-kiloton yield.) The report also concluded, contrary to the Administration's assertions, that seismology is equal to the task of remotely monitoring underground blasts. The OTA found that with an array of seismographs in the Soviet Union the U.S. could monitor "with high confidence" a treaty prohibiting tests that have yields above 10 kilotons. An experimental seismic array is already being installed in the Soviet Union by the Natural Resources Defense Council, a private group that favors a test ban, in collaboration with the Soviet Academy of Sciences.

Meanwhile the Administration has begun to pursue aggressively its own testing-related agenda. Insisting that seismic sensing cannot verify Soviet compliance with the Threshold Test Ban Treaty, Administration officials have championed a highly intrusive yield-measurement technique. Called Corrtex, it requires running an instrumented cable down to the buried nuclear device and then measuring how rapidly the cable is crushed by the explosion. To establish the efficacy of Corrtex, the Administration has convinced the Soviets (who favor a total ban, verified by seismic monitoring) to take part in the so-called joint verification experiment. In August, Soviet officials monitored an underground nuclear blast at the Nevada Test Site with a Corrtex device. This fall a U.S. team will monitor an explosion at Semipalatinsk, the Soviet test site.

Administration officials have gone to unusual lengths to publicize the joint experiment, hailing it as a major step toward the "ultimate goal" of a ban on testing. Privately officials in the White House have acknowledged to SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN that they have another aim. By creating the appearance of progress toward a test ban, the officials said, they hope to divert attention from the achievements of genuine test-ban proponents and so reduce their momentum.

Indeed, as the OTA report points out, Corrtex itself would be useless for monitoring either a low-threshold limit or a ban on tests; its accuracy is poor at low yields and it cannot detect secret tests. But ironically the joint experiment may promote seismic verification more than it promotes Corrtex. As part of the experiment, the U.S. and the U.S.S.R. have exchanged information about the geology of their respective test sites and about the yield of past tests. These data, as well as those generated by the blasts in August and this fall, should help to calibrate seismic sensors.

The prospects for a treaty limiting or banning tests depend to a large extent on the outcome of the presidential election. Governor Michael Dukakis has favored a test ban; Vice-President George Bush has pledged to uphold his predecessor's policy. By overriding any presidential veto, a two-thirds majority of Congress could unilaterally legislate limits on testing. Congressional insiders say such a majority may vote for the "phased approach" toward a nuclear ban outlined in the OTA report. The plan calls for an initial threshold of 10 kilotons, which "would then be lowered as information, experience and confidence increase." A 10-kiloton limit, most arms specialists agree, would greatly constrain the development of directed-energy nuclear warheads and other potentially destabilizing weapons. —*John Horgan*

PHYSICAL SCIENCES

Starshower

Galactic arms trigger the birth of hosts of stars

The majestic, sweeping arms of classic spiral galaxies have long puzzled astronomers. For one thing, they are littered with newly formed stars. Do the stars take shape simply because the arms are rich in the gas clouds that are the raw material of star formation? Or do the arms play some active role in star-birth? Recent high-resolution millimeter-wave radio observations of the Whirlpool Galaxy, the prototypical spiral, have painted a picture that strongly supports the latter view. It appears that the gravitational field of galactic arms can trigger the birth of stars.

The observations, reported in *Nature,* were made at the Owens Valley Radio Observatory in California by

Biogen Vision

Applying Rational Drug Design To AIDS

On September 11th, 1987, an important advance in AIDS research was announced to the scientific community. Dr. Richard Fisher, Biogen's Director of Molecular Biology, reported on the biological activity of a recombinant, soluble form of the human cell surface protein called CD4.

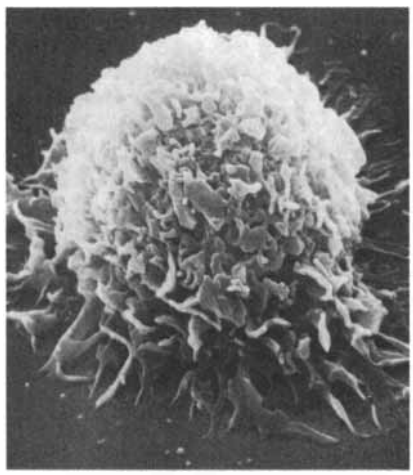
The Discovery

Test results showed that this molecule could inhibit the infectivity of HIV (Human Immunodeficiency Virus) *in vitro*. Thus a novel scientific path was opened into the discovery of potentially active agents against the AIDS virus.

The First Soluble Receptor

Biogen's expression of CD4 marked the first time that this soluble receptor had been developed as a potential therapeutic for human disease. Biogen combined an understanding of the AIDS virus and the application of the most advanced genetic engineering techniques to create this breakthrough development.

The infectious process begins when HIV binds to certain white blood cells via a protein receptor, called CD4, located on the surface of the cell. The virus infects the body by first attaching to the CD4 protein to gain entry into the cell, where it multiplies and eventually kills the cell. When studied *in vitro*, Biogen's soluble CD4 binds directly to HIV or infected cells, and shields healthy cells from potential infection.



The CD4 receptor protein is anchored to the surface of white blood cells (shown above) by a transmembrane connection. HIV binds to the CD4 receptor, then invades the cell.

Biogen Leadership

The scientific advances Biogen has achieved in recombinant proteins are an outgrowth of our rational approach to drug design. We have been a leader in pharmaceutical development for more than 10 years.

—With CD4, Biogen scientists reported results of *in vitro* testing in 1987, and in 1988 we commenced testing of CD4 in rhesus monkeys. Results to date show signs of positive biological activity in infected animals, and no untoward effects of CD4 in healthy control animals.

— Based on these positive test results, Biogen is now preparing to commence human clinical studies with CD4 later in 1988. Trials will be conducted at UCLA Medical Center and at Massachusetts General Hospital, in Boston. These tests will determine the safety of CD4 in AIDS patients.

— In cancer research, Biogen was first to develop alpha interferon, an important anti-cancer and anti-viral drug. Licensed to Schering Corporation, alpha interferon is being used in the treatment of leukemia, cancers, and viral infections.

— Biogen is also a leader in the application of recombinant DNA approaches for the diagnosis and prevention of hepatitis B. Over 200 million people worldwide suffer from this chronic viral infection.

— Our scientists are at work on numerous other products that are currently in clinical trials or in various stages of research and development.

As this revolutionary research in rational drug design continues, scientific advancements are sure to follow. And one name will often be linked to these novel achievements: Biogen, a company with a vision.

BIOGEN

Fourteen Cambridge Center
Cambridge, MA 02142

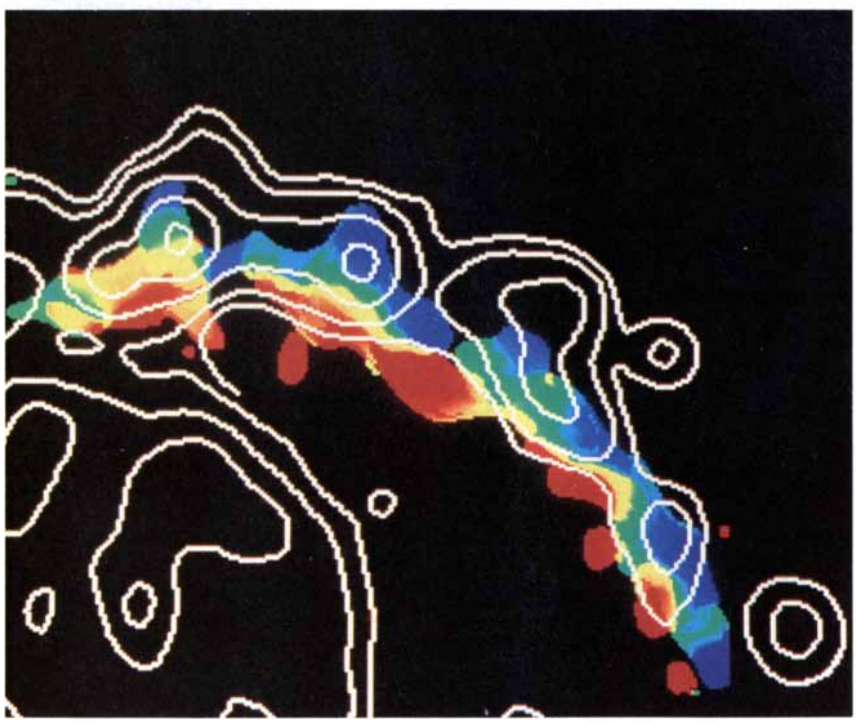
Stuart N. Vogel of the Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute and his co-workers, using the technique of radio interferometry. The Whirlpool Galaxy is more than 30 million light-years away, but by recording the distinctive emissions from chemical elements and compounds in the galactic arms the investigators were able to produce a detailed map of position and velocity. These are the most detailed observations of another galaxy to date.

The workers found, as they expected, that the clouds of molecular gas (mainly hydrogen) from which stars coalesce are concentrated in the spiral arms, which also contain the highest densities of dust and stars. More significant, they also found that the gas appears to be rotating about the galactic nucleus faster than the arms themselves do, which is a prediction of some theoretical models. As the clouds catch up with an arm and enter it they undergo a violent change in velocity and are redirected inward along the arm by its strong gravitational field. This gravitational effect confirms that the arms of a galaxy are regions of greater density: the spiral "density waves" that theories of galaxy formation predict.

The most significant observation, however, was that newly formed massive stars, detected by their envelopes of ionized hydrogen, were not concentrated exactly in the arms but were localized somewhat "downwind" of them. The superabundance of young stars just past each arm was greater than the arm's high concentration of star-forming molecular gas clouds alone could explain. The likeliest explanation is that the gravitational shock the molecular gas clouds undergo as they enter an arm somehow triggers the formation of stars, which appear downwind perhaps 30 million years after the encounter between the gas and the spiral arm.

Vogel says his team is not ready to say exactly why entering an arm touches off star formation in clouds of gas, but one possibility is that by drawing gas clouds together the gravitational field of the arm causes them to collide more frequently. The collisions might, by increasing the mass of the clouds, cause some to collapse into stars. Vogel points out, however, that arms cannot be the only trigger of star formation, since some galaxies do not have arms. —*T.M.B.*

As the density wave of a galactic arm compresses gas clouds, the resulting shock triggers starbirth



***TWO ARMS** of the Whirlpool Galaxy are shown in a composite image. The galaxy rotates counterclockwise; colors indicate relative velocities of molecular clouds. The velocities change near a density wave. Contours show emissions from ionized hydrogen, which marks the formation of stars downstream from the density wave.*

Weighty Matters

A test of gravity in Greenland casts doubt on Newton's law

Could Newton's 300-year-old law of gravity finally be succumbing to age? Several recent findings seem to deviate from the theory, and now the most meticulous test yet—a measurement of the gravitational field in a mile-deep borehole in the Greenland ice sheet—has turned up further evidence of a discrepancy.

The implications could be profound. Such small adjustments to gravity are in fact predicted by all the most promising attempts to forge a unified theory of the fundamental forces—the ultimate goal of physics. These new effects, which some people call a fifth force and even a sixth force, are expected to compare to gravity in strength, but they act over perhaps a few hundreds or thousands of meters, whereas gravity has an infinite range.

One possible consequence of such new effects is that within the range of the new forces, Newton's inverse-square law (the strength of gravity falls as the square of the distance between two masses) may not be true. Another is that unlike standard gravity, which acts only on mass, the new effects may depend on some aspect of an object's composition, such as the total number of baryons (protons and neutrons). Nearly a dozen experiments have sought—inconclusively—to detect one of the effects (see "Force of a Different Color" in "Science and the Citizen," December, 1987). The Greenland project is the latest in a series of attempts to detect a violation of the inverse-square law by measuring local gravitational fields and comparing them to calculations based on the density of the surrounding terrain.

An earlier experiment done inside an Australian mine found a repulsive effect of roughly 1 percent of the strength of ordinary gravity, acting over a range of a few hundred meters. A second experiment, carried out on a 600-meter television tower in North Carolina, found an attractive effect of about 2 percent of the strength of gravity acting over a distance of 300 meters. The calculations worked out even better when both an attractive and a repulsive effect were presumed.

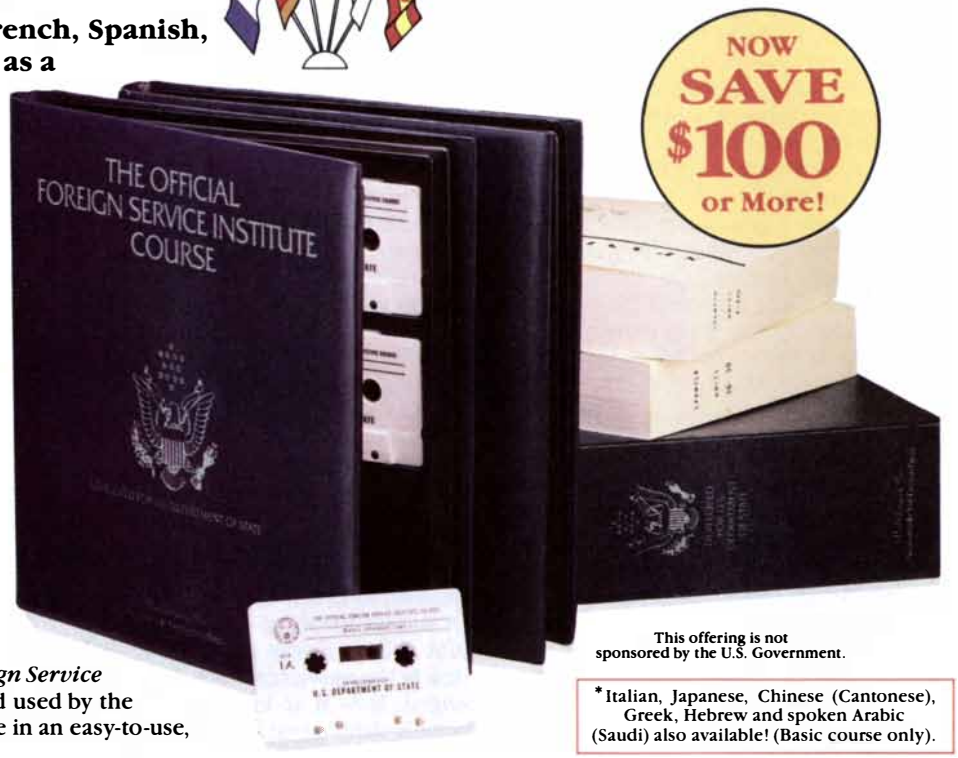
The Most Powerful Language Course in the World... Now Available as an Easy-to-Use Home-Study Program.

Used by the U.S. Department of State.

THE OFFICIAL FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE LANGUAGE COURSE

Learn at Home to Speak French, Spanish, or German* — as Fluently as a Professional Diplomat!

- Developed specifically to train officers of the U.S. Government for overseas assignments.
- Comprehensive instruction manuals precisely keyed to audio tapes.
- Pronunciation guidelines are brilliantly conceived, easy-to-follow.
- Study at your home or office. Listen and practice in the car, on a plane, while jogging; anywhere.



This offering is not sponsored by the U.S. Government.

*Italian, Japanese, Chinese (Cantonese), Greek, Hebrew and spoken Arabic (Saudi) also available! (Basic course only).

Imagine learning to speak a foreign language as fluently as a career diplomat...without ever leaving your home or office!

Now, the world's most powerful language course, *The Official Foreign Service Institute Course,* developed for and used by the U.S. Department of State is available in an easy-to-use, step-by-step home-study program.

The best in the world.

No other course of its kind can be compared to it! This is the one U.S. diplomats study. It's the best there is. Comprehensive, colloquial, designed so you'll develop genuine fluency in real life business and social situations.

Using the State Department's unique *Guided Imitation* and *Deep Learning* methods you'll start pronouncing correctly from the very first lesson. The precisely keyed manuals and 24 expertly produced 60-90 minute audio tapes make it a pleasure to learn. Cassettes let you conveniently study at your own pace and practice anywhere.

The Basic Course will give you proficiency in everyday circumstances. The Advanced Course offers total fluency for business or leisure travel.

Never before at this low price. Save $100 or more!

No Risk Guarantee! Try it for 30 days. If not completely satisfied, return it for a full refund.

Order *The Official Foreign Service Institute Course* now for only $195† per course (Basic or Advanced) and you'll save $100 off the established price! Order both courses for $350† and save even more! Pay in 5 convenient monthly installments charged to your credit card.

Enjoy your next trip more than you ever dreamed possible. Order today!

†Plus $5 shipping/handling for each Basic or Advanced course, or $7.50 for both.

The Official Foreign Service Institute Language Course

The Easton Press
47 Richards Avenue
Norwalk, Conn. 06857

Satisfaction Guaranteed.

For Fastest Service — Call Toll-Free: 1-800-367-4534
In CT, AK, HI Call 1-203-855-8717

Please send me *The Official Foreign Service Institute Language Course(s)* I have indicated. (Please circle appropriate items.)

FRENCH	SPANISH	GERMAN	ITALIAN	CHINESE	GREEK	HEBREW	JAPANESE	ARABIC
Basic	Basic	Basic	Basic	Basic	Basic	Basic	Basic	Basic
Adv.	Adv.	Adv.	—	—	—	—	—	—

Name _____
PLEASE PRINT CLEARLY

Address _____

City/State/Zip _____

Signature _____
(All orders subject to acceptance.)

Charge each of five equal monthly installments to my credit card: — $40* per installment for each Basic or Advanced course; $71.50* per installment for both courses in the same language:

☐ VISA ☐ MasterCard ☐ Diners Club ☐ American Express

Credit Card # _____ Exp. Date _____

☐ I prefer not to use a credit card and will pay by check. Enclosed is my deposit — $60* for each Basic or Advanced course; $120* for both courses in the same language. I will pay the balance as billed in four equal monthly installments.

*Connecticut residents add 7½% sales tax. Allow 2 to 4 weeks for shipment. 8210

Skeptics argue that these apparent effects could result from anomalies in local mass density, such as a hidden lode of metal ore. The Greenland group, led by Mark E. Ander of the Los Alamos National Laboratory and Mark A. Zumberge of the University of California at San Diego, therefore chose a highly homogeneous site: a borehole surrounded by a two-kilometer-thick expanse of ice. The team took elaborate precautions: the bedrock was mapped by 42,000 high-frequency radar scans, and careful surveys determined the height of the ice surface to within a centimeter. A gravimeter took more than 100 readings at half a dozen locations, at depths of between 200 and 1,600 meters.

The researchers assumed the density of the bedrock might range between 2.7 and three grams per cubic centimeter; densities outside this range are geologically improbable. Finally, different members analyzed the data at least three times. Their preliminary conclusion: there appears to be a single, attractive effect whose strength is between 1.7 and 3.9 percent that of gravity. It is thought to act over a distance of somewhere between 10 meters and slightly more than one kilometer.

The new findings agree with the results from North Carolina but seem to contradict those from Australia. It may be possible to reconcile all three results by including both an attractive and a repulsive effect, but then the theoretical model "gets rather contrived," according to Ander's colleague Richard Hughes. To help determine whether these effects are real or are instead caused by hidden anomalies in the environment, the group is already planning future experiments in the Pacific Ocean and in Antarctica, where the ice is twice as thick as the ice in Greenland. —*June Kinoshita*

God Takes a Nap

A computer finds that Pluto's orbit is chaotic

That the earth has circled the sun for five billion years and the sun rises between the monoliths at Stonehenge like clockwork every June 21 are things taken for granted. Yet the gravitational interaction of the sun, the nine known planets and the asteroids is so complicated that one might more reasonably expect planets to spiral into one another or wander off into deep space. Indeed, the solar system's long-term stability is so miraculous that, after proposing his theory of gravitation, Newton himself declared that periodic divine intervention was necessary to ensure it. Pierre-Simon de Laplace was not satisfied with that explanation. In the 18th century he proved to the satisfaction of his peers that the solar system should in fact be stable. The feat earned Laplace the title of the French Newton, and his work is considered the cornerstone of celestial mechanics.

Yet Laplace's proof was not rigorous, and all attempts to make it so have failed. Now, in fact, two investigators assert that such a proof may not exist, because the solar system is, strictly speaking, unstable. The claim is made by Gerald Jay Sussman and Jack Wisdom of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology, who report in *Science* that the orbit of Pluto is chaotic. With the help of the Digital Orrery, a one-cubic-foot computer built by Sussman and friends in 1984 to study planetary motions, they have evolved the motion of the five outermost planets through the next 845 million years. They find that the orbit of Pluto becomes unpredictable on a time scale of about 20 million years.

Such unpredictability is the hallmark of a chaotic system. Until recently it had been thought that if two identical particles—or planets—were started off at nearly the same position with nearly identical velocities, they would follow nearly identical trajectories. In the past decade that view has changed. Now it is known that even relatively simple systems manifest so-called chaotic behavior. For instance, the orbit of an asteroid in a model solar system consisting of only the sun and Jupiter may become chaotic. That is, two asteroids starting off at infinitesimally differing positions and velocities will follow wildly differing orbits. For them to follow identical orbits they must be started off with absolutely identical initial conditions—something that is impossible.

Sussman and Wisdom have uncovered a similar phenomenon involving Pluto. In their numerical simulations they follow pairs of Plutos whose orbits are initially almost identical. The orbits, however, diverge exponentially with time—a sure sign of chaotic behavior—until after several hundred million years one Pluto may be on the opposite side of the solar system from the other. Like all models, Sussman and Wisdom's model makes simplifications. But if it represents the real solar system, Pluto's chaotic motion must eventually be transferred to that of the other planets, thereby making the behavior of the entire solar system chaotic. Unless, of course, God decides to intervene. —*Tony Rothman*

Pacific Sea-saw

A natural feedback loop may explain El Niño's recurrences

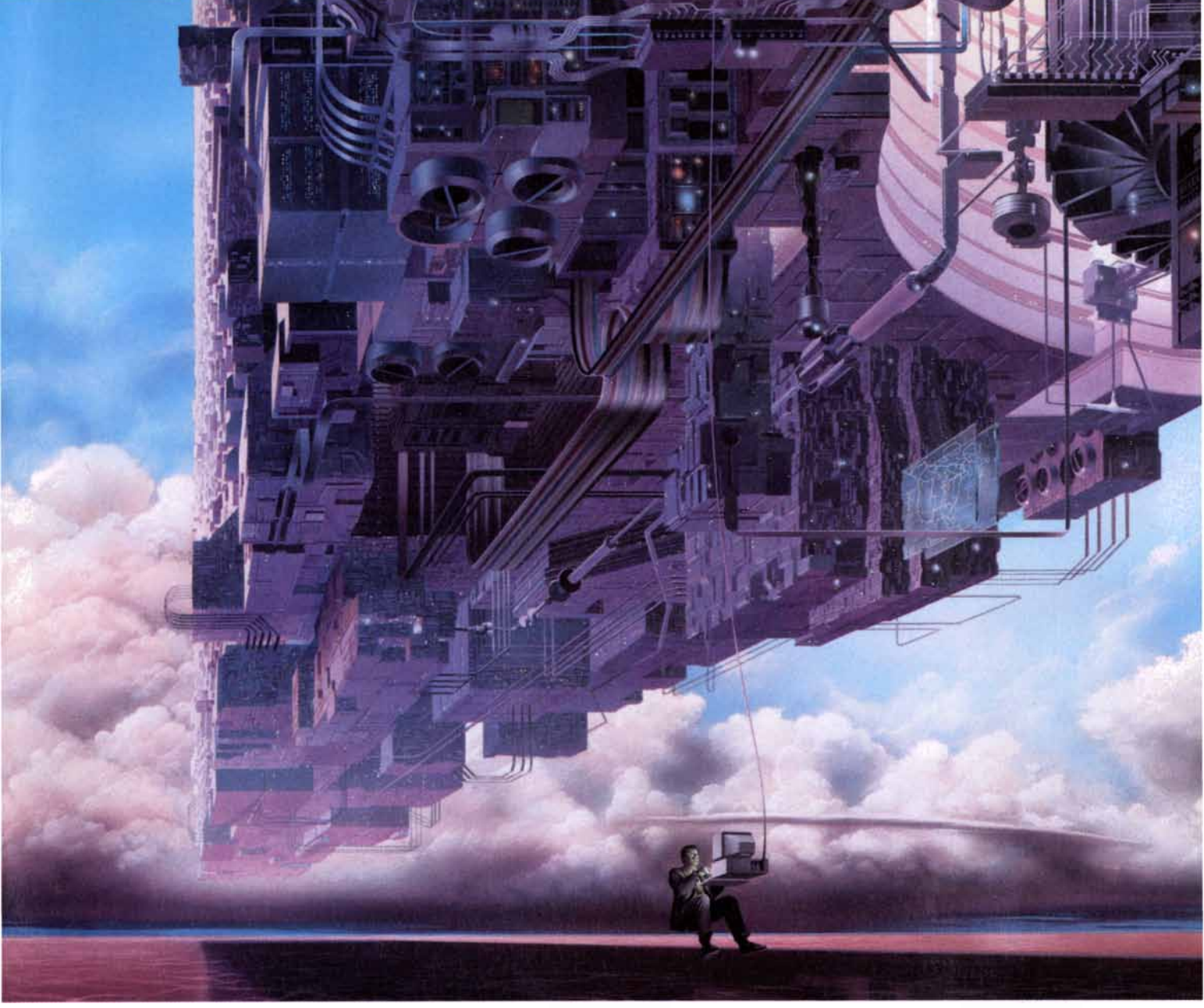
Every three to five years the surface waters of the central and eastern Pacific Ocean become unusually warm at the Equator. These heating episodes, called El Niños, can disturb a wide range of marine life in the region and are also thought to cause unusual flooding or drought in other parts of the globe. Expanding knowledge of the mechanism driving the warming recently enabled meteorologists to predict the latest El Niño successfully. Yet a fundamental feature has remained a mystery: what accounts for the reversal of El Niño a year or two after it begins—and then for its return sometime later?

Nicholas E. Graham and Warren B. White of the Scripps Institution of Oceanography report in *Science* that they have found support for one explanation. El Niño, they and other workers say, is part of a natural, self-sustaining cycle of warming and cooling that is controlled by interacting oceanic and atmospheric factors.

The warming cycle can be said to begin when the sea-surface temperature at the Equator in the eastern Pacific rises significantly. As a consequence the atmospheric-pressure distribution over the equatorial Pacific changes, dramatically weakening the easterly trade winds that flow westward along the Equator. The altered winds generate disturbances in the upper layer of the ocean known as Kelvin waves; these travel eastward along the Equator, reaching the eastern boundary of the Pacific within two or three months.

The Kelvin waves—which in this part of the cycle are essentially propagating regions of deep, warm water—reinforce the heating of the eastern Pacific, primarily by depressing the thermocline: the boundary between the warmer upper layer and the cooler deeper waters. The eastern thermocline is normally shallow, so that the sea surface is cooled by cold water upwelling from below; when the thermocline is deep, water continues to flow upward, but the water brought to the surface is relatively warm.

The role of Kelvin waves in causing an El Niño has long been recognized. The processes that lead to cooling and



CONNECT YOUR COMPUTER TO A HIGHER INTELLIGENCE.

CompuServe's reference databases make you more productive, competitive, and better informed.

Remember the last time you tried to get your hands on hard-to-find facts? In a magazine article you read a year ago. In a news report you never saw. Or in a table of data you didn't know existed.

Imagine those facts just a few keystrokes away on your personal computer. Through CompuServe.

Your personal research center.

Save hours of research by going straight to the reference information you need in seconds.

Access thousands of sources of information in the areas of business, finance, medicine, education, demographics, science, law, news, popular entertainment, and sports.

What you know can help you.

Research an industry or company through articles, financial statements, and other sources. Analyze an investment. Assist in a job search. Follow market competition. Investigate a business opportunity.

Check characteristics such as age, income, and occupation in any U.S. community. For a geography report, a business plan, or a family move.

All you need to access CompuServe's unlimited world of information is a modem and just about any personal computer. Visit your computer dealer today. To order direct, or for more information, call or write:

CompuServe®

Information Services, P.O. Box 20212
5000 Arlington Centre Blvd., Columbus, OH 43220
800-848-8199
In Ohio and Canada, call 614 457-0802
An H&R Block Company

Take a look at the car your kid

Cutlass Supreme

Ordinarily, we wouldn't make such a bold prediction. But then, the 1989 Cutlass Supreme is anything but ordinary.

It is the product of five years of engineering and design, the result of over a million miles of testing. In the purest sense of the word, the Cutlass Supreme is a totally new Oldsmobile.®

Just look at it. The sleek lines. The smooth shape. Styling destined to become the standard of a new generation.

But advanced styling isn't the only reason the Cutlass Supreme

will be driving in the year 2000.

is ahead of its time. Front-wheel drive, four-wheel independent suspension, power-assisted rack-and-pinion steering and a 2.8-liter fuel-injected V6 assure it will stay ahead for years down the road.

In the meantime, it gives the younger generation something to look forward to.

For more information, write: Oldsmobile Cutlass Supreme Catalog, P.O. Box 14238, Lansing, MI 48901. Better yet, visit your local dealer for a test drive.

The New Generation of OLDSMOBILE

to a restoration of pre–El Niño conditions have been more elusive. Graham, White and others propose that the cooling is the result of events that occur outside the equatorial waveguide: the region bounded by about three degrees north and south latitude. In the off-equatorial regions the warming of the eastern sea disturbs wind patterns over the central Pacific, leading to an oceanic upwelling in that region, which in turn gives rise to westward-moving Rossby waves. At this point in the cycle the Rossby waves are essentially regions in which the warm upper layer is thinner than usual (in other words, where the thermocline is elevated).

The Rossby waves travel more slowly than the Kelvin waves, but within a year or two they are thought to reach the western border of the Pacific, travel along the border back into the equatorial region and become shallow, fast-moving Kelvin waves. The arrival of these waves in the eastern Pacific raises the thermocline there, allows cold water to surface and enables the easterly winds to gain strength.

At first, surface cooling is further reinforced by the easterlies, which generate shallow, eastward-moving Kelvin waves in the central equatorial Pacific. Yet the cooling in the equatorial waveguide helps to trigger the next heating phase. It leads to wind patterns in the off-equatorial areas that produce downwelling and deep (rather than shallow) Rossby waves. These westward-moving Rossby waves eventually turn into deep Kelvin waves, which, when they reach the east, depress the thermocline, thus raising the sea-surface temperature once again.

By examining various indicators of the movement of Rossby waves—such as wind patterns and changes in sea level and water temperature—in the off-equatorial regions, Graham and White have determined that the Rossby waves appear to have been in the expected places when El Niños have occurred in the past. They also note that models including calculations of Rossby-wave activity predicted the 1986–87 El Niño a year in advance of its onset. *—Ricki Rusting*

More Setbacks at SLAC

Aging technology adds to a linear collider's woes

This past spring physicists at the Stanford Linear Accelerator Center (SLAC) jubilantly announced that the center's unconventional new particle accelerator, known as the Stanford Linear Collider (SLC), was ready to roll. After months of delay and a slew of unforeseen technical problems, they had succeeded in bringing two tightly focused particle beams, one of electrons and one of positrons, into head-on collision—the most precise beam collision ever attempted. "That was the good news," said Kaye D. Lathrop, an associate director of SLAC. "A lot of people had said we wouldn't be able to make such small beams collide."

The bad news was that there were not enough collisions. The collisions are supposed to churn out Z^0's ("Z-naughts"), heavy particles whose properties elucidate certain fundamental aspects of matter. But by the end of July no Z^0's had been seen. Indeed, the machine achieved useful collisions only 3 percent of the time that it was running. Alarmed by this setback, SLAC director Burton Richter assumed direct control of the project on August 1 and assigned teams to tackle the multitude of problems besetting the machine.

The SLC is trying to achieve collisions by an untried method: boosting electrons and positrons to high energies in a linear accelerator, or linac, and then aiming the beams at each other. Unlike conventional machines, in which beams collide repeatedly as they whirl in opposite directions along the same circular track, the SLC has only one shot at a time. To compensate, the beams have to be squeezed to unprecedented densities.

When Richter first proposed the idea in 1980, he decided to piggyback the new design onto the existing two-mile-long Stanford Linear Accelerator, which was built in the early 1960's. The linac would accelerate both electron and positron beams and inject them into an oval track; they would go around the track in opposite directions and slam into each other on the other side. This decision, calculated to catapult the SLC ahead of a rival European machine of conventional design costing 10 times as much, has created problems of its own.

The old linac was designed to produce beams with energies of about 25 billion electron volts (GeV) and diameters of a few millimeters, but the SLC must produce two 50-GeV beams focused down to less than 10 microns—and aim them at each other. Among other things, it turned out that some of the older power supplies are too jittery to achieve such precision; it could take six months to replace them. To add to these troubles, during the July heat wave some aging microelectronic parts overheated and failed in alarming numbers inside the unrefrigerated shed housing the linac.

Longer-term obstacles arise from the untried design of the machine. The "kicker magnets," which extract particles from "damping rings" where they are squeezed down to the required densities, proved unequal to the task. Unexpectedly large effects induced by the electrical current of the beams prevented the damping rings from making adequately short bunches of the particles. The positron source, a metal target that emits positrons when it is bombarded by electrons, must be made more durable. There also are not enough instruments yet to adjust errors in the position and quality of the beams accurately.

Lathrop was philosophical about the setbacks: "To put the best face on it, we've learned what we have to do." For the next few months, weekdays will be spent studying and fine-tuning the SLC and weekends will be devoted to producing collisions. The plan is now to get the SLC up and running stably in February. *—J.K.*

Planetary Consommé

Terrestrial experiments mimic alien atmospheres

From the makers of synthetic primordial soup come two new flavors: Titan and Uranus. Back in 1953 investigators first simulated the earth's primordial atmosphere. They zapped a gas mixture with electricity, which yielded a soup of organic molecules. Now this technique has been modified by astronomers trying to simulate chemical processes in the present-day atmospheres of the planets and moons of the outer solar system. The simulations may help to explain the planets' color and atmospheric chemistry, and they may even provide insight into the origin of life in this solar system and others.

Whereas the primordial-soup experiment was based on conjecture about the earth's ancient atmosphere, the new simulations rely on information collected by the *Voyager 2* spacecraft during its flybys of Saturn and Uranus. Carl Sagan, W. Reid Thompson and Bishun N. Khare of Cornell University duplicated in their laboratory the conditions found in the upper atmospheres of Titan (Saturn's largest moon) and Uranus. Hydrogen, helium, nitrogen and methane were mixed at pressures and concentrations typical

of those atmospheres. The gases were pumped continuously through glass tubing, and a coil of wire was wrapped around a section of the tubing. A high-voltage current flowing through the wire created an intense magnetic field in the gas. The field energized the gas molecules and stripped electrons from them, forming a state of matter known as a plasma. The laboratory plasma mimics the aurora, in which atmospheric gases are bombarded by charged particles accelerated by a planet's magnetic field. Chemical reactions are known to abound in planetary auroras.

The laboratory plasma was similarly fecund, creating many different organic molecules, including hydrocarbon chains up to seven carbon atoms long. As these chemicals and others flowed farther through the glass tubing, they were separated for analysis. Some gases condensed at room temperature. Others solidified in places where the tubing was cooled in baths of dry ice and liquid nitrogen. After the simulation had run for a few days, enough material was produced to be detected and analyzed.

The astronomers were thereby able to study the chemistry of Titan and Uranus at a level of detail not possible for the Voyager spacecraft or telescopes. The Titan experiments produced a brownish organic solid whose optical properties agreed well with Voyager and ground-based measurements of the omnipresent Titan haze. Over the lifetime of Titan this material may have accumulated on the moon's surface in a layer hundreds of meters thick.

The investigators also report that the nitrogen-rich atmosphere of Titan produced a great variety of prebiotic chemicals called nitriles. Nitriles are precursors of amino acids, the basic building blocks of proteins. "Something similar may have happened on the early earth, but on Titan the prebiological chemistry is probably stillborn: the temperatures are far below the freezing point of water," Sagan observes.

The Uranus experiment, reported in *Journal of Geophysical Research,* simulated a hydrocarbon smog that is created by the aurora in the planet's hydrogen-and-methane atmosphere. In the reaction chamber of the simulation, the astronomers collected solid hydrocarbons on glass slides. They measured optical properties of the hydrocarbons and found they account for the subtle hues of yellow, red, brown and black that tinge the blue-green globe of Uranus. The Cornell

workers hypothesize that such hydrocarbons, created in the same way, contribute to the colors of other planets as well. —*Russell Ruthen*

BIOLOGICAL SCIENCES

Postprandial Warmth

Certain fish rise to the surface in order to digest better

Does a warm bath make you hungry? For certain fish the answer apparently is yes. According to a report in *Nature,* these fish, juvenile Bear Lake sculpins, feed on the chilly bottom of Bear Lake (in Utah and Idaho) during the day and rise to the warmer surface waters at night to digest. The warm water speeds their metabolism, accelerating the rate at which they absorb their food and making it possible for them to eat a larger meal the next day.

Daily vertical migrations are not uncommon among fish species, but they usually occur for other reasons. For example, a fish might come up to the surface to feed on plankton during the night and then return to the depths during the day in order to hide from predators or to conserve energy by slowing its metabolism in cold water. Indeed, the authors of the report, Wayne A. Wurtsbaugh and Darcy Neverman of Utah State University, thought they were dealing with one of these migration patterns, until they discovered that the sculpins' stomachs were fullest at dusk, just before the fish rose to the surface. Inside the stomachs were the remains of organisms that live only on or near the bottom. The fish could not have been rising to the surface to eat; perhaps they were rising to digest.

To test their hypothesis that warm surface water acts as an aid to digestion, the investigators fed a collection of sculpins a full meal and kept them in separate tanks, some at five degrees Celsius (the temperature of the bottom waters) and some at 15 degrees (the temperature of water near the surface at night). The fish kept at 15 degrees digested their stomach contents at a rate of 23 percent per hour and had evacuated 80 percent of their meal within 7.5 hours. The fish kept at five degrees, on the other hand, digested only 3.2 percent of their stomach contents per hour; at that rate it would have taken them 50 hours to evacuate 80 percent of the meal.

How much real good does such an

1989 GERARD PIEL AWARD

FOR SERVICE TO SCIENCE IN THE CAUSE OF HUMANKIND

Nominations are requested for the first Gerard Piel Award to be presented by AAAS at the 1989 Annual Meeting in San Francisco. The Award, established by the Board of Directors of SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, recognizes contribution to the formation of public policy and opinion respecting the wise use of science in the cause of human well-being and fulfillment. It may recognize life work or episodic contributions to such issues as population increase, economic development, poverty and environmental conservation. The honorand will receive a medal and a $10,000 prize. Both individuals and organizations are eligible.

No nomination form is required, but all nominations should be typed and should include the following information: nominee's name, address, institutional affiliation and title; a brief biographical resume; and a statement of justification for the nomination. Organizational nominations should include information about the nature, form and work of the organization. All nominations must include the name, address and telephone number of the individual making the nomination.

Nominations, as well as questions about the award, should be addressed to:

Dr. Albert H. Teich, Head,
Office of Public Sector Programs,
AAAS, 1333 H Street, N.W.,
Washington, D.C. 20005.
(Telephone 202/326-6600)

Deadline for receipt of nominations is **November 15, 1988.**

increased rate of digestion do for the fish? After all, in warmer water the fish must expend more energy simply to maintain their metabolism. To answer this question, Wurtsbaugh and Neverman raised separate groups of fish in the laboratory. Some were grown in water held at a constant temperature of five degrees and others were grown in water whose temperature fluctuated daily between five and 15 degrees, mimicking the temperature range that would be encountered by a migrating fish. The fish were fed only during the day. The results were dramatic: sculpins raised in water whose temperature fluctuated grew three times as fast as fish reared at a constant low temperature. —*Ari W. Epstein*

Yeast Meets Est(rogen)

A microorganism responds to a vertebrate hormone

What distinguishes man from yeast? At the macroscopic level the differences between the two species are obvious and substantial, but at the level of individual cells distinctions begin to blur. When the focus narrows to the molecules that constitute genes, similarities rather than differences prevail, not only in the structures of the molecules but also in the processes by which they are regulated. At least, that seems to be the gist of a growing number of studies in which gene regulators are swapped between human cells and yeast cells.

The most recent piece of evidence comes from Pierre Chambon and his colleagues at the National Institute of Health and Medical Research and the National Center for Scientific Research in France. In *Nature*, Chambon, Daniel Metzger and John H. White describe how they grafted the genes for a human gene regulator and the strip of DNA to which it binds into the genome of common baker's yeast. In human cells the regulator, a protein called an estrogen receptor, is responsible for switching on certain genes when it is signaled by the female developmental hormone estrogen. The receptor binds estrogen, attaches to its target site in the DNA and somehow—no one knows just how—triggers gene expression.

Yeast cells do not ordinarily respond to estrogen, but when cells were equipped with a receptor and a binding target, their genes were also activated by doses of the hormone. That means the molecular events that

That's a fairly odd phrase — "when you realize the future's behind you." But a forward thinking company knows exactly what it means.

Quite simply, the kind of company you are tomorrow depends a great deal on the moves you made yesterday, the decisions you make today.

In recent years the moves we've made, the decisions we've reached have renewed our spirit. It took introspection, belt-tightening, and some tough calls. Now we're smarter, more flexible, and more responsive to change.

It all strengthened our belief that the way to step toward tomorrow is not to follow, but to lead. With fresh thinking that allows us to do business as we've never done it before.

Today we're involved in emerging technologies that can lead to new business opportunities tomorrow. Projects like the development of synthetic metals for increased safety in commercial aviation. A new venture with the Baylor College of Medicine to produce an early cancer detection kit. And a proprietary synthesis technology for the formulation of non-toxic pest control.

When you look back at where we've been, then forward to where we're going, you'll find we're a company recharged and marching on.

For more information write to Greg Derrick, Phillips Petroleum, 16D-4 Phillips Bldg., Bartlesville, OK 74004.

Phillips Petroleum Company
Performing to meet
the challenge of change.

PHILLIPS 66

WHEN YOU REALIZE THE FUTURE'S BEHIND YOU, YOU DON'T TAKE YOUR STEPS LIGHTLY.

For the first time, users of UNIX® Syste

Announcing ETA System V.

Until today, if you used a system based on the real AT&T UNIX System V operating system, your lips were sealed when it came to working with a supercomputer. Making the move to true supercomputing meant having to learn a complicated proprietary operating system.

Those days are over. Because the first native operating system for a supercomputer based on AT&T's UNIX System V has arrived—ETA System V.

For the first time, users can work with the most powerful computers in the world using familiar commands.

ETA System V meets all the requirements of AT&T's System V Interface Definition (SVID) Release 3.0. It has passed all 5,500 tests in the System V Verification Suite. It is also the only supercomputer operating system to support features like ipc, semaphores and shared memory. Unlike non-standard operating systems, ETA System V has the advantages of byte addressability, virtual memory support, BSD sockets and r-commands.

ETA System V makes it possible to develop applications on industry-standard workstations compatible with AT&T's

m V can talk to a true supercomputer.

UNIX System V and then compile and run them on any ETA10 Supercomputer—from the affordable ETA10-P, the ETA10-Q and ETA10-E to the world's most powerful supercomputer, the ETA10-G.

Now, all your present applications based on AT&T's UNIX System V can be ported easily to ETA10 Supercomputers. Programs that once took months to port now take hours. Because programs based on AT&T's UNIX System V don't have to be rewritten.

ETA is also developing a library of applications specifically for AT&T's UNIX System V users in higher education environments. These applications include SPSS, IMSL and DI3000.

If you know AT&T's UNIX System V, you now have a voice in supercomputing. Beginning today.

Talk to your Control Data representative, or: ETA Systems, Inc., 1450 Energy Park Drive, St. Paul, MN 55108. Phone: (612) 642-3460.

ETA10 SUPERCOMPUTERS.

CONTROL DATA

turn on human genes in response to binding of the receptor to its target must take place in yeast cells as well.

The finding is far from heretical, since yeast and human beings are assumed to have evolved from the same ancestral organism. Studies published in the past few years had foreshadowed the French workers' conclusions by demonstrating the converse: that some yeast gene activators function perfectly well in human cells. The authors note, however, that it is more surprising to find that the estrogen-receptor system works in yeast, because even in vertebrates the hormone affects only cells following a specialized developmental pathway.

The discovery may have practical ramifications. Unlike many other microscopic organisms, yeast is eukaryotic: yeast cells have nuclei and a host of cellular processes in common with human cells. The genetics of yeast is simpler than that of any other eukaryote, and so the organism has become a favorite tool among genetic engineers. Biotechnology companies already employ yeast to make recombinant proteins because yeast cells tend to package proteins in much the same way as human cells do. Chambon thinks the estrogen-receptor system could act as a switch for turning on protein production in such yeast cells, since a gene linked to the system remains unexpressed until estrogen is supplied.

In basic research the biochemical functions of yeast commonly serve as models for the functions of more complex organisms. Any complex system that can be transferred into yeast is amenable to precise manipulation. Hence the French finding raises the possibility of probing in greater detail the human estrogen receptor as well as vertebrate gene activation in general. —*Karen Wright*

MEDICINE

Maternal Dysinheritance

A form of blindness is traced to a mitochondrial gene

Investigators believe they have discovered evidence of a new kind of genetic disease. Douglas C. Wallace of the Emory University School of Medicine and his co-workers have found a probable disease-causing mutation affecting a gene that is not in the nucleus of human cells but in the mitochondria: the sausage-shaped organelles

that are the power plants of the cell.

Although most of the DNA in cells is apportioned among the chromosomes in the nucleus, it has long been known that mitochondria also incorporate small amounts of the genetic material. Many investigators consider this fact, together with certain peculiarities of the mitochondrial genetic code, as evidence that mitochondria evolved from free-living bacteria that symbiotically colonized larger cells hundreds of millions of years ago.

Mitochondrial DNA encodes some of the proteins engaged in oxidative phosphorylation, the primary source of cellular energy. Unlike chromosomal DNA, mitochondrial DNA is inherited exclusively from the individual's mother; fathers do not pass on their mitochondria to their offspring. This unique maternal inheritance pattern prompted Wallace and his colleagues to speculate that mutations in mitochondrial DNA could be a hidden cause of disease. They decided to search for diseases that exhibit maternal inheritance—that occur in both males and females but are transmitted only through females.

Several rare neuromuscular and neurodegenerative diseases seemed to fit the pattern. They are typically rather variable and cause metabolic defects and mitochondrial abnormalities that lead to the degeneration of muscle or nerve fibers. Often symptoms do not appear until adulthood. One such disease has now apparently been traced to a specific mutation. It is Leber's hereditary optic neuropathy, which among other things causes the optic nerve to degenerate in young adults, leading to blindness.

In order to trace the illness to its genetic source, Wallace and his collaborators employed both genetic probes and enzymes that cut DNA at specific sites, so that comparisons could be made between individuals afflicted with the neuropathy and individuals who were free of the illness. Wallace told colleagues at a recent seminar held at the Jackson Laboratory that his team eventually found a mutation in mitochondrial DNA that was present in nine out of 11 people of various races who had the disease; none of 45 unaffected people showed the abnormality. The mutation affects one of the mitochondrial proteins engaged in oxidative phosphorylation. The workers propose that it somehow impairs mitochondrial function so that the optic nerve is specifically and progressively damaged.

The finding could suggest new therapies. Wallace is already treating a

Leber's patient who is not yet blind with nutrients that bolster mitochondrial function. —*T.M.B.*

Making Bones Better

A remarkable Soviet method for regenerating bones comes west

Until recently most people suffering from bones shortened by accident, genetic abnormality or disease have had little recourse for treatment. The usual method of lengthening a bone, which involves cutting it and bolting bone from another part of the body or from a donor into the gap, requires a traumatic operation and cannot help many patients. Sometimes the new bone fails to meld with the old. Moreover, the soft tissue surrounding the bone may not be able to accommodate significant lengthening.

Now some patients may benefit from a bone-lengthening technique that, although developed in the U.S.S.R. 40 years ago, was not exported until this decade. Named after Gavriel A. Ilizarov, the Soviet physician who pioneered it, the procedure exploits the ability of bone and soft tissue to grow in response to tension.

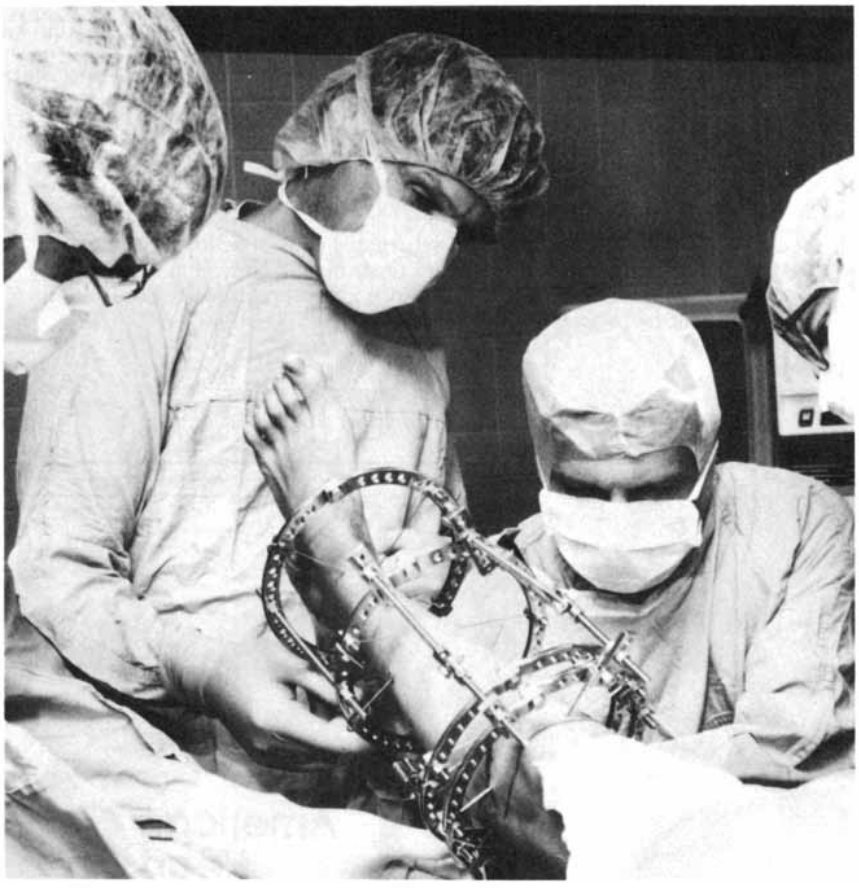
The Ilizarov procedure begins with a relatively simple operation, according to Dror Paley of the University of Maryland School of Medicine at Baltimore, a leading practitioner in the U.S. Typically the surgeon first inserts flexible pins through opposite ends of a bone. The pins radiate outward through the flesh and are attached, spokelike, to two rings outside the skin. The two rings are in turn connected by rods whose length is adjustable. The surgeon then cuts around the perimeter of the bone at some point between the rings. The incision must be deep enough so that the bone parts slightly when pulled from opposite ends but not so deep that the marrow, which nourishes the bone, suffers damage.

By adjusting the rods, the patient or the physician can in effect stretch the bone between the rings. The bone may grow in the region of the initial incision by as much as one centimeter every 10 days; it takes about twice as long for the new bone to harden.

The apparatus is also able to straighten bones, Paley says, much as orthodontic braces straighten teeth. Of course, wearing the apparatus has its drawbacks. The wires piercing the skin sometimes cause infection, and the limb being stretched often aches. Victor H. Frankel of the Hospital for Joint Diseases Orthopaedic Institute in New York maintains, nonetheless, that the procedure has proved less traumatic and risky than bone grafting and other forms of major orthopedic surgery.

Ilizarov and other Soviet and Soviet-bloc surgeons trained in his technique have done more than 500,000 operations over the past few decades and have published extensively. Why has Western medicine been so slow to adopt the procedure? "The original literature was in Russian, and the technique was developed in a small city in western Siberia," notes Frankel, who learned of the Ilizarov procedure in 1984 and first performed it—on a woman whose leg had been crushed in a car accident—less than two years ago. "Frankly, it seemed a little unbelievable at first." —*J.H.*

Ilizarov's procedure requires an operation that is less traumatic than most major orthopedic surgery



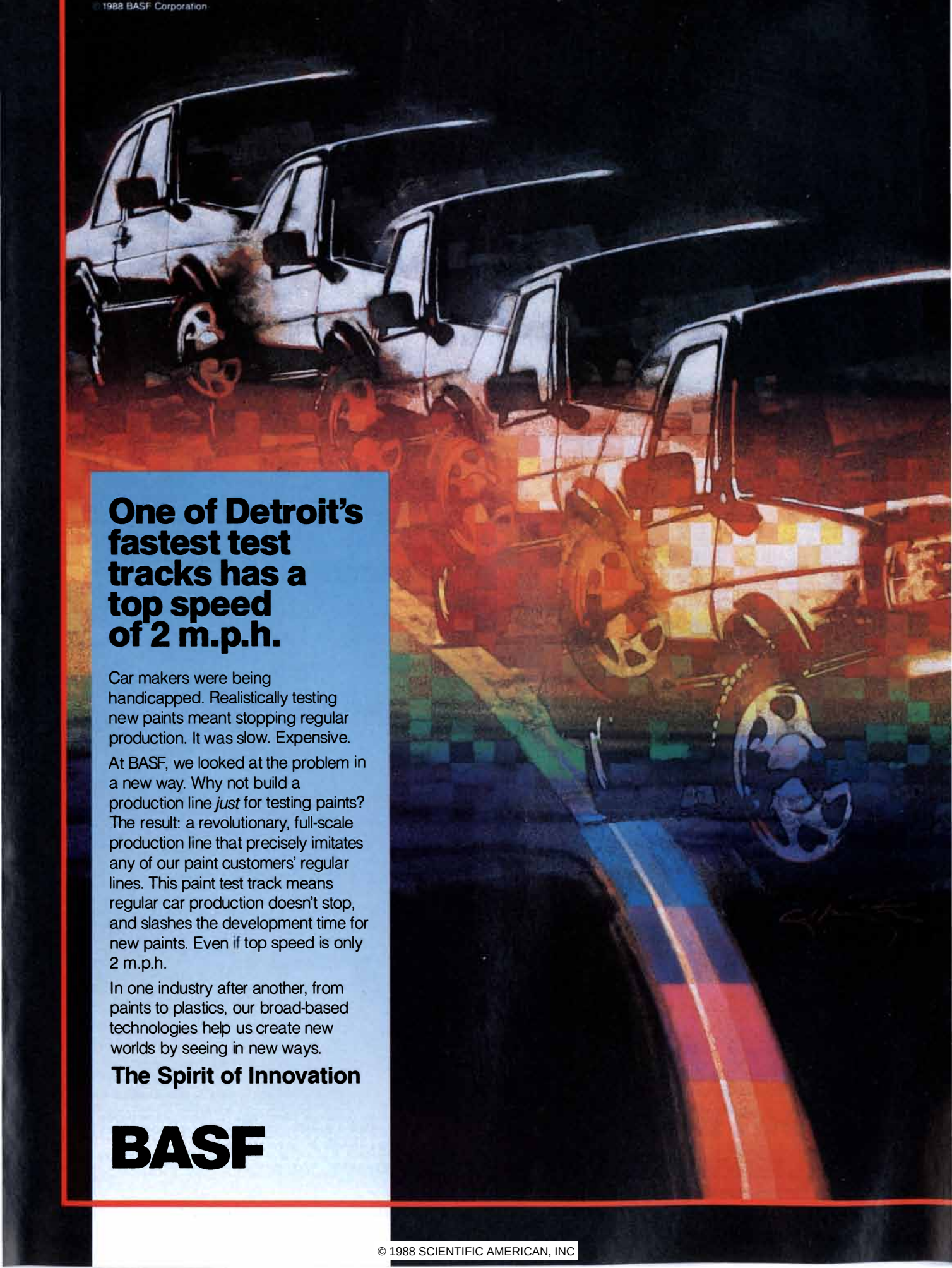
BONE-LENGTHENING BRACE designed by Gavriel A. Ilizarov is fitted to a patient by surgeons at the University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center at Dallas.

Bypass Blues

The benefits of surgery decrease with time

It has been accepted for some time that coronary-bypass surgery can relieve the pain of angina and improve the lives of those who undergo the operation by increasing their tolerance for physical exercise. But does it also extend their lives? There the facts have been less clear. Recent results from a large European study of bypass recipients suggest that the procedure does extend life. The benefits in longevity, however, decrease with time, and they apply primarily to those with the severest heart disease.

In bypass surgery a vessel (often a portion of the saphenous vein, which runs behind the knee) is joined to an occluded coronary artery, producing a shunt that supplies additional blood to the heart. Questions about this procedure are of concern to society as a whole as well as to individual physicians and patients. Last year in the U.S.



One of Detroit's fastest test tracks has a top speed of 2 m.p.h.

Car makers were being handicapped. Realistically testing new paints meant stopping regular production. It was slow. Expensive.

At BASF, we looked at the problem in a new way. Why not build a production line *just* for testing paints? The result: a revolutionary, full-scale production line that precisely imitates any of our paint customers' regular lines. This paint test track means regular car production doesn't stop, and slashes the development time for new paints. Even if top speed is only 2 m.p.h.

In one industry after another, from paints to plastics, our broad-based technologies help us create new worlds by seeing in new ways.

The Spirit of Innovation

BASF

Great Products at Great Prices from a Great Company... ELEK-TEK

HUGE DISCOUNTS ON DATA STORAGE

TOSHIBA EPSON OKIDATA HEWLETT PACKARD XEROX / Diablo

HARD DRIVES

SEAGATE
Internal Hard Disk Subsystems

20 Megabyte w/ Contr. XT	$299
20 Megabyte 3.5" w/Cont.	329
30 Megabyte RLL. XT	329
40 Megabyte 40 MS 1/2 HT	399
40 Megabyte 28 MS 1/2 HT	499
80 Megabyte 28 MS	699

MINISCRIBE

30 Megabyte RLL XT	349
40 Megabyte 28 MS 1/2 HT	649
60 Megabyte Full HT XT	549
70 Megabyte 28 MS	849

HARD DRIVE CARDS

Western Digital 30PS 30MB	$399

PLUS DEVELOPMENT

20 MB Hard Card	550
40 MB Hard Card	689

TAPE BACKUPS

Archive XL 40 MB XT or AT	$329
Mountain int. 40 MB XT or AT	379
Mountain ext. 40 MB XT or AT	575

Full Line of Mountain PC & PS/2 Tape Drives Available

DATA STORAGE

i·MEGA

Bernoulli Box II INT 20 MB.	$800
Bernoulli Box II Ext 20 MB	1699
PC3B XT/AT Universal Interface	149
PC4B PS/2 50/60/80 Interface	299
5.25" 20 MB Cartridges 3 pk.	239
8" 10 MB Cartridges 3 pk.	155
8" 20 MB Cartridges 3 pk.	239

DISK DRIVES

TOSHIBA

ND04D 5.25" 360k 1/2ht. XT	$99
ND04Deg 5.25" 360k 1/2ht. AT	99
ND08Deg 5.25" 1.2MB 1/2ht. AT	99
ND352KU 3.5" 720k 1/2ht. AT	99
ND356T 3.5" 1.44MB 1/2ht. AT	125

MONITORS

ZENITH

Zenith ZCM-1490 flat screen 14" VGA color monitor	$599

BEST BUY

Samsung Flat-screen Amber	$109
Samsung 2565 12" Amber TTL	99
Samsung 13" color	275
Samsung EGA	350
Samsung Multisync	475

NEC

Multisync Amber, Green	$199
Multisync II color	599

AMDEK

210A Amber	$99
410A, 410G, 410W	150

SONY MONITORS

CPD1303P	550

VIDEO BOARDS

Hercules Graphics PLUS	$179
Generic Hercules compatible	80
Hercules color	155
Generic color compatible	80
Hercules InColor card	225*
Vega Deluxe	199
Everex EGA Autoswitch w/Port	129
Paradise EGA 350	135
Paradise EGA 480	185
Paradise VGA Plus	275
Vega VGA	299
Everex VGA	260
ATI VGA Improved Perf.	299
Orchid Designer VGA	325

**$139 with purchase of any monitor*

MULTIFUNCTION BOARDS

AST

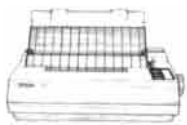
Six Pak Plus 384K XT	CALL
Six Pak Premium	CALL
Rampage 286	CALL
Rampage/2 PS/2 50&60	CALL
Advantage Premium	CALL
Advantage/2 PS/2 50&60	CALL
XFormer/286	599

ORCHID

Tiny Turbo	$275
Twin Turbo	389
Ramquest PS/2 50/60 2MB	645

PRINTERS

Epson's FX-850 is the industry's standard DOT MATRIX PRINTER. Features include 8K buffer, NLQ 54/200 cps draft



Proven 9-pin technology, advanced paper-handling capabilities, high speed performance.

OTHER EPSON PRINTERS

FX 850 (New!)	CALL
FX 286e wide carriage (New)	CALL
LX 800 180 CPS	$199
FX 1050 (New!)	CALL
LQ 500 180 CPS	CALL
LQ 800 NLQ (Parallel)	299
LQ 850 264 CPS	CALL
LQ 1050 264 CPS	CALL
LQ 2550(new)NLQ 324 CPS	CALL

OKIDATA PRINTERS

320 **(New)**	$350
321 **(New)**	499
390 **(New)**	499
391 **(New)**	699
393	969
393 Color	1059
182 Plus/Parallel	$239
292E*	389
292E*	525

*Requires Personality Module

TOSHIBA PRINTERS

P321SL	$485
P341SL	650
P351SX*	999

CHIPS

256K RAM	CALL
256K Static RAM (80 NS)	CALL
128K RAM 150 NS	CALL
NEC V-20-8	$9.99
Intel 8087 math (5 MHz)	95
Intel 80872 math (6/8 MHz)	139
Intel 80287 math (6/8 MHz)	150
Intel 802878 math (8 MHz)	220
Intel 8028710 math (10 MHz)	260
Intel 80387 math (16 MHz)	435
Intel 8038720 math (20 MHz)	625
Intel 8038725 math (25 MHz)	799

MODEMS

HAYES Internal (incl. software)

1200B 1200 Baud	$279
2400B 2400	429

HAYES External
(no software included)

1200 1200 Baud	289
2400 2400 Baud	439

OTHER MODEMS
Hayes compatible

Internal *(including software)*

Practical Peripherals 1200 baud	64
Everex 1200 baud	79
Everex 2400 baud	139

External *(no software included)*

U.S. Robotics 1200 baud	179
U.S. Robotics 2400 baud	329
U.S. Robotics 2400E	385
U.S. Robotics 9600HST	650
Practical Peripherals 1200baud	109
Practical Peripherals 2400baud	179
Everex 2400	199

MODEMS FOR TOSHIBA PORTABLES

2400 Baud Internal Modems

For T1000	$255
For 1100+, 1200, 3100, 5100,	285

SWITCH BOXES

PUSHBUTTON

448010 2 pos. 25-pin AB	$29
448052 2 pos. 36-pin AB	32

ROTARY

448028 3 pos. 25-pin ABC	$29
448060 3 pos. 36-pin ABC	33

TRIPPLITE, PERMAPOWER POWER PROTECTION

Surge Protector Strips

Scooter 3 outlet	$9.90
Perma Power 6 outlet	28
Isobar 4-6 4 outlet	42
Isobar 8-15 8 outlet	57
Isobar 8-15RM 8 outlet w/remote	65

Line conditioners/stabilizers

LS600 2 Outlet 600 Watt	$85
LC1200 4 outlet 1200 watt	149
LC1800 6 outlet 1800 watt	199

Command consoles

CCI 612	$79
CCI6-Plus built-in modem prot.	85
Perma RS562 Power Cmdr	65

Standby power systems

BC325 325 watt system	$275
BC450 450 watt system	360
BC750 750 watt system	535
BC1200 1200 watt system	725
BC2000 2000 watt system	1199
PermaPower SPS500 500w	499

(*Packed in flip 'n' file) (**unformatted)	Disco	maxell	3M		ELEK-TEK	SONY	Memorex
3 1/2" SSDD	14.00	12.00*	12.00	--	--	13.00	12.00
3 1/2" DSDD	17.00	17.00	17.00	22.00	--	17.00	16.00
3 1/2" DSDDHD	--	45.00	45.00	45.00	--	45.00	--
5 1/4" SSDD	8.00	8.00	8.00	--	--	--	7.00
5 1/4" DSDD	10.00	9.00	9.00	15.00	7.99	--	8.00
5 1/4" DSDD96TPI	12.00	18.50	18.50	--	--	--	10.00
5 1/4" DSDDHD (for IBM AT)	12.00	17.00	17.00	28.00	9.99	--	17.00
8" SSDD**	19.00	20.00	21.00	--	--	--	--
8" DSDD**	23.00	23.00	24.00	--	--	--	--

3M DATA CARTRIDGES

3M	Quantity 1	10	25
DC100A	$13.50	$13.00	$12.00
DC300A	17.50	17.00	16.00
DC300XL/P	21.50	21.00	20.00
DC600A	23.00	22.50	21.50
DC600HC	25.50	25.00	24.00
DC615HC	19.00	18.50	17.50
DC1000	14.50	14.00	13.00
DC1000 alpha 20MB*	16.50	16.00	15.00
DC1000 delta 20MB*	16.50	16.00	15.00
DC2000	19.00	18.50	17.50
DC2000 gamma 40MB*	22.50	22.00	21.00
DC2000 kappa 40MB*	22.50	22.00	21.00

DICONIX 8213
Portable Printer
Perfect for Laptop Computers
Elek-Tek Price $299

IBM 5182
Color Dot-Matrix Printer
Mfr. Sugg. Ret. $2200
Elek-Tek Price 399.00

HEWLETT PACKARD
LaserJet Toner Cartridges
HP92285A for Original LaserJet
HP92295A for LaserJet Series II
Mfr. Sugg. Ret. $125
$82
Quantity Discounts on 25 or more

PRINT BUFFERS

PRACTICAL PERIPHERALS

64K parallel or serial	145
256K parallel or serial	219

HANZON

64K universal	$250
64K memory expansion	56

SMG

PB36 256K Parallel	$159
PB36AB 2 Pos. 256K Parallel	175

ELEK-TEK, inc.

Corporate accounts invited, minimum order $15.00 Visa or MasterCard by Mail or Phone. Mail cashiers check, money order, personal check, add $4.00 1st item. (AK, HI, P.R., Canada add $10.00 1st item) $1.00 ea. add'l. shpg. and handl. Shipments to IL add 7% tax.

Write for free catalog DUNS #09-718-0517

IBM is a trademark of International Business Machines Co.

6557 North Lincoln Avenue, Chicago Illinois 60645 Call in IL **312-982-5765**
Call Toll Free **800-621-1269** — Except IL, AK Canadian Toll Free **800-459-9133**

Prices subject to change, all products subject to availability.
ALL ELEK-TEK MERCHANDISE IS BRAND NEW, FIRST QUALITY AND COMPLETE.

RETURN POLICY: All sales are final except defectives which will be replaced with identical merchandise only within 30 days. (computers and large peripherals — 3 work days) after which manufacturer's warranty applies.

more than 200,000 bypass procedures were carried out in non-Federal hospitals alone.

The recent results, published in the *New England Journal of Medicine,* are the latest from the European Coronary Surgery Study, a multicenter trial that has been under way since 1973. In the first three years of the study 767 patients were enrolled and randomly assigned to bypass surgery or to treatment with medication alone. The patients were tracked continuously thereafter; some patients have now been followed for 12 years.

After five years there was a clear difference between the two groups: 92 percent of the surgical patients were still alive, compared with 83 percent of those treated with drugs. The difference was highly significant statistically. After 12 years, however, the disparity had become less substantial: 71 percent of surgery patients and 67 percent of those treated with drugs remained alive, and the difference was much less significant in a statistical sense.

When the two groups were examined in more detail, it became clear that patients with severe disease derived the greatest benefits to longevity. Two signs of severe coronary-artery disease are the narrowing of several coronary vessels and the involvement of the left anterior descending coronary artery, one of the main branches of the coronary circulation. Those signs were found to be the "most powerful predictor of benefit from early surgical treatment," according to the authors of the study.

What accounts for this pattern? In an editorial in the same issue of the *New England Journal,* Thomas Killip of the Beth Israel Medical Center (developer of a widely used scheme for classifying episodes of myocardial infarction) concludes that "the important new information is that surgical relief is not necessarily long lasting." The reason, Killip continues, is that after surgery the bypass grafts deteriorate and atherosclerosis continues to progress in the native arteries.

When this happens, the answer is generally a second bypass operation, a procedure that is distinctly riskier than the first. For the physician, the implication of the current work is that bypass surgery should be done quickly on those with severe coronary disease but should be reserved until later in more moderate cases. "The challenge to the clinician," Killip concludes, "is to recommend the optimal time for bypass surgery, if indicated." —*John Benditt*

OVERVIEW

The Bionic Mind

Electrodes in the brain may—someday—aid paralysis victims

By means of assorted ingenious gadgets, some people paralyzed by disease or by a trauma to the nervous system can control a computer—thereby actuating a wheelchair, a speech synthesizer or even their enervated limbs—by swiveling an eye, flexing a tongue or blowing through a straw. Far more accommodating prosthetic systems may be in the works. If the efforts of several somewhat quixotic biomedical engineers bear fruit, victims of paralysis will someday exert control over their bodies—and environments—by thinking.

Any voluntary action—the closing of a fist, for example—begins with the generation of minute electrical impulses by neurons in the brain. Leaping from neuron to neuron, these impulses pass through the spinal cord and peripheral nerves and finally to the muscles that control the hand, causing them to contract. If the neural pathway between the brain and the hand is severed, the brain's command never reaches its destination.

Workers are now seeking to restore the connection between thought and action by developing devices that can detect neural commands, either in the brain or along the neural pathway, and transform them into electronic ones. The electronic signals could control external hardware, perhaps an artificial gripper; they could also feed back to so-called stimulating electrodes that can induce the paralyzed muscles to contract and thereby restore some function to the limb.

The investigators stress that clinical trials of thought-sensing electrodes are still far off and that their research may not result in practical prosthetic systems in this century. Indeed, David J. Edell of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology says he tries, in describing his work, not to raise the hopes of quadriplegics and other victims of neurological disorders. Even the most soberly worded reports on his research, he notes, leave him inundated by telephone calls and letters, many from people eager to be research subjects. "People don't appreciate how much fundamental science still has to be done," he says.

The biggest challenge consists in determining which signals to pick up and how to detect them. For most of

the past eight years Edell has been doing what he calls "nuts and bolts" work: searching for nontoxic conductors that can survive in the warm, salty environment of the body for extended periods, establishing how large an electrode should be to pick up a clear signal and determining how close one electrode can be to another before they detect the same neural signals. Recently he and his colleagues have settled on a fork-shaped silicon device whose tines are studded with as many as 130 electrodes spaced from 25 to 100 microns apart. Each electrode can detect the firing of a separate neuron. The tines are honed to be extraordinarily sharp so that the device can be inserted into tissue without tearing it.

Edell says the device appears to be compatible with the nervous systems of rabbits; it has survived for up to two years at a time without damaging the surrounding tissue. In one set of experiments he severed the sciatic nerves—which control muscles in the hind leg—of rabbits and attached electrode arrays to the brainward side of the nerve. If a rabbit moved or tensed its leg, the array recorded signals from the severed nerve. These experiments, Edell says, suggest that an electrode array attached to nerves in an amputee's stump might provide signals that would help him to control an artificial limb or other prosthetic device.

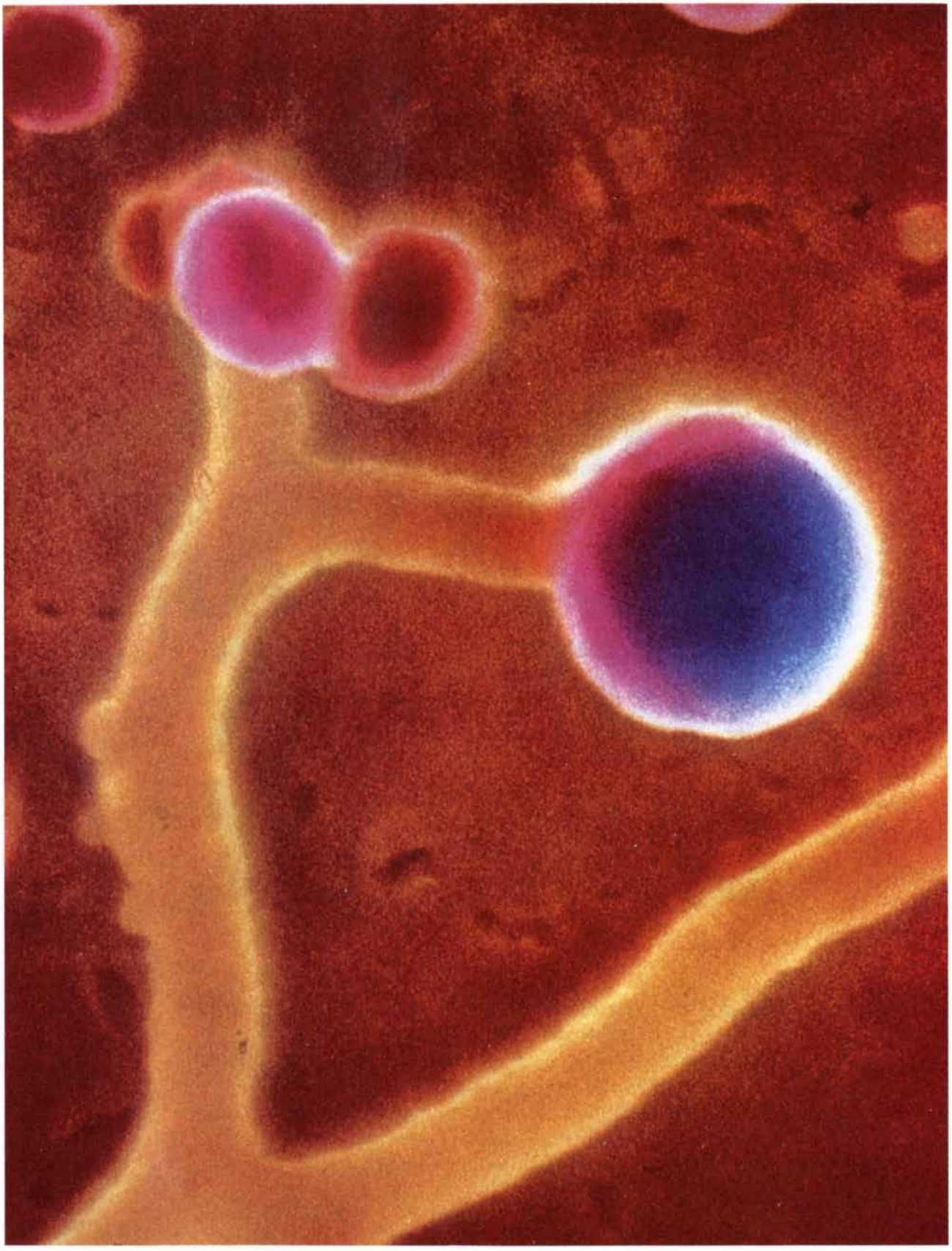
Edell suspects it may be easier to exert mental control over the firing of individual neurons in the peripheral nerves and even in the spinal cord, where much "information processing" takes place, than it is in the brain. For people paralyzed from the neck down, however, brain implants may be the only answer.

Edell is now undertaking an experiment to determine whether a rabbit can deliberately initiate the firing of a neuron or group of neurons in its motor cortex, a region of the brain that controls physical activity. He has built a box that has an automatic food dispenser connected to a light. When the light goes on, food enters the box—but only if the rabbit does a certain physical task. The trick, for the rabbit, is to figure out what the task is. The rabbits have previously learned to perform such tasks as blocking the light with their nose (thereby blocking a photodetector on the opposite side of the box and triggering the food dispenser) when they see the light flash. Edell has reconfigured the box to release food if, when the light goes on, an array implanted in the rabbit's motor cortex detects a neuron firing. Next, Edell plans to test whether rabbits can control the firing of neurons in their spinal cord.

The question of voluntary control over neural activity, particularly in the brain, is a crucial one. Two related questions investigators must face, according to Kensall D. Wise of the University of Michigan, who has been working on neural sensors since 1966, are where the electrodes should be placed and how many neurons they must monitor to generate usable commands. Wise says a single neuron may not be able to initiate a unique command, since it may take part in more than one mental activity. He points out, moreover, that although earlier research has revealed connections between some regions of the brain and such functions as vision, hearing and motor activities, investigators still have only a vague concept of how the nervous system initiates and carries out actions.

The part of the brain that can envision throwing a ball, Wise adds, is totally separate from the part that initiates the muscle contractions needed to carry out the act. Thus brain implants may not allow quadriplegics to achieve a specific feat—activating an artificial arm, for example—simply by envisioning the act. Patients may have to undergo a monitoring period to determine what mental activity triggers a specific pattern of pulses; they may then have to learn to control the activity in order to command a prosthetic device. Wise notes, however, that neural electrodes should help workers to map the nervous system and describe it more accurately with neural networks and other models. This information in turn should advance the work on neural prostheses.

William J. Heetderks of the National Institute of Neurological and Communicative Disorders and Stroke neural-prosthesis program, which funds Edell and Wise, among others, says he has a rather simple initial goal in mind for the research. He hopes that neural sensors—implanted in the motor cortex, perhaps, and linked to stimulating electrodes attached to peripheral nerves—may enable a quadriplegic to control a single hand. In the distant future, he adds, brain implants may even be able to restore memory or cognitive function lost as a result of stroke, Alzheimer's disease or other neural disorders. "It might be some hybrid electronic and biological device that looks like a neuron, has a programmable chemistry and can seek out and make connections on its own," he remarks. "But that's just a dream now." —*John Horgan*



NEW AIDS-VIRUS PARTICLES burst from a thin tube called a microvillus extending from the surface of an infected cell in culture. The micrograph, which has an enlargement of more than 500,000 diameters, was made by Lennart Nilsson of the Karolinska Institute in Stockholm. (The colors are artificial.) The virus, which is now called the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), belongs to the category called retroviruses. It was discovered and linked to AIDS by the authors of this article.

SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN October 1988 Volume 259 Number 4

AIDS in 1988

In their first collaborative article the investigators who discovered HIV introduce a single-topic issue on AIDS. They recount the discovery and offer prospects for vaccine, for therapy and for the epidemic

by Robert C. Gallo and Luc Montagnier

As recently as a decade ago it was widely believed that infectious disease was no longer much of a threat in the developed world. The remaining challenges to public health there, it was thought, stemmed from noninfectious conditions such as cancer, heart disease and degenerative diseases. That confidence was shattered in the early 1980's by the advent of AIDS. Here was a devastating disease caused by a class of infectious agents—retroviruses—that had first been found in human beings only a few years before. In spite of the startling nature of the epidemic, science responded quickly. In the two years from mid-1982 to mid-1984 the outlines of the epidemic were clarified, a new virus—the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)—was isolated and shown to cause the disease, a blood test was formulated and the virus's targets in the body were established.

Following that initial burst, progress has been steady, albeit slower. Yet in some respects the virus has outpaced science. No cure or vaccine is yet available, and the epidemic continues to spread; disease-causing retroviruses will be among the human population for a long time. In view of that prospect, it is essential to ask where we stand in relation to AIDS in 1988. How was HIV discovered and linked to AIDS? How does the virus cause its devastation? What are the chances that AIDS will spread rapidly outside the known high-risk groups? What are the prospects for a vaccine? For therapy? How can the epidemic most effectively be fought? Those are some of the questions this article and this issue of *Scientific American* have set out to answer.

Like other viruses, retroviruses cannot replicate without taking over the biosynthetic apparatus of a cell and exploiting it for their own ends. What is unique about retroviruses is their capacity to reverse the ordinary flow of genetic information—from DNA to RNA to proteins (which are the cell's structural and functional molecules). The genetic material of a retrovirus is RNA. In addition, the retrovirus carries an enzyme called reverse transcriptase, which can use the viral RNA as a template for making DNA. The viral DNA can integrate itself into the genome (the complement of genetic information) of the host. Having made itself at home among the host's genes, the viral DNA remains latent until it is activated to make new virus particles. The latent DNA can also initiate the process that leads to tumor formation.

Retroviruses and their cancer-causing potential are not new to science. At the beginning of this century several investigators identified transmissible agents in animals that were capable of causing leukemias (cancers of blood cells) as well as solid-tissue tumors. In the succeeding decades retroviruses were identified in many animal species. Yet the life cycle of retroviruses remained obscure until 1970, when Howard M. Temin of the University of Wisconsin at Madison and (independently) David Baltimore of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology discovered reverse transcriptase, confirming Temin's hypothesis that the retroviral life cycle includes an intermediate DNA form, which Temin had called the provirus. The details of viral replication quickly fell into place.

In spite of such discoveries, by the mid-1970's no infectious retroviruses had been found in human beings, and many investigators firmly believed no human retrovirus would ever be found. Their skepticism had several grounds. Many excellent scientists had tried and failed to find such a virus. Moreover, most animal retroviruses had been fairly easy to find, because they replicated in large quantities, and the new virus particles were readily observed in the electron microscope; no such phenomenon had been found in human beings. In spite of this skepticism, by 1980 a prolonged team effort led by one of us (Gallo) paid off in the isolation of the first human retrovirus: human *T*-lymphotropic virus type I (HTLV-I).

HTLV-I infects *T* lymphocytes, white blood cells that have a central role in the immune response. The virus causes a rare, highly malignant cancer called adult *T*-cell leukemia (ATL) that is endemic in parts of Japan, Africa and the Caribbean but is spreading to other regions as well. Two years af-

ROBERT C. GALLO and LUC MONTAGNIER are the investigators who established the cause of AIDS. Gallo is chief of the Laboratory of Tumor Cell Biology at the National Cancer Institute. Montagnier is professor of virology at the Pasteur Institute in Paris and director of research at the French National Center for Scientific Research (CNRS).

ter the discovery of HTLV-I the same group isolated its close relative, HTLV-II. HTLV-II probably causes some cases of a disease called hairy-cell leukemia as well as *T*-cell leukemias and lymphomas of a more chronic type than those linked to HTLV-I. The two viruses, however, share some crucial features. They are spread by blood, by sexual intercourse and from mother to child. Both cause disease after a long latency, and both infect *T* lymphocytes. When AIDS was first recognized, these properties took on great additional significance.

The first AIDS cases were diagnosed in 1981 among young homosexual men in the U.S. [see "The Epidemiology of AIDS in the U.S.," by William L. Heyward and James W. Curran, page 72]. Although the syndrome was puzzling, it soon became clear that all its victims suffered from a depletion of a specific subset of *T* cells—*T*4 cells—and that as a result they fell prey to pathogens that would easily be controlled by a healthy immune system [see "HIV Infection: The Clinical Picture," by Robert R. Redfield and Donald S. Burke, page 90]. A variety of hypotheses were advanced to explain AIDS, including breakdown of the victims' immune systems following repeated exposure to foreign proteins—or even to sperm—during homosexual intercourse. It seemed more plausible, however, to explain a new syndrome by the appearance of a new infectious agent.

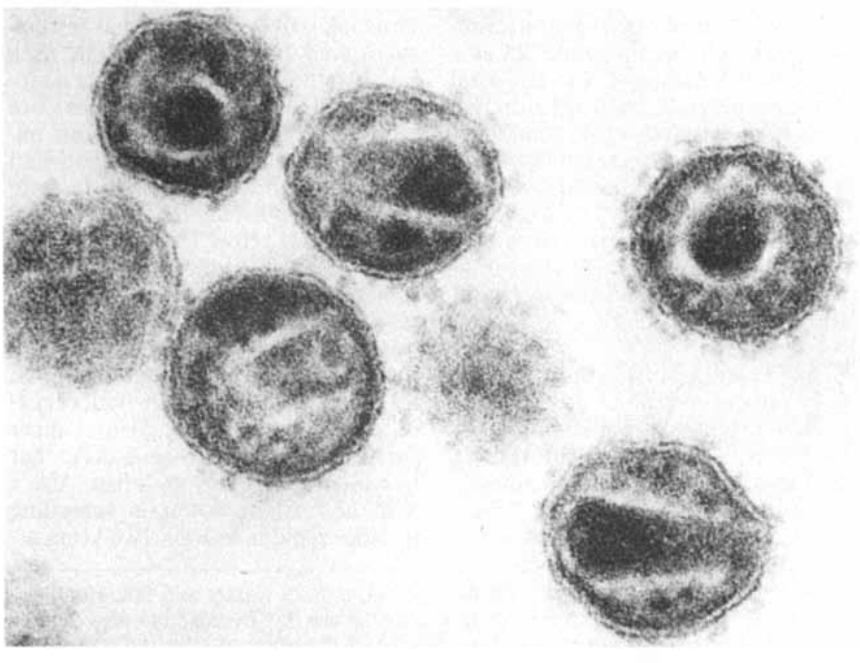
To one of us (Gallo) the likeliest agent was a retrovirus. It had already been shown that the AIDS pathogen, like HTLV-I, could be transmitted by sexual intercourse and by blood. Furthermore, Max Essex of the Harvard School of Public Health had shown that a retrovirus of cats called feline leukemia virus (FeLV) could cause either cancer or immune suppression. Since in most species the infectious retroviruses are closely related, it seemed plausible that the same was true in human beings. Hence the initial hypothesis was that the cause of AIDS was a close relative of HTLV-I. That hypothesis, as it turned out, was wrong. Nonetheless, it was fruitful, because it stimulated the search that led to the correct solution.

The retrovirus hypothesis for the origin of AIDS reached the other one of us in France in the following way. Almost as soon as AIDS was first diagnosed, a working group on the syndrome had been formed by a circle of young clinicians and researchers in France. One member of the group, Jacques Leibowitch of the Raymond Poincaré Hospital in Paris, had had some contact with Gallo's team and carried the HTLV hypothesis back to France. The members of the French group wanted to test that hypothesis, and they had the biological materials to do so, because the group included clinicians with patients afflicted by AIDS or pre-AIDS. What they lacked, however, was the collaboration of virologists experienced in work with retroviruses.

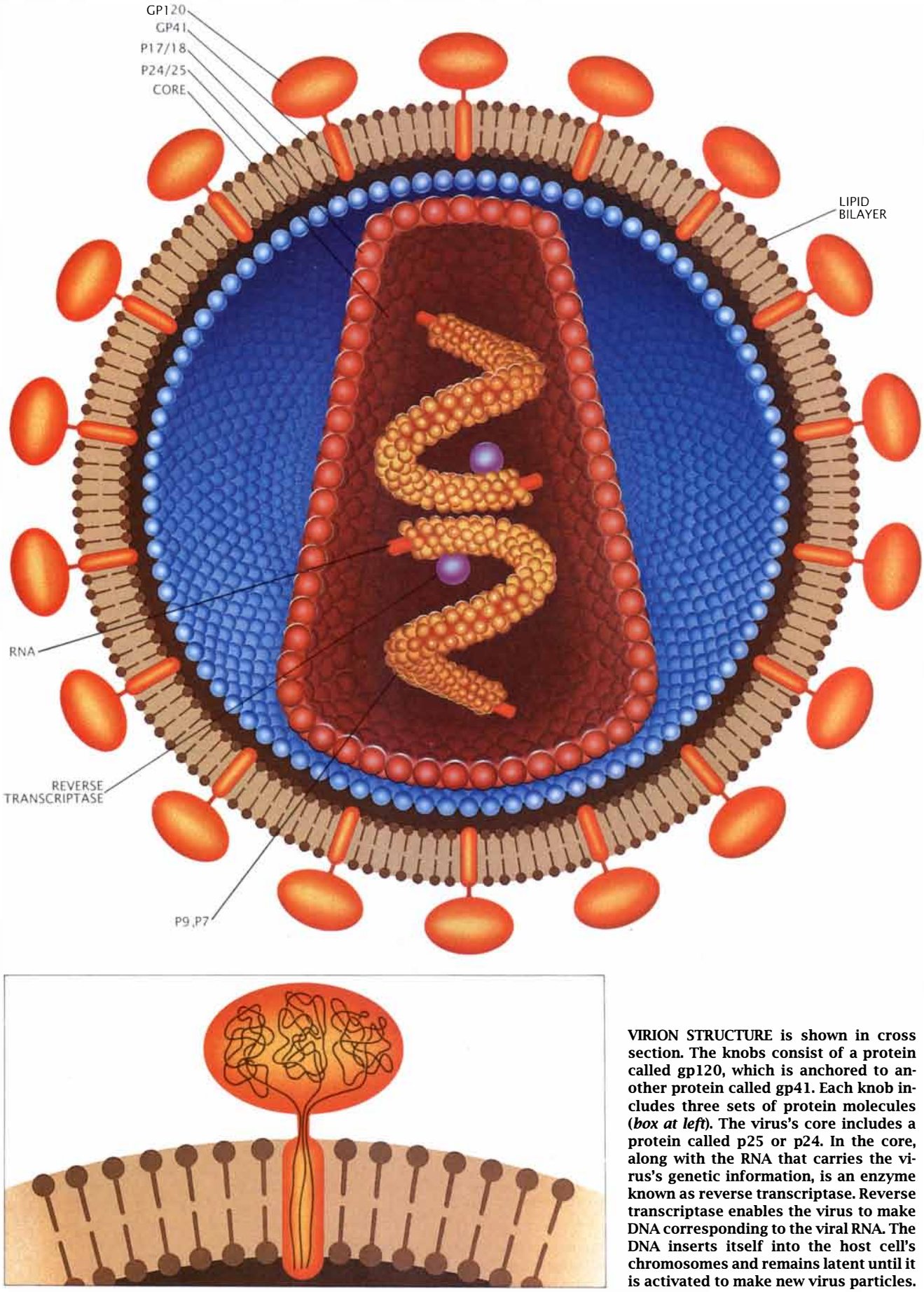
The French author of this article and his colleagues Françoise Barré-Sinoussi and Jean-Claude Chermann at the Pasteur Institute fitted that description. They were engaged in several lines of work on cancer and interferon, including attempts to find retroviruses in patients with cancer, particularly in cultures of lymphocytes. A member of the working group, Willy Rozenbaum of the Salpêtrière Hospital, asked whether they were interested in analyzing tissues from a patient with lymphadenopathy, or swollen glands. (Lymphadenopathy can be an early sign of the process that culminates in AIDS. Such a patient was chosen because finding a virus early in the disease seemed more meaningful than finding one later, when AIDS patients were infected with many opportunistic agents.) The answer was yes, and in January, 1983, a specimen from the swollen lymph node of a young homosexual arrived at Montagnier's laboratory.

The specimen was minced, put into tissue culture and analyzed for reverse transcriptase. After two weeks of culture, reverse-transcriptase activity was detected in the culture medium. A retrovirus was present. But which one? The first possibility that had to be tested was whether the virus was one of the known HTLV's, or perhaps a close relative of them. That possibility was tested using specific HTLV-I reagents supplied by Gallo. The virus did not react significantly with the HTLV-I reagents; a similar result was later obtained with HTLV-II reagents. A strenuous effort was begun to characterize the new agent.

Among the first results of that effort was the finding that the new virus (which was named lymphadenopathy-associated virus, or LAV) grew in *T*4 cells but not in related cells called *T*8; that finding was made by David Klatzmann and Jean-Claude Gluckman of the Salpêtrière Hospital in collaboration with the Pasteur group. It was shown that the virus could kill *T*4 cells or inhibit their growth. Electron micrographs of the new virus were different from those of HTLV-I and resembled those of a retrovirus of horses. A viral protein called P25 (or P24) that is not present in HTLV-I was identified. In



HIV VIRION, or particle, is a sphere 1,000 angstrom units (one ten-thousandth of a millimeter) across. The sphere contains a core that holds the virus's genetic material: RNA. The core is a truncated cone; from the end it appears as a disk. The virion is wrapped in a membrane like that of a cell, from which protein "knobs" extend. The knobs are faintly visible in the micrograph, which has an enlargement of 200,000 diameters and was made by Hans Gelderblom of the Robert Koch Institute in Berlin.



VIRION STRUCTURE is shown in cross section. The knobs consist of a protein called gp120, which is anchored to another protein called gp41. Each knob includes three sets of protein molecules (*box at left*). The virus's core includes a protein called p25 or p24. In the core, along with the RNA that carries the virus's genetic information, is an enzyme known as reverse transcriptase. Reverse transcriptase enables the virus to make DNA corresponding to the viral RNA. The DNA inserts itself into the host cell's chromosomes and remains latent until it is activated to make new virus particles.

collaboration with virologists from the Claude Bernard Hospital a blood test for LAV antibodies was formulated. Several examples of LAV or LAV-like viruses were isolated from homosexual men, hemophiliacs and central Africans.

Early results of applying the blood test were suggestive but not fully conclusive. LAV antibodies were found in a large fraction of lymphadenopathy patients but in only a minority of AIDS patients. Yet the proportion increased as the sensitivity of the test improved. By October, 1983, it had reached 40 percent. At that point one of us (Montagnier) was convinced LAV was the best candidate for the cause of AIDS.

To the other one of us the evidence did not seem so clear. For one thing, results had been obtained (by Gallo and Essex) indicating that some AIDS patients are infected with HTLV-I or a variant of that virus. It is now known that those results stemmed partly from the fact that among people infected with HIV are some who are also infected with the HTLV's. Moreover, only a minority—albeit a substantial one—of AIDS patients had shown serological evidence of LAV infection. In addition, when it was first isolated, LAV could not be grown in large amounts in continuous cell lines. Without large quantities of virus it was difficult to prepare specific LAV reagents that could be used to show that all people with AIDS or pre-AIDS were infected by the same type of virus.

Therefore on the American side much effort was concentrated on growing the pathogen from the blood of AIDS patients in mass, continuous culture. By the end of 1983 that task had been accomplished by the Gallo team: several cell lines had been identified that could support the growth of the new agent. The first reagents for specifically typing this virus were rapidly made. Employing those reagents, it was shown that 48 isolates obtained beginning in early 1983 from AIDS patients and people in risk groups were all the same type of virus, which was called HTLV-III on the American side. A blood test was formulated and used to show that HTLV-III was present in almost all people with AIDS, in a variable proportion of people at risk of the disease (including people who had received blood contaminated by the virus but had no other risk factors) and in no healthy heterosexuals. The cause of AIDS had been conclusively established.

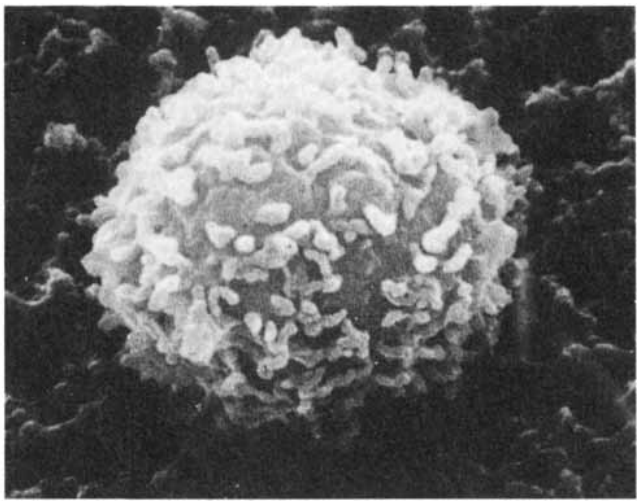
These results confirmed and extended the ones from France. LAV and HTLV-III were soon shown to be the same virus. Before long an international commission had changed its name to HIV, to eliminate confusion caused by two names for the same entity and to acknowledge that the virus does indeed cause AIDS. Thus contributions from our laboratories—in roughly equal proportions—had demonstrated that the cause of AIDS is a new human retrovirus.

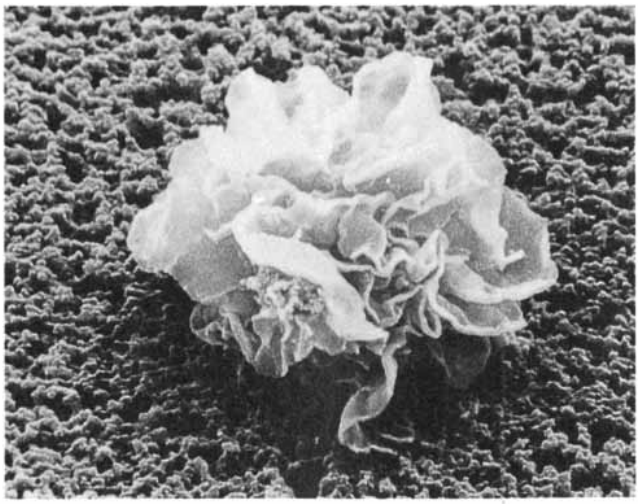
That HIV is the cause of AIDS is by now firmly established. The evidence for causation includes the fact that HIV is a new pathogen, fulfilling the original postulate of "new disease, new agent." In addition, although the original tests found evidence of HIV infection in only a fraction of people with AIDS, newer and more sensitive methods make it possible to find such evidence in almost every individual with AIDS or pre-AIDS. Studies of blood-transfusion recipients indicate that people exposed to HIV who have no other risk factors develop AIDS. The epidemiological evidence shows that in every country studied so far AIDS has appeared only after HIV. What is more, HIV infects and kills the very *T4* cells that are depleted in AIDS. Although the causative role of HIV in AIDS has been questioned, to us it seems clear that the cause of AIDS is as well established as that of any other human disease.

Soon after the causation was established, a series of findings began to fill in the scientific picture of HIV. In a remarkably short time the genetic material of the virus was cloned and sequenced (in our laboratories and several others). The genetic complexity of HIV began to emerge when a gene called TAT was discovered by William A. Haseltine of the Dana-Farber Cancer Institute, Flossie Wong-Staal of the National Cancer Institute and their collaborators [see "The Molecular Biology of the AIDS Virus," by William A. Haseltine and Flossie Wong-Staal, page

TYPE OF EVIDENCE	DESCRIPTION
ANIMAL SYSTEMS	Several types of retroviruses can cause severe immune deficiencies in animals. For example, the feline leukemia virus (FeLV) can cause either immune deficiency or cancer, depending on slight genetic variations in the virus. A virus related to HIV, the simian immunodeficiency virus (SIV), can cause AIDS in macaque monkeys. The second AIDS virus, HIV-2, may also cause AIDS in macaques.
EPIDEMIOLOGY	In every country studied so far, AIDS has appeared only after the appearance of HIV. Using the most recent technology, HIV can be isolated from almost 100 percent of the people with AIDS. Earlier in the epidemic, the virus was present in the groups at risk for the disease and in almost no healthy heterosexuals.
BLOOD-TRANSFUSION DATA	A study of people who received blood transfusions in 1982–83 (when the fraction of blood donors infected with HIV was about 1 in 2,000) showed that of 28 people who got AIDS, the virus could be found in all 28. Furthermore, for each recipient who got AIDS an infected donor could be found. Today most of those infected donors have also developed AIDS. Elimination of HIV in blood transfusions by antibody screening has drastically reduced the number of AIDS cases resulting from transfusions.
TEST-TUBE STUDIES	In the laboratory the virus kills the very *T4* cells whose depletion is the hallmark of AIDS. It also infects and alters the function of cells of the monocyte-macrophage lineage, which may serve as a reservoir of infection in AIDS patients.

EVIDENCE THAT HIV CAUSES AIDS is by now as firm as that for the causation of any other human disease. As the table shows, the supporting data come from a range of sources, including epidemiology, analysis of blood-serum samples and cell biology.





MAIN TARGETS OF HIV are two white blood cells: the lymphocyte and the macrophage. A lymphocyte is shown at the left and a macrophage at the right. In particular, a subset of lymphocytes called *T4* cells are infected; the hallmark of AIDS is a depletion of the *T4* population. Unlike *T4* cells, the macrophage is not killed by HIV. It may serve as a reservoir for the virus. The macrophage may also carry HIV to the brain, thereby accounting for the nervous-system pathology seen in AIDS.

52]. Such complexity is significant because it underlies the capacity of HIV to remain latent for a long period, then undergo a burst of replication, a pattern that may hold the key to the pathology of AIDS.

There were other significant early findings. One of us (Gallo), with his colleagues Mikulas Popovic and Suzanne Gartner, showed that HIV could infect not only the *T4* cell but also another type of white blood cell, the macrophage. The same one of us, working with his colleagues Beatrice H. Hahn, George M. Shaw and Wong-Staal, found HIV in brain tissues. It seems possible that the macrophage, which can cross the blood-brain barrier, may bring virus into the brain, explaining the central-nervous-system pathology seen in many AIDS patients.

How the virus infects both *T4* cells and macrophages became clear when Robin A. Weiss of the Chester Beatty Laboratories and, independently, Klatzmann and the Pasteur group showed that HIV enters its target cells by interacting with the molecule called CD4 [see "HIV Infection: The Cellular Picture," by Jonathan N. Weber and Robin A. Weiss, page 100]. CD4 has a significant role in the immune function of *T4* lymphocytes and also serves as a marker for that group of cells. The early work by the British and French teams showed that HIV infects cells by binding to CD4. Hence only cells bearing that marker can be infected. (Although CD4 is the marker for the *T4* cells, it is also found in smaller numbers on some macrophages, allowing them to be infected.)

Several additional findings rounded out the early discoveries. The potential of the epidemic to spread beyond the original risk groups was shown when Robert R. Redfield and one of us (Gallo) demonstrated that HIV can be transmitted during heterosexual intercourse. Members of the Gallo team also showed that the genetic makeup of the virus is highly variable from strain to strain, a fact that may complicate the attempt to formulate an AIDS vaccine.

After the rapid initial advance the pace slowed somewhat and began to approximate that of a more mature area of research. Yet the continuing work was not without surprises. In October, 1985, one of us (Montagnier) was engaged in analyzing blood samples brought to his laboratory by a visiting investigator from Portugal. Many of the samples were from people who had lived in Guinea-Bissau, a former Portuguese colony in West Africa. Among them were some people who had been diagnosed by Portuguese clinicians and investigators as having AIDS in spite of the fact that their blood showed no sign of HIV infection.

One sample, in fact, was negative for HIV using the most sophisticated techniques available at the time. Yet workers in the laboratory were able to isolate a virus from the patient's blood. DNA "probes" (short pieces of DNA from the HIV genome) were then prepared. If the new virus were closely related to the original AIDS agent, those probes would bind to its genetic material. As it turned out, there was little binding, and it became clear that the new isolate was not simply a strain of the original AIDS virus but a new virus designated HIV-2. Soon a second example was isolated by workers at the Claude Bernard Hospital; many others followed.

In evolutionary terms HIV-2 is clearly related to HIV-1, the virus responsible for the main AIDS epidemic. The two viruses are similar in their overall structure and both can cause AIDS, although the pathogenic potential of HIV-2 is not as well established as that of the first AIDS virus. HIV-2 is found mainly in West Africa, whereas HIV-1 is concentrated in central Africa and other regions of the world. The finding of HIV-2 suggests that other undiscovered HIV's may exist, filling out a spectrum of related pathogens.

The isolation of HIV-2 immediately raises the question of the evolutionary origins of these viruses [see "The Origins of the AIDS Virus," by Max Essex and Phyllis J. Kanki, page 64]. Although the answer to that question has not been found, some hints have been provided by the discovery in other primate species of related viruses called simian immunodeficiency viruses (SIV's). The first such virus, found in the macaque monkey, is designated SIV macaque. Isolated and characterized by Ronald C. Desrosiers and his co-workers at the New England Regional Primate Research Center in collaboration with Essex and his colleague Phyllis J. Kanki, SIV macaque has been shown to be closely related to HIV-2, raising the possibility that HIV-2 may have come into human beings relatively recently from another primate species.

No such close simian relative has

SURFACE-REPLICA PREPARATION reproduces an infected cell and HIV particles. Such a preparation is made by dehydrating the cell, freeze-drying it and applying thin layers of platinum and carbon to its surface. The resulting replica is cleaned with acid, washed and examined in the electron microscope. The virus is distributed at the periphery of the cell and as free particles. The micrograph, which has a magnification of 40,000 diameters, was made by Gelderblom's colleague Muhsin Özel.

been found for HIV-1 (although the right group of primates may not yet have been studied in sufficient detail). Hence the origin of HIV-1 remains more mysterious than the origin of its relative HIV-2. It is likely, however, that HIV-1 has been in human beings for some time. One of us (Gallo), with Temin, has used the divergence among HIV strains and the virus's probable rate of mutation to estimate how long the virus has infected people. It was tentatively concluded that HIV has infected human beings for more than 20 years but less than 100, an estimate compatible with those by other workers and with our knowledge of the epidemic.

Where was HIV hiding all those years, and why are we only now experiencing an epidemic? Both of us think the answer is that the virus has been present in small, isolated groups in central Africa or elsewhere for many years. In such groups the spread of HIV might have been quite limited and the groups themselves may have had little contact with the outside world. As a result the virus could have been contained for decades.

That pattern may have been altered when the way of life in central Africa began to change. People migrating from remote areas to urban centers no doubt brought HIV with them. Sexual mores in the city were different from what they had been in the village, and blood transfusions were commoner. Consequently HIV may have spread freely. Once a pool of infected people had been established, transport networks and the generalized exchange of blood products would have carried it to every corner of the world. What had been remote and rare became global and common [see "The International Epidemiology of AIDS," by Jonathan M. Mann, James Chin, Peter Piot and Thomas Quinn, page 82].

What weapons are available against this scourge? Perhaps the best weapon is knowledge. One key form of knowledge is a deeper understanding of HIV, its life cycle and the mechanisms by which it causes disease. Although HIV kills *T*4 cells directly, it has become clear that the direct killing of those cells is not sufficient to explain the depletion seen in AIDS. Indirect mechanisms must also be at work. What are they?

Many possibilities have been suggested. Infection by HIV can cause infected and uninfected cells to fuse into giant cells called syncytia, which are not functional. Autoimmune responses, in which the immune system attacks the body's own tissues, may also be at work. What is more, HIV-infected cells may send out protein signals that weaken or destroy other cells of the immune system. In addition HIV is fragile, and as the virus particle leaves its host cell, a molecule called gp120 frequently falls off the virus's outer coat. As Dani P. Bolognesi of the Duke University Medical Center and his co-workers have shown, gp120 can bind to the CD4 molecules of uninfected cells. When that complex is recognized by the immune system, cells thus marked may be destroyed.

That list does not exhaust the possibilities. One of us (Montagnier) is exploring the possibility that the binding of the virus to its target cells triggers the release of enzymes called proteases. Proteases digest proteins, and if they were released in abnormal quantities, they might weaken white blood cells and shorten their lives. The various proposed mechanisms are not exclusive, and several may operate at once. Yet one is probably central, and some of the most significant work on AIDS is that of distinguishing the central mechanism from the peripheral ones that accompany it.

Although it is clear that a large enough dose of the right strain of HIV can cause AIDS on its own, cofactors can clearly influence the progression of the disease. People whose immune systems are weakened before HIV infection may progress toward AIDS more quickly than others; stimulation of the immune system in response to later infections may also hasten disease progression.

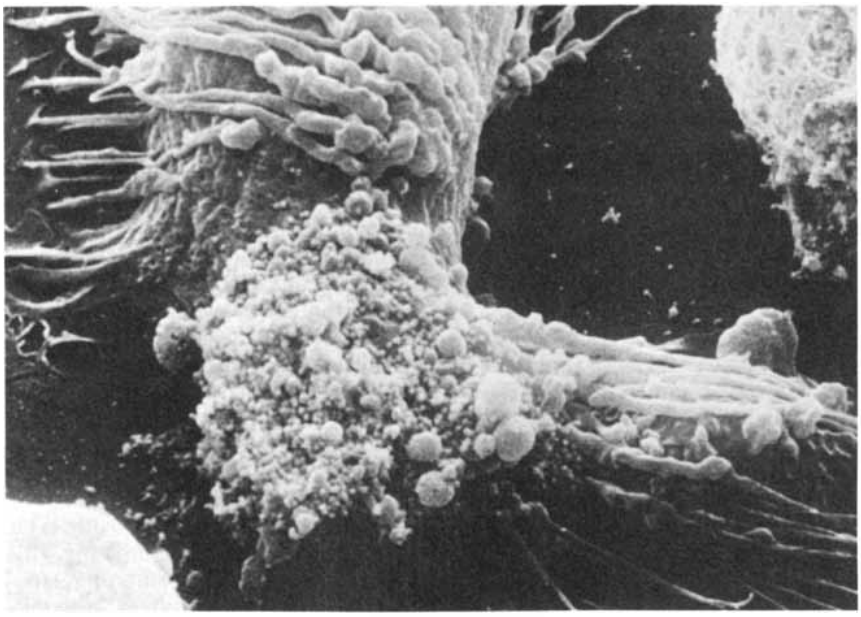
Interaction with other pathogens may also increase the likelihood that AIDS will develop. Specifically, a herpes virus called human *B*-cell lymphotropic virus (HBLV) or human herpes virus 6 (HHV-6) that was discovered in the laboratory of one of us (Gallo) can interact with HIV in a way that may increase the severity of HIV infection. Ordinarily HHV-6 is easily controlled by the immune system. In a person whose immune system is impaired by HIV, however, HHV-6 may replicate more freely, becoming a threat to health. In addition, although one of the main hosts of HHV-6 is a white blood cell called the *B* cell, the virus can also infect *T*4 lymphocytes. If the *T* cell is simultaneously infected by HIV, HHV-6 can activate the latent AIDS virus, further impairing the immune system and worsening the cycle.

Clearly, in spite of rapid progress there are many gaps in our understanding of HIV and AIDS. Should we panic? The answer is no, for several reasons. The most obvious is that panic does no good. The second reason is that it now seems unlikely HIV infection will spread as rapidly outside the original high-risk groups in the industrial countries as it has within them. A third reason is that this disease is not beyond the curative power of science. Although current knowledge is imperfect, it is sufficient to provide confidence that effective therapies and a vaccine will be developed.

The possibilities for therapy are particularly impressive [see "AIDS Therapies," by Robert Yarchoan, Hiroaki Mitsuya and Samuel Broder, page 110]. In the first phase of the search for AIDS therapies it was necessary to exploit any drug that seemed to provide even a remote chance of combating HIV infection. A variety of compounds formulated for other purposes were taken off the shelf and tested. Most were of little value, but one (AZT), originally formulated as an anticancer drug, turned out to be the first effective anti-AIDS agent. More recently, an experimental regimen in which AZT is alternated with the related compound known as dideoxycytidine offers even greater promise.

Bringing AZT into clinical use was a significant accomplishment, because it gave hope that AIDS would not remain incurable forever. As a form of therapy, however, AZT is not perfect and will probably be supplanted by less toxic agents formulated on the basis of what is known about the HIV life cycle. One promising agent is CD4, the molecule that serves as the viral receptor. Early tests show that soluble CD4 can bind to the virus and prevent it from infecting new cells. Many other drugs are in trials; one of them, perhaps combined with compounds that bolster the immune system, may provide therapy for HIV infection.

In assessing the progress that has been made toward achieving fully effective AIDS therapy, it must be kept in mind that this work has two facets. In addition to combating a complex and evasive pathogen, it must pioneer entirely new areas of medicine. The reason is that there are few effective treatments for viral diseases—and almost none for retroviruses. There are various reasons for this, among them the fact that viruses (unlike bacteria, for which effective therapies exist) always appropriate the biosynthetic apparatus of the host cell. As a result drugs effective against viruses tend to damage mammalian cells. Yet we are



HIV PARTICLES COVER AN INFECTED CELL in culture. A central problem in obtaining specific reagents for establishing the cause of AIDS was that of getting HIV to grow in continuous mass culture. The problem was first solved in Gallo's laboratory with a cell line designated H9. An H9 cell is shown, magnified about 10,000 diameters. The small bumps at the center are HIV particles. The micrograph was made by Özel.

confident that the dual goals of pioneering science and clinical effectiveness will be met.

What is true of therapy is also true of vaccines: an AIDS vaccine will be a pioneering scientific achievement [see "AIDS Vaccines," by Thomas J. Matthews and Dani P. Bolognesi, page 120]. Since the HIV genome has the capacity to integrate into the chromosomes of the host cell, little serious consideration has been given to using preparations containing the whole virus as a vaccine. An AIDS vaccine must consist of subunits, or parts, of the virus in the right combination. Yet experience with subunit vaccines is slight. Indeed, so far only a few subunit vaccines have proved practical. Much work is under way to find the combination of HIV subunits that will yield the greatest protective response. As in the case of therapy, we believe there will be a practical vaccine against HIV.

Perhaps an even more persuasive reason for hope is that even without a vaccine or a cure, what is already known could bring the epidemic under control. The blood supply has already been largely secured by the presence of a blood test. Moreover, the modes of transmission of HIV—blood, sexual intercourse and from mother to child—are firmly established. Hence any individual can drastically reduce his or her risk of infection. If such knowledge were applied everywhere, there would be a sharp leveling off in the spread of HIV infection, as there has been in some groups in the developed world. The lesson here is that there is a need for education about HIV infection—in clear, explicit language and as early as possible.

Yet there are parts of the epidemic where education alone is not sufficient, and it is in those areas that humanity will be tested. Users of intravenous drugs, for example, are notoriously resistant to educational campaigns alone. It seems clear that the effort to control AIDS must be aimed in part at eradicating the conditions that give rise to drug addiction. Those conditions are in turn linked to social and economic patterns. Eliminating the disease may entail eliminating some of the social differentials that form the substratum of drug abuse [see "The Social Dimensions of AIDS," by Harvey V. Fineberg, page 128].

It is also the case that in some areas of the developing world education alone will not stem the epidemic. Education is necessary, but it must be accompanied by other measures. In central Africa—the part of the world most beleaguered by AIDS—there are few facilities for blood testing and few technicians trained to perform tests. Furthermore, the blood tests used in the U.S. and Western Europe are too expensive to be helpful. As a result the virus is still being spread by contaminated blood, long after that form of transmission has been practically eliminated in the industrial countries.

To help change this situation the World AIDS Foundation has made improving the situation in central Africa its highest priority. The foundation (along with its parent, the Franco-American AIDS Foundation) was formed as part of the agreement that resolved a lawsuit between France and the U.S. over the AIDS blood test. The parent foundation receives 80 percent of the royalties from the French and American blood tests; the World AIDS Foundation in turn receives 25 percent of that. Much thought has been given to how to allocate the funds, and the first project (carried out in conjunction with the World Health Organization) will be realized in several African countries. It will include training technicians to perform blood tests, establishing one HIV-free blood center and increasing public education about HIV transmission.

Efforts such as this one, coupling public and private funds and energies, will be essential to stopping AIDS. As we stated above, both of us are certain that science will ultimately find a cure and a vaccine for AIDS. But not tomorrow. The AIDS virus (and other human retroviruses) will be with us for a long time. During that time no intelligent person can expect the necessary solutions to come solely from authorities such as scientists, governments or corporations. All of us must accept responsibilities: to learn how HIV is spread, to reduce risky behavior, to raise our voices against acceptance of the drug culture and to avoid stigmatizing victims of the disease. If we can accept such responsibilities, the worst element of nightmare will have been removed from the AIDS epidemic.

FURTHER READING

ISOLATION OF A T-LYMPHOTROPIC RETROVIRUS FROM A PATIENT AT RISK FOR ACQUIRED IMMUNE DEFICIENCY SYNDROME (AIDS). F. Barré-Sinoussi et al. in *Science,* Vol. 220, No. 4599, pages 868–871; May 20, 1983.

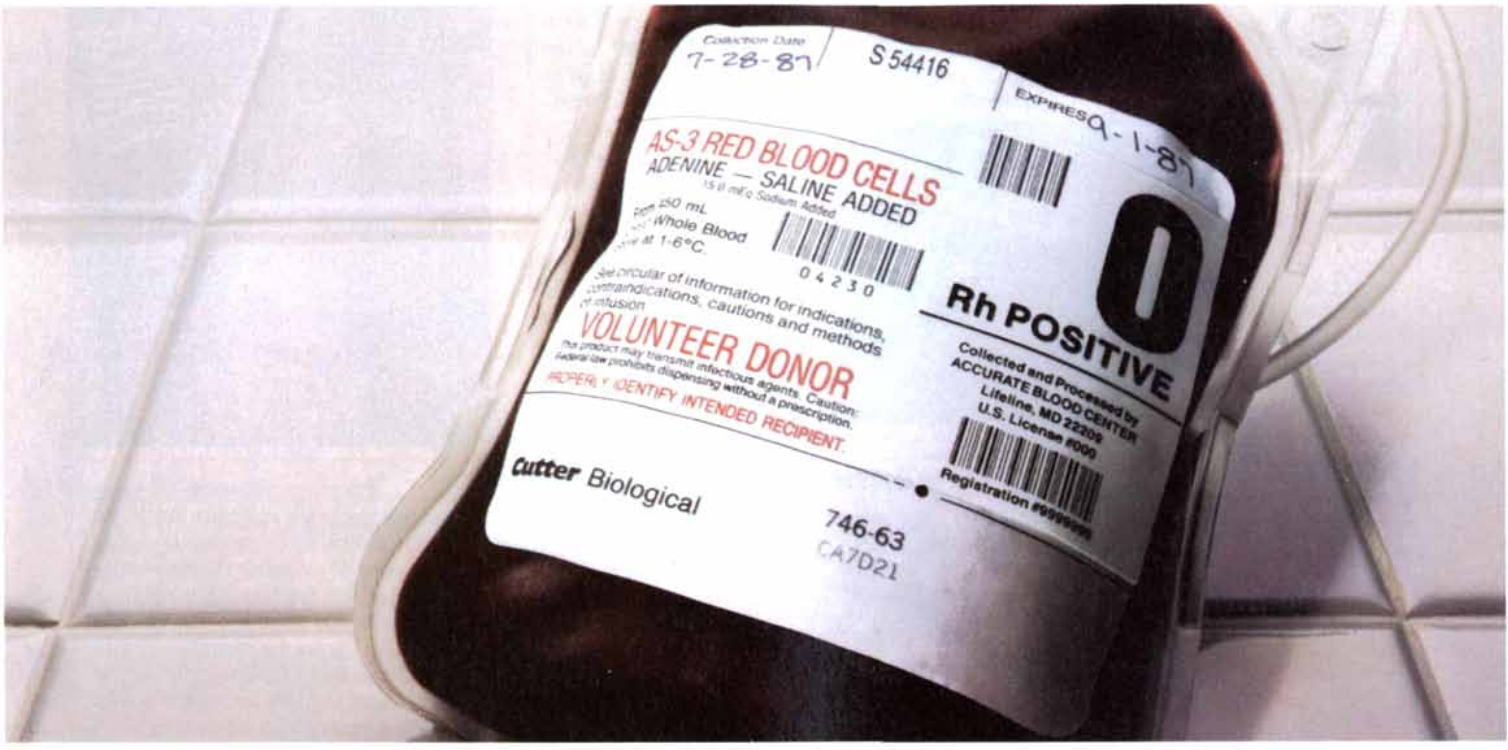
ISOLATION OF A NEW HUMAN RETROVIRUS FROM WEST AFRICAN PATIENTS WITH AIDS. François Clavel et al. in *Science,* Vol. 233, No. 4761, pages 343–346; July 18, 1986.

THE FIRST HUMAN RETROVIRUS. Robert C. Gallo in *Scientific American,* Vol. 255, No. 6, pages 88–98; December, 1986.

THE AIDS VIRUS. Robert C. Gallo in *Scientific American,* Vol. 256, No. 1, pages 46–56; January, 1987.

COMMENTARY: THE CHRONOLOGY OF AIDS RESEARCH. In *Nature,* Vol. 326, No. 6112, pages 435–436; April 2, 1987.

The difference between saving a life and threatening it.



It started out as a trip across town. Suddenly, you're in an ambulance racing to the hospital. It's an emergency. A matter of life and death. You've lost blood. The doctors tell you that you're going to need a transfusion.

Now, you're really scared.

The AIDS virus has changed the way we think about transfusions. It's made us cautious. What hasn't changed is the importance of the transfusion to our medical procedures. It's vital.

Which is why DuPont worked to create a highly accurate method of testing to help protect the nation's blood supply from the deadly AIDS virus.

Today, that testing system serves over 1,200 hospitals in more than 20 states, helping millions of people feel more secure that the blood they may one day need to live won't be hazardous to their health.

But perhaps the most important weapon in fighting this disease is information. To that end DuPont has created a booklet, *Understanding AIDS*. It separates facts from myths and explains the real risks.

At DuPont, we make the things that make a difference.

To receive a complimentary copy of *Understanding AIDS*, call toll-free: **800-441-7515**.

Better things for better living. DUPONT

REG U.S. PAT. & TM. OFF.

THE LIFESTYLE RESOURCE™

The Lifestyle Resource is a compass for quality and value. Our products offer a special advantage. We've used everything presented here, so we can vouch for each item. Our intent is to give you the essential information about how each works and why it is special. In most cases, we'll have your order on its way to you within 48 hours. Your satisfaction is guaranteed with our 30-Day No Risk Return Policy. If you're not completely satisfied with your purchase, just return it to us in original condition within 30 days of receipt for a prompt refund.

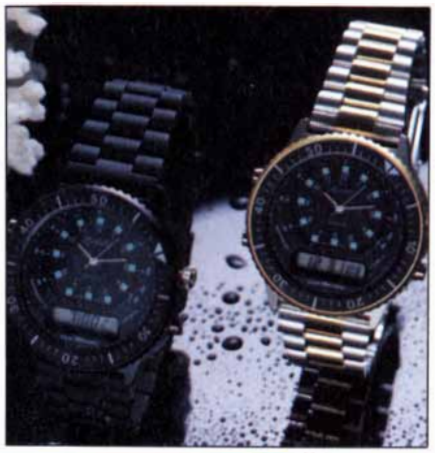
THE LIFELINE GYM

The Lifeline Gym is the most space efficient, time efficient home fitness device on the market today. You can simulate just about any of the exercises done on the expensive machines found in health spas and gymnasiums. The reason is latex—a unique stretchable latex resistance cable, similar to the type used to stop planes on aircraft carriers. With this latex cable, resistance increases with movement—your muscles are challenged through their full range of motion. These variable resistance exercises provide an excellent workout for a beginner as well as a challenge for a pro. The Lifeline Gym is so successful it is used by the Chicago Bears, the U.S. Ice Hockey team, and the UCLA track team to name a few. Adjustable for individual strength levels and for different body shaping and toning. The gym includes a lifting bar, resistance cable, stirrups, exercise belt, door attachment and a comprehensive fitness guide that outlines over 25 exercises. Everything packs into a compact carry case, so you can enjoy the benefits of a complete workout anywhere. **$49.95** #1840 Ladies or #1850 Men's.

The Lifeline Gym is so successful it is used by the Chicago Bears, The U.S. Ice Hockey team, U.S. Women's Volleyball Team, and the UCLA track team.

A WATCH FOR ALL REASONS

Our Divers/Flyers watch is a highly accurate instrument, combining both analog and digital functions. Analog displays time in hours, minutes and seconds. Digital function has 12- and 24-hour time displays, chronometer, alarm, stopwatch, calendar with rotating bezel, and tachymeter. Luminous hands and digital window lamp are protected by a scratch-resistant, mineral glass crystal. Rugged enough for depths of 150′; handsome enough for daily wear. Adjustable fit. **$39.95** #1051 Teflon coated durable black matte; #1061 Anodized stainless steel and gold-plated.



FROM CHINA TO YOUR HEALTH

Ancient mandarins dating back 800 years believed that these Chinese Exercise Balls induced well-being of the body and serenity of spirit. These treasured gifts were given to President Reagan and his wife while visiting the Peoples Republic of China. The Chinese say that rotating the balls in the palm of each hand stimulates the fingers and acupuncture points, and improves circulation of vital energy throughout the body. Sports enthusiasts, musicians, computer users and health-conscious people everywhere consider them great muscle conditioners. Arthritis sufferers feel a decided benefit from this gentle but challenging exercise. Very effective for relaxation and meditation, Chinese Exercise Balls emit a distantly mysterious chime as you turn them. Beautifully handcrafted, 45mm. hollow polished chrome balls are perfectly weighted and fit comfortably into the average man's or woman's hand. In exquisite silk brocade box. **$29.95** #1701.

WORTH CUTTING THE CORD FOR

A leading consumer magazine article likens a person's first conversation walking around talking on a cordless telephone to the exhilaration of that first bike ride minus training wheels. In the magazine's current 1988 Buying Guide, the Southwestern Bell FF-1700 Cordless Phone is still rated tops for range in controlled tests among 21 brands and models. By handling incoming and outgoing calls to a range of 1000′ (the article rated a maximum of 1500 ft.), with outstanding speech quality and convenience features, the FF-1700 ended up on top of the consumer magazine ratings reports. Base unit serves as freestanding speakerphone with dialpad, so you get two phones in one. Plus intercom, paging and 10-channel selection. Digital security code protects line from outside access. **$179.95** #2130. To take your freedom a step further, Southwestern Bell's FA-450 Telephone Answering Machine gives you the latest technology and newest features at a most attractive price. Single cassette operation, call screening, household memo function, voice-activated record, one-touch playback. Two-way record for messages or conversations. Beeperless remote lets you retrieve messages from any pushbutton phone, also allows remote announcement changes. These new-generation Freedom Phones connect you in without tying you down. **$99.95** #2140.

Southwestern Bell FF-1700 Offers—

- *1000-foot range*
- *Base/handset intercom*
- *Memory dialing*
- *Hearing aid compatible*
- *10-channel select*
- *Digital security code*
- *Hold button*
- *Tone/pulse switchable*
- *Jack for answering machine connection*

THE LIFESTYLE RESOURCE™

ALLERGY AND COLD BUSTER

Now a major scientific breakthrough — The Viralizer® System — gives you relief from cold, sinus and allergy symptoms. It's the newest development of a concept pioneered at the Pasteur Institute in Paris. The cause of the common cold is the Rhinovirus family which lives and multiplies in the nose and throat, but cannot thrive in temperatures over 110°F. The Viralizer is designed to deliver a gentle, controlled heat which penetrates the nose and throat. After a pleasant heat treatment, the Viralizer dispenses either of two mild, over-the-counter, medicated sprays. Vira-Spray I is an analgesic, anti-bacterial spray. Vira-Spray II is a decongestant that provides temporary relief of nasal congestion due to colds, hayfever, sinusitis or allergies. These therapeutic sprays further discourage the stubborn cold and sinusitis germs so you're less likely to be re-infected or spread your cold to others. The Viralizer can produce effective relief by using it for only 3 or 4 minutes, several times a day. Proven in clinical tests 90% effective in treating the symptoms of upper respiratory infection in 24 hours or less, the Viralizer works without pills. Viralizer, is safe for children and adults, has been tested and recommended by doctors. The complete Viralizer ® System includes 1 electric Viralizer with Vira-Spray I and Vira-Spray II plus a 3-pak refill of medicated sprays. **$39.95** #1690.

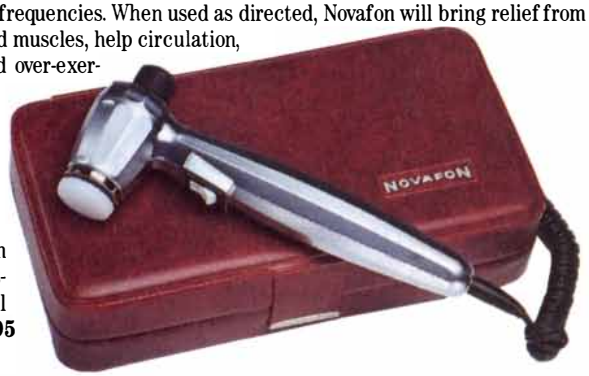
WHEN YOU'RE IN A HURRY

When you're running short of time, ask one of our phone operators about UPS Blue Label delivery. In most cases, we can get your shipment to you in three or four working days.

CALL TOLL-FREE 800-872-5200

SOOTHING SOUND MASSAGE

Tested more than 30 years, the Novafon sound massager is used in clinics and health centers around the world. Novafon's sound waves penetrate up to 2¼", and they help a variety of conditions because of their mixed frequencies. When used as directed, Novafon will bring relief from pain, loosen joints and soothe tired muscles, help circulation, speed recovery from exercise and over-exertion. The Novafon is lightweight (8 oz.) small (8"length). Adjustable intensity control, choice of massage heads (disc-type and ball-type). It comes in a fitted plush case, perfect for carry along. 1 year warranty. A precision made instrument with no interacting parts to wear out, the unit will give many years of service. **$169.95** #1750.



THE SIX INCH, FIVE POUND FURNACE

Ceramic heaters are unique because of their size, exceptional safety, spartan use of electricity and tremendous heating ability. Now, two North American companies, GTE and Micromar, have come together to create what *The Lifestyle Resource* considers to be the best and safest 1500 watt ceramic heater on the market today. GTE spent 18 months of intensive research and development creating the *only* ceramic element specifically for a portable ceramic heater. This U.S. patented element is manufactured exclusively for Micromar who was the first company to market portable ceramic heaters in North America. They've built on their experience to design this third generation ceramic heater using the finest components they could find. Let's look at some of the unique features of this remarkable product. SAFETY: This ceramic element operates at a temperature below the ignition point of tissue paper. There are no fuels, odors, flames or red hot coils and a safety grille gives added protection. A "tip-over" switch automatically cycles the heater down if it is turned over. It's designed to run around the clock, is exceptionally safe and great for a child's room. AIRFLOW: The high quality fan is manufactured in West Germany by Papst, who also manufactures fans used by IBM and Mercedes. The ceramic elements are manufactured using a special pressing process which allows larger holes than any other solid ceramic element. The combination creates an airflow almost twice as much as some others. That means quicker, more even heat distribution. EFFICIENCY: At full capacity of 1500 watts, The Heat Machine Plus puts out 5120 BTU's per hour. As it reaches the desired temperature you set, electrical consumption drops, thereby reducing your electrical costs. Temperature is controlled by a special thermistor circuit which varies the fan speed and eliminates the on-off, hot-cold cycling common to many heaters. VERSATILITY: The Heat Machine Plus goes anywhere, gives instant heat and allows you to lower the heat in other areas of the house and selectively heat those areas you occupy. DURABILITY: The Micromar is built like a tank, with a heavy-gauge metal case, industrial grade components and meticulous attention to detail. It was laboratory tested for over 100,000 on/off cycles and carries a five year limited warranty. While not the least expensive, of all the models we looked at we believe Micromar's Heat Machine Plus to be the best value among this year's ceramic heaters. Includes a built-in handle and washable air filter. Standard 110 volts AC. UL listed. **$179.95** #2280.

THE LIFESTYLE RESOURCE™

DEPT. SFAK08; 921 EASTWIND DR. SUITE 114: WESTERVILLE, OH 43081

CREDIT CARD ORDERS CALL TOLL-FREE 24 HOURS **800-872-5200**

SEND TO (PLEASE PRINT)

ADDRESS

CITY STATE ZIP

☐ CHECK OR MONEY ORDER ☐ MASTERCARD ☐ VISA ☐ AMEX SIGNATURE

ACCT. # EXP. DATE

ITEM NO.	QTY	DESCRIPTION	ITEM PRICE	TOTAL PRICE

Shipping Charge covers UPS. handling and insurance for guaranteed delivery.

Up to $20.01	$20 .... $ 3.95	$50.01 to $60	.... $ 7.95	SUB TOTAL	
$20.01 to $30.01	$30 .... $ 4.95	$60.01 to $70	.... $ 8.95	SHIPPING (see table at left)	
$30.01 to $40.01	$40 .... $ 5.95	$70.01 to $100	.... $10.95		
$40.01 to $50	.... $ 6.95	Over $100	.... $12.95	TOTAL	

UPS 2ND DAY AIR — UPS Second Day available for an additional $7.50 per order.

ORDER WITH CONFIDENCE

- *We ship most orders within 48 hours.*
- *Credit Card orders billed only upon shipment.*
- *No risk 30-day return privilege.*

THE MEDIA DEVELOPMENT GROUP

©1988 G71 ADVERTISEMENT

The Molecular Biology of the AIDS Virus

HIV is genetically complex. An array of regulatory genes enables it to remain latent or replicate at various rates. This intricate control may underlie key features of the disease

by William A. Haseltine and Flossie Wong-Staal

Infection with the AIDS virus takes many guises. First the virus (the human immunodeficiency virus, or HIV) often replicates abundantly, and free virus appears in the fluid surrounding the brain and spinal cord and in the bloodstream. Fevers, rashes, flulike symptoms and sometimes neurological complaints can accompany this first wave of HIV replication. Then, within a few weeks, the amount of virus in the circulation and the cerebrospinal fluid drops precipitously and the initial symptoms disappear. Yet the virus is still present; it can be found not only in the *T*4 lymphocytes, the subset of immune-system cells originally thought to be its only target, but also in other classes of immune cells, in cells of the nervous system and intestine and probably in some bone-marrow cells. From two to 10 years after the start of this asymptomatic period, replication of the virus flares again and the infection enters its final stage.

WILLIAM A. HASELTINE holds appointments at the Dana-Farber Cancer Institute, the Harvard Medical School and the Harvard School of Public Health. He received his doctorate in biophysics from Harvard and became interested in retroviruses in 1972 as a postdoctoral student at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. Haseltine's current research concerns retroviruses in leukemia, disorders of the central nervous system and AIDS. FLOSSIE WONG-STAAL is head of the section on the molecular genetics of hematopoietic cells at the National Cancer Institute. She holds a Ph.D. in molecular biology from the University of California at Los Angeles. After joining the NCI in 1973, she became interested in the role of retroviruses and oncogenes in disease—an interest she pursued as the first human retroviruses were discovered.

Underlying this variable course are complex interactions between HIV and its host cells. The virus behaves differently depending on the kind of host cell and the cell's own level of activity. In *T* cells it can lie dormant indefinitely, inextricable from the cell but hidden from the victim's immune system; when the same cells are stimulated, however, it can destroy them in a burst of replication. In other cells, such as the immune-system cells called macrophages and their precursors, called monocytes, the virus grows continuously but slowly, sparing the cell but probably altering its function.

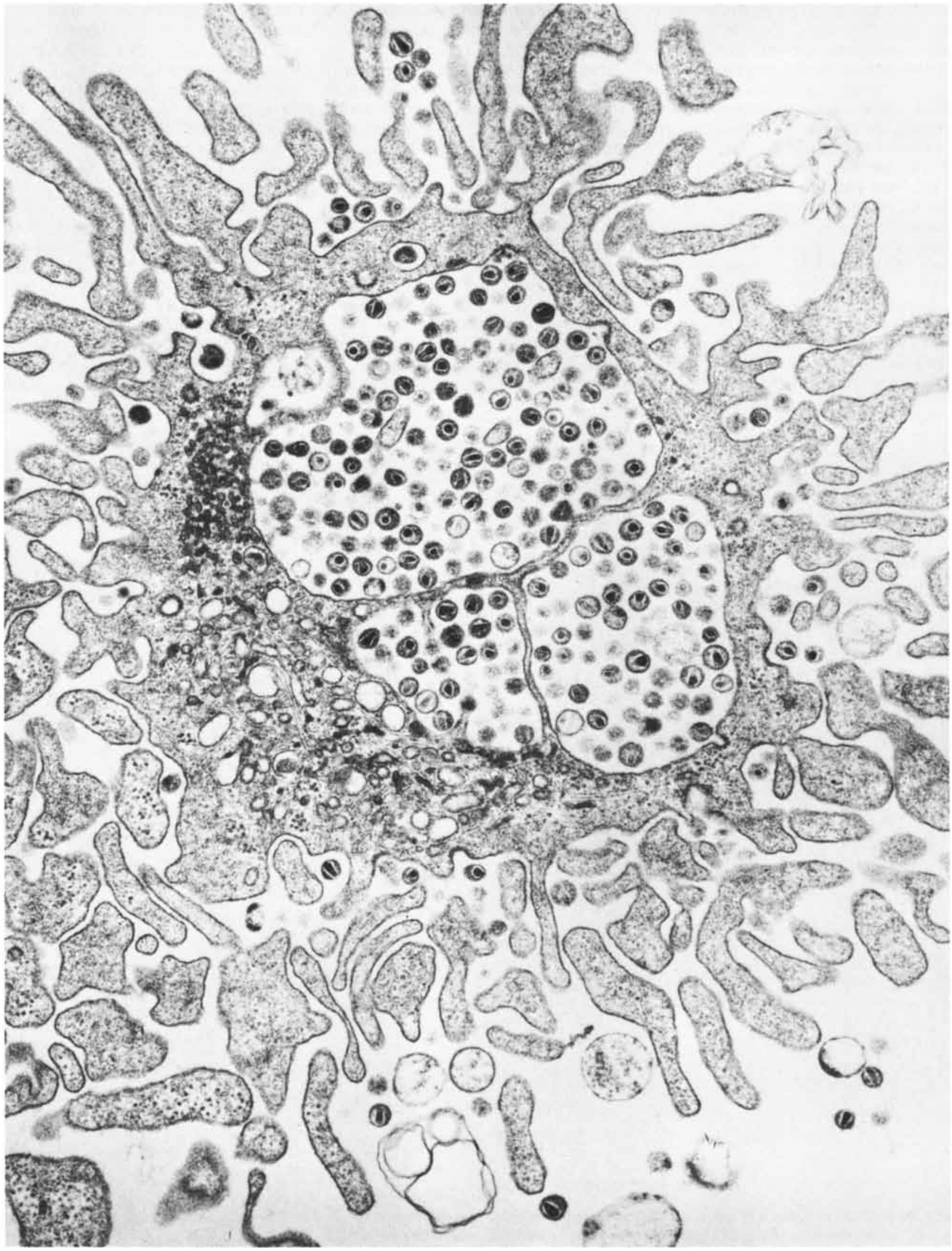
What accounts for this diverse behavior and its destructive consequences? The answer is to be found in the life cycle of the virus, and in the tiny package of genetic instructions that controls it. The genetic blueprint for the structure and life cycle of HIV is about 100,000 times smaller than the genetic information of a human cell: a mere 9,749 nucleotides (the units that encode information along the genetic material). Since 1984, when HIV became available in a workable form, the full power of contemporary molecular biology and genetic analysis has been turned on this scrap of genetic information. The past four years have been full of surprises. HIV governs its life cycle in novel and unforeseen ways, and their study may hold the key not only to the control of AIDS but also to a clearer understanding of how cells regulate their own growth and activity.

In broadest outline the life cycle of HIV is that of a retrovirus. Retroviruses were so named because they reverse what seemed to be the normal flow of genetic information. In cells the genetic material is DNA; when genes are expressed, the DNA is first transcribed into messenger RNA (mRNA), which then serves as the template for the production of proteins. The genes of a retrovirus are encoded in RNA; before they can be expressed the RNA must be converted into DNA. Only then are the viral genes transcribed and translated into proteins in the usual sequence.

The cycle begins when an HIV particle binds to the outside of a cell and injects its core. The core includes two identical strands of RNA as well as structural proteins and enzymes that carry out later steps in the life cycle. One enzyme is responsible for converting the viral genetic information into DNA. This DNA polymerase first makes a single-strand DNA copy of the viral RNA. An associated enzyme, ribonuclease, destroys the original RNA, and the polymerase makes a second DNA copy, using the first one as a template. (The polymerase and the ribonuclease together are often called reverse transcriptase.)

The viral genetic information, now in the form of double-strand DNA (the same form in which the cell carries its own genes), migrates to the cell nucleus. A third viral enzyme, called an integrase, may then splice the HIV genome—its full complement of genetic information—into the host cell's DNA. Once there the viral DNA (the "provirus") will be duplicated together with the cell's own genes every time the cell divides. Thus established, infection is permanent.

The second half of the viral life cycle—the production of new virus particles—takes place only sporadically, and only in some infected cells. It begins when nucleotide sequences in the so-called long terminal repeats (LTR's), which are stretches of DNA at the ends of the viral genome, direct enzymes belonging to the host



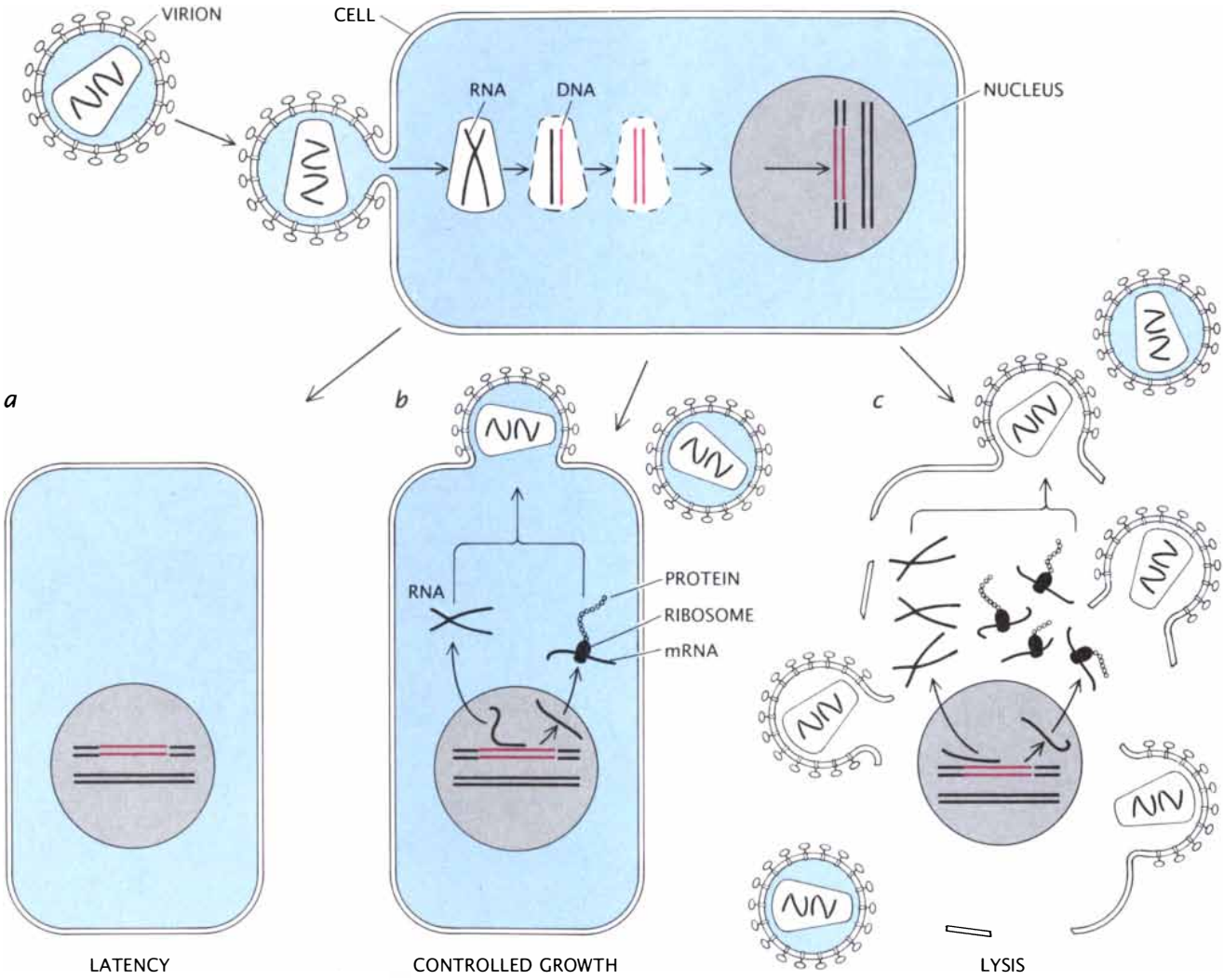
CULMINATION of HIV's life cycle is the production of new virus. A cultured *T* cell is shedding newly formed virus particles, which are visible as small disks with a dark core. (Many particles have budded into vacuoles, enclosed sacs within the cell.) The viral genes that are responsible for the growth are emplaced in the nucleus of the infected cell. The electron micrograph was made by Hans Gelderblom of the Robert Koch Institute in Berlin; the magnification is about 25,000 diameters.

cell to copy the DNA of the integrated virus into RNA. Some of the RNA will provide the genetic material for a new generation of virus. Certain other RNA strands serve as the mRNA's that guide cellular machinery in producing the structural proteins and enzymes of the new virus.

The particles, or virions, are assembled from multiple copies of two different protein molecules in a ratio of about 20 to one. The more abundant molecule is the precursor of the protein shell that will enclose the RNA and enzymes in the completed virions. The other molecule is larger; it contains the same structural components but includes additional segments that will become the viral enzymes. The two proteins migrate to the periphery of the cell as they are produced; a fatty acid at the end of each one attaches it to the inside of the cell membrane. As these precursors aggregate, they bind to one another and form a spherical structure that bulges outward under the cell membrane. Two strands of viral RNA are drawn into this nascent virion as it takes shape.

One of the enzymes contained in the longer precursor protein carries out the final step in producing mature virus. The enzyme, a protease (a protein-cleaving enzyme), cuts itself free of the protein chain and cleaves other enzymes (the DNA polymerase, ribonuclease and integrase, as well as additional molecules of protease) from long precursor molecules. It then divides the short precursors and what is left of the long ones into four segments each. Three of the segments collapse to form a bullet-shaped core surrounding the RNA and enzymes, but the remaining segment stays attached to the inside of the cell membrane.

Hence the completed virion encloses itself in a patch of host-cell membrane as it buds from the cell. This so-called envelope carries the final structural element of HIV: the envelope protein. The protein, which juts from the membrane like a set of minute spikes, is made and transported to the cell surface independently of the core proteins. Each spike is a complex of two or three identical units that in turn consist of two associated components. One component, called



HIV INFECTION begins (*top*) when a virion, or virus particle, binds to the outside of a susceptible cell and fuses with it, injecting the core proteins and two strands of viral RNA. The proteins remain associated with the RNA as it is copied into a single strand of DNA, which is duplicated as the original RNA is degraded. The double-strand DNA (the "provirus") migrates to the nucleus and is integrated into the cell's own DNA. The provirus can then remain latent, giving no sign of its presence (*a*). Alternatively, it can commandeer cellular mechanisms to copy its genes into RNA, some of which is translated into viral proteins on structures called ribosomes. The proteins and additional RNA are then assembled into new virions that bud from the cell. The process can take place slowly, sparing the host cell (*b*), or so rapidly that the cell is lysed, or ruptured (*c*).

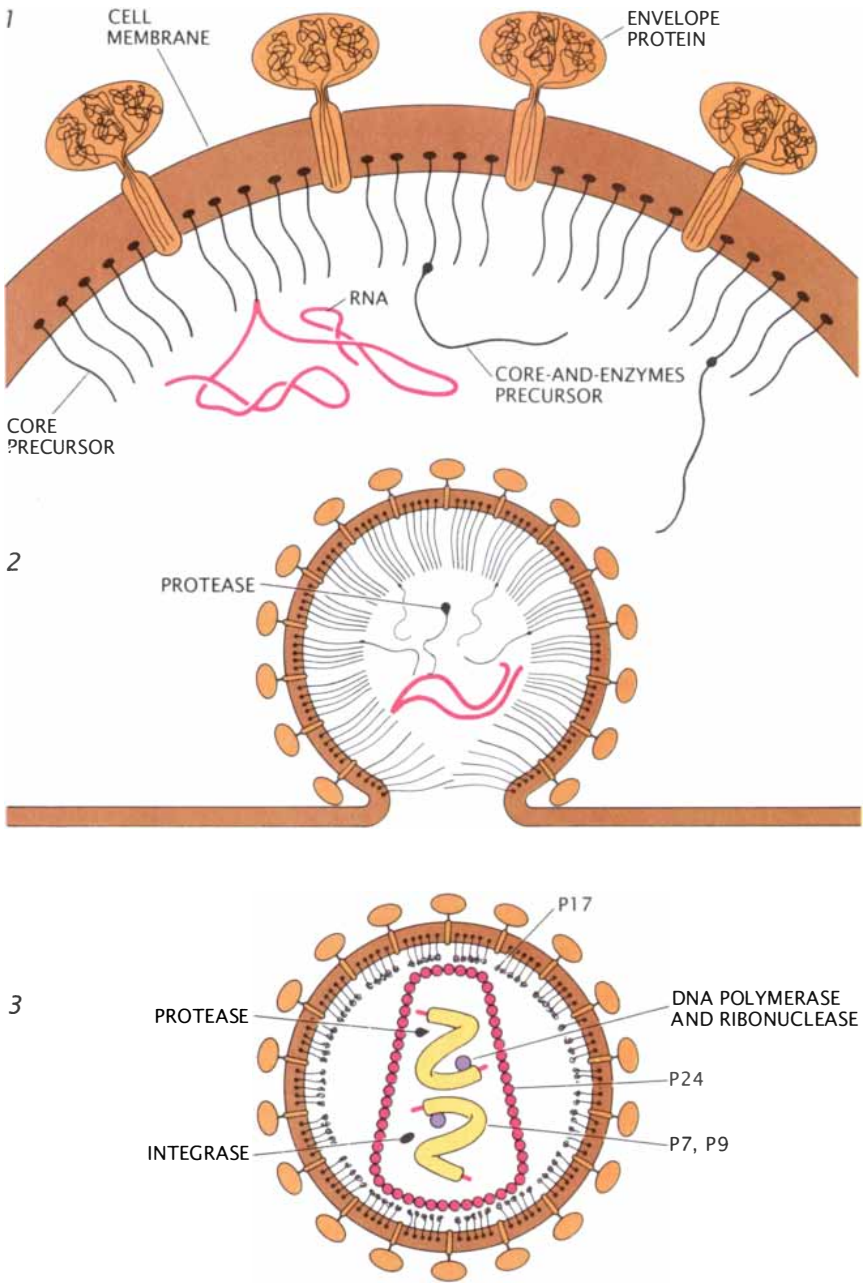
glycoprotein 120 (gp120) for its size and the fact that it is heavily glycosylated—coated with sugars—rests outside the cell and the other, gp41, is embedded stemlike in the membrane. These glycoprotein complexes, swept up by the budding virus as it acquires its envelope, are crucial to HIV's ability to infect new cells.

An elaborate set of genetic controls determines whether this cycle of replication will be played out and how fast it will proceed. In addition to three genes for the proteins of the core and envelope, the HIV genome includes at least six other genes. Some and perhaps all of these genes act to regulate the production of viral proteins: one regulator speeds up protein synthesis generally, another speeds the production of only some kinds of proteins and a third gene represses protein synthesis. Since the regulatory genes themselves encode proteins, each one affects not only the structural genes but also the regulatory genes, including itself.

Their discovery, by our groups at the Dana-Farber Cancer Institute and the National Cancer Institute and by other workers, came as a surprise. The animal retroviruses that had been studied earlier have no such regulatory apparatus. In the early 1980's regulatory genes were found in the first two human retroviruses, the leukemia viruses HTLV-I and HTLV-II. But those discoveries did not foreshadow the number and complexity of HIV's regulatory pathways.

The pathways have been studied in part by observing the growth of virus in which one or another regulatory component has been inactivated by a mutation. Insight into the function of individual regulatory elements has also come from studying them in isolation: transferring them individually from HIV into the genetic material of experimental cell lines. Each regulatory gene encodes a protein that interacts specifically with a "responsive" element: a short sequence of nucleotides elsewhere in the genome. The regulatory protein is said to act in *trans,* because it exerts its effects at a distance; the responsive sequence affects adjacent genes and is said to act in *cis.* Individually or through their interplay the pathways can specify explosive viral replication, steady and moderate growth or quiescence.

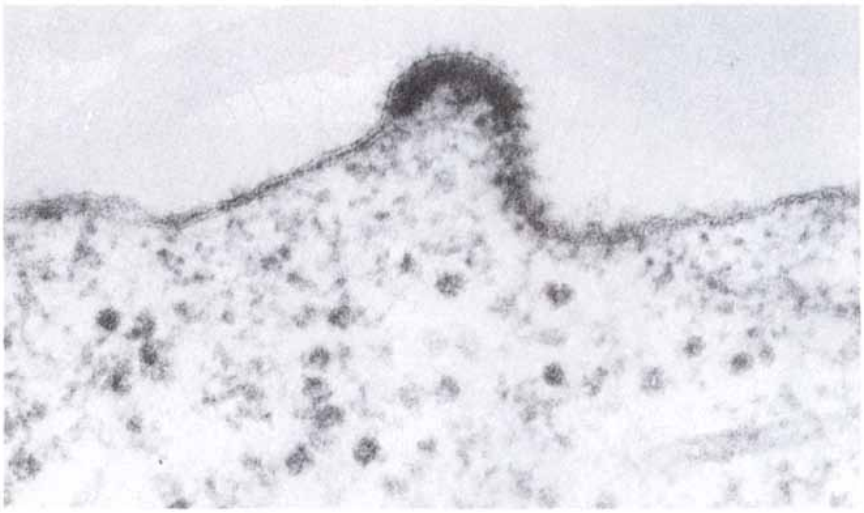
A regulatory gene known as *tat,* for *trans*-activator, is responsible for the burst of replication seen, for example, in *T*4 cells that have been stimulated by an encounter with an antigen (a foreign molecule that evokes an immune response). The *tat* gene is unusual in both its structure and its effects. It is made up of two widely separated sequences of nucleotides; after it is transcribed into mRNA the intervening genetic material must be spliced out before the transcript can be made into protein. The effect of the resulting small protein is dramatic: it can boost the expression of viral genes to 1,000 times the level seen in HIV mutants lacking the *tat* gene. The



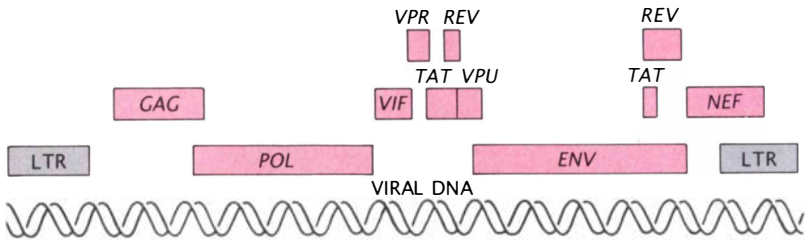
ASSEMBLY of a new virion takes place at the cell membrane. Three kinds of protein go into making the particle: the envelope protein (actually a complex of two or three units, each unit made up of an external molecule associated with a molecule embedded in the membrane) and two precursor proteins of differing length (*1*). As the proteins aggregate at the cell membrane, it starts to pinch off. One precursor molecule draws two strands of viral RNA into the nascent virion, and a protease, or protein-cleaving enzyme, cuts itself free of a long precursor (*2*). The protease completes the formation of the virion by cleaving other enzymes—an integrase, a DNA polymerase and ribonuclease, and more protease—from the long precursors and then cutting each of the precursors into four pieces. One piece (p17) remains attached to the patch of cell membrane that surrounds the completed particle (*3*), and the other three pieces (p24, p7 and p9) form a bullet-shaped inner core.

stimulatory effect extends to all the viral proteins, both the components of the virus particles and the regulatory proteins—including the *tat* protein itself. Because of this positive feedback, an enormous amount of virus is made very quickly when *tat* is activated.

To exert its effects the *tat* protein depends on a short sequence of nucleotides known as TAR (for *trans*-acting responsive sequence), which is found at the start of the viral genome and is included in the mRNA transcript of every HIV gene. Just how the protein and the TAR sequence interact is not clear, nor is it known how the interaction boosts protein synthesis. It has been proposed, variously, that *tat* and TAR increase the transcription of mRNA's from the viral DNA, the stability of completed mRNA's and the efficiency with which they are translated into proteins. The mechanism is not likely to be unique to HIV, and it is expected to shed light on the means by which higher organisms regulate gene expression.



HIV BUDS from the surface of a cell. The particle is at the stage of assembly shown in *2* in the illustration on the preceding page; the envelope proteins studding the patch of cell membrane that will cloak the mature particle are visible in this electron micrograph, enlarged 120,000 diameters. The image was made by Gelderblom.



GENE (FORMER NAMES)	FUNCTION
GAG	CORE PROTEINS
POL	ENZYMES
ENV	ENVELOPE PROTEIN
TAT (TAT-3, TA)	POSITIVE REGULATOR
REV (ART, TRS)	DIFFERENTIAL REGULATOR
VIF (SOR, A, P' ,Q)	INFECTIVITY FACTOR
VPR (R)	NOT KNOWN
VPU	NOT KNOWN
NEF (3' ORF, B, E' , F)	NEGATIVE REGULATOR

GENETIC STRUCTURE of HIV includes the nine genes identified so far, which are arranged along the viral DNA (*top*) and flanked by the long terminal repeats (LTR's). The LTR's, which do not code for any protein, serve to initiate the expression of other viral genes. Only three genes—*gag, pol* and *env*—encode components of virus particles; other genes serve to regulate the expression of these virion genes. Several regulatory genes are divided into noncontiguous pieces; the gene segments are spliced together in the RNA transcript from which protein is made. Because the DNA can be read in three ways, as many as three genes can coexist on one DNA segment.

Whereas *tat* boosts the production of viral proteins indiscriminately, a second regulatory gene, *rev*—the regulator of virion-protein expression—has differential effects. It enables the integrated virus to produce selectively either regulatory proteins or virion components. In addition to a *rev* protein, which like the *tat* product is encoded by noncontiguous nucleotide sequences that are spliced together in the mRNA, the *rev* pathway includes two other sequences. One of them prevents transcripts that include it from being turned into protein; the other sequence responds to the *rev* protein and overrides the first one's repressive effect.

The repression sequence is called the *cis*-acting repression element, or CRS. CRS sequences are built into the mRNA's that specify virion proteins: the core proteins, replication enzymes and envelope protein. The spliced, short mRNA's for regulatory proteins such as the *tat* protein and the *rev* protein itself lack the CRS sequence. In the absence of *rev,* the CRS sequence keeps the long mRNA templates for virion proteins from accumulating. Instead the truncated mRNA's that specify regulatory proteins, and that have had CRS spliced out, build up and are translated into protein.

The presence of the *rev* protein resets this genetic switch. The protein acts by way of a sequence called CAR—the *cis*-acting *rev*-responsive sequence, which like CRS is found in the long mRNA's—to counteract CRS. Full-length mRNA's now accumulate, and the production of regulatory proteins gives way to the production of proteins that make up a new generation of virus. In this way the *rev* pathway may control the shift from silent infection to active viral growth.

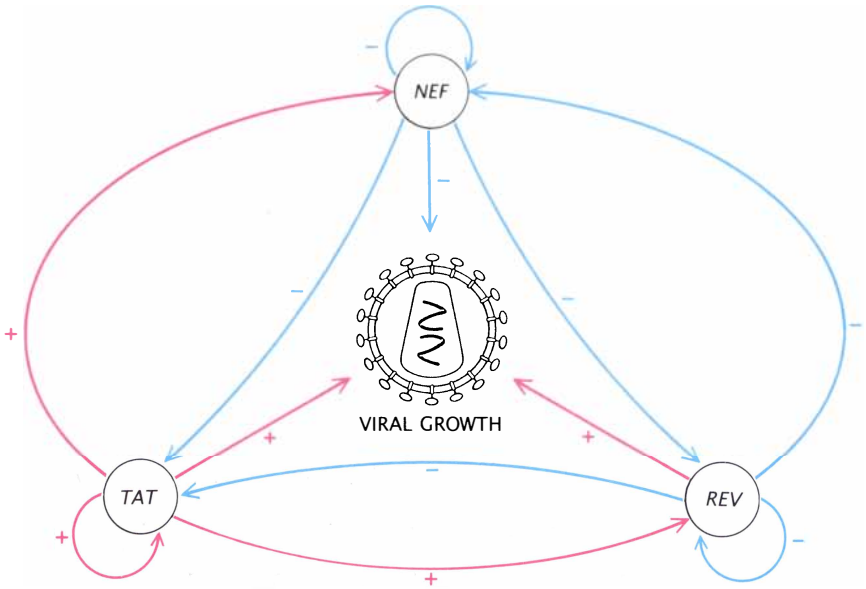
Once replication is under way, however, interaction between the *rev* and *tat* mechanisms may hold viral growth in check. The two pathways can counteract each other: the *tat* product increases its own production and the production of the *rev* protein, whereas the *rev* protein slows its own synthesis and that of *tat* because it favors the accumulation of full-length mRNA's instead of the spliced mRNA's that form regulatory proteins. The result is a kind of homeostasis, marked by steady levels of both the *tat* and the *rev* proteins and modest production

of virus. Because controlled growth enables a virus to reproduce itself for years without killing off its host cells, such genetic regulation may be an adaptive feature for any retrovirus that infects a long-lived species such as human beings. Indeed, the other human retroviruses, HTLV-I and -II, also have *tat*- and *rev*like controls.

How can a regulatory pathway alternately favor the synthesis of proteins from two different sets of genes? Results from a series of experiments suggest that the *rev* pathway does not directly affect the production of mRNA or protein. Instead it may act by governing the transport of mRNA's. This hypothesis assumes the existence of several subcompartments within the infected cell's nucleus; mRNA's would meet different fates depending on which subcompartment they were shunted into.

Under this hypothesis the CRS sequence ordinarily would interact with cellular transport mechanisms to confine the mRNA's it marks (the mRNA's for virion proteins) in a nuclear subcompartment that contains splicing mechanisms and powerful degradative enzymes. There the transcripts would be either spliced to remove the CRS sequences or degraded. Any spliced transcripts, which would now encode regulatory proteins, could then be exported from the nucleus to the protein factories in the cytoplasm of the cell.

If the *rev* protein is present, on the other hand, the CAR sequence would respond by overriding the CRS signal. Then full-length mRNA's would be shunted to a nuclear subcompartment in which they would escape splicing and degradation; from there they would be exported and made into virion proteins. In view of this hypothesis it is noteworthy that the *rev* protein is distributed unevenly in the nucleus of HIV-infected cells, as one might expect it to be if it exerts its effect in a specific subcompartment.



NETWORK OF INTERACTIONS among HIV regulatory genes controls viral growth. Each gene, through its protein product and the sequence in the viral genetic material that responds to it, affects the expression not only of the genes for virion components but also of the other regulatory genes and (in a feedback effect) itself. The *tat* gene acts by positive feedback and activates (*red arrows*) all HIV genes; *nef* acts by negative feedback and represses (*blue arrows*) all the genes. The *rev* gene represses regulatory genes but activates virion genes, favoring viral growth.

In addition to an activator (*tat*) and a selective regulator (*rev*), HIV is equipped with a negative regulator, which slows the transcription of the viral genome. The gene is called *nef* (negative-regulatory factor), and it may be responsible for HIV's ability to turn off its own growth and lie utterly dormant. The *nef* protein's target sequence, found at the start of the viral genome in the long terminal repeat, is known as NRE (negative-regulatory element). The NRE sequence represses transcription even on its own; when the viral LTR is transferred into uninfected cells, it directs a higher rate of transcription of cellular genes if it lacks the sequence. The *nef* product amplifies NRE's effect.

Just how the *nef* protein does so is a puzzle. In contrast to the *tat* and *rev* proteins, which are concentrated in the nucleus, close to the HIV genes they affect, the *nef* protein is found mainly outside the nucleus in the cytoplasm. Indeed, the molecule bears a fatty acid that probably locks it onto the inside of the cell membrane. How can this distant factor interact with the NRE sequence in the viral genome?

It is likely that the *nef* protein exerts its effect through intermediary molecules made by the host cell. The protein displays several activities similar to those of molecules that initiate or take part in the cell's own signaling pathways, which relay chemical messages received at the cell membrane to processes within the cell. For example, the biochemistry of the *nef* protein resembles the biochemistry of cellular agents that can trigger the activation of a protein kinase, a kind of enzyme that directly stimulates many cellular responses. In addition the *nef* protein is itself a protein kinase and can be modified by a cellular protein kinase. All these properties suggest that the *nef* protein acts by affecting cellular factors that ultimately carry its message to the NRE sequence in the nucleus.

The repressive effect of *nef* is intertwined with the activities of the other regulatory pathways. The countervailing effects of the *nef* and *tat* pathways could lead to prolonged steady-state production of both proteins and controlled viral growth—a consequence similar to that of the interplay between *rev* and *tat*. The interaction of *nef* and *rev*, on the other hand, could foster instability and underlie HIV's characteristic extreme variations in growth rate.

Both pathways are negative-feedback loops. The *nef* protein slows its own production as well as the production of the *rev* product by suppressing transcription of all viral genes, whereas the *rev* protein achieves the same effects by slowing the production of regulatory proteins in favor of structural ones. The interaction holds the potential of an all-or-nothing response. A high initial concentration of the *nef* protein would suppress all further gene expression and the virus would lie quiescent; a high initial concentration of *rev* would suppress further production of regulatory proteins (including *nef*) in favor of structural ones. Viral replication would be switched on.

This picture of three regulatory pathways interacting to set the level of viral growth may soon be complicated further. HIV contains two newly identified genes, *vpr* and *vpu*, that are active in the course of infection. Perhaps the *vpr* and *vpu* products also regulate

viral replication. Studies of these two proteins and their possible interactions with known regulatory factors are at an early stage, however.

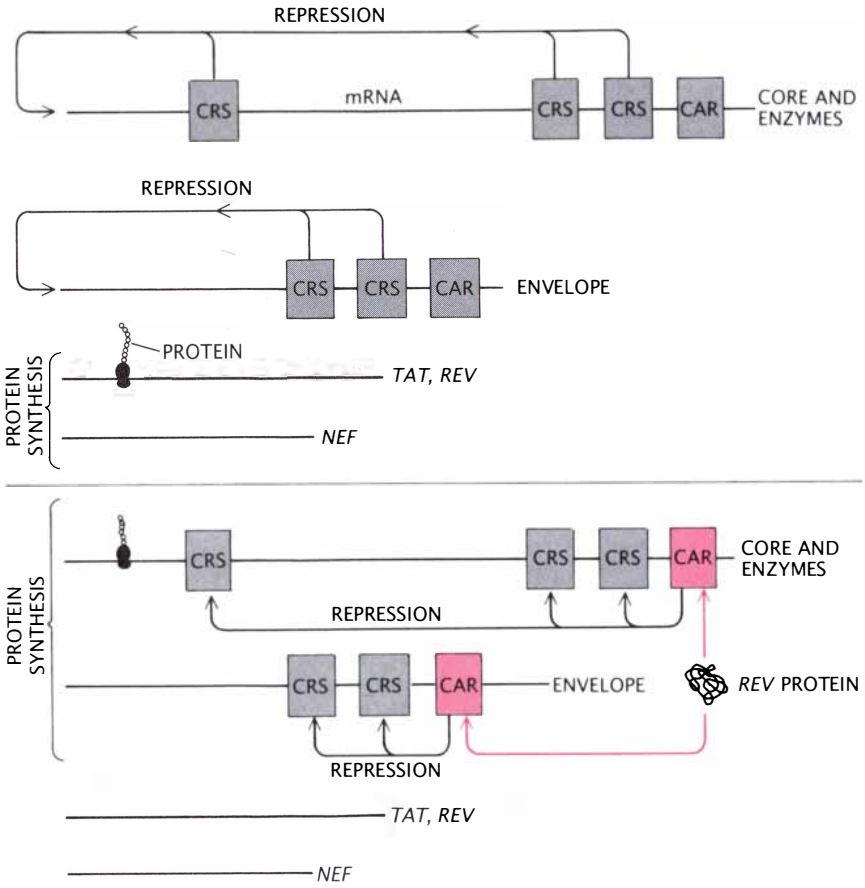
These intricate mechanisms for controlling HIV growth do not operate in isolation; they are intimately intertwined with the physiology of the host cell. For one thing, the virus depends on cellular machinery to transcribe its genes and convert them into protein. More specifically, cellular factors surely contribute to the *tat*-driven burst of HIV replication that ensues when an infected *T* cell is stimulated by antigen. Differences in the host molecular climate must also play some part in the varied levels of growth seen in different cell types. What is the basis of these influences?

One key phenomenon may be the interaction of cellular proteins with the LTR at the beginning of the viral genome. Sequences in the LTR define the RNA initiation site: the starting point for the copying of viral genes into mRNA. The sequences resemble those found at the initiation sites of cellular genes, and at least eight proteins that are normally engaged in cellular transcription bind to the viral genome at or near the initiation site. One probably serves to position the RNA polymerase (the cellular enzyme that copies genes into mRNA) as transcription begins, and several other proteins are believed to speed the rate of RNA initiation.

One protein that recognizes the HIV initiation sequences has a specific role in the physiology of *T* cells and other lymphocytes. The protein, designated NF-κB, is activated when lymphocytes are stimulated by an antigen and begin to multiply, and it is thought to contribute to cell growth by increasing transcription. It turns out that stimulation of infected *T* cells increases the binding of NF-κB to the viral genome. The activation of this protein, then, may be one means by which *T*-cell stimulation precipitates viral growth.

Not all the cellular proteins that act on the viral genome are stimulatory; some must repress gene expression. The virus's *nef* protein, for example, which acts from a distance to slow the expression of viral genes, relies on cellular intermediaries to carry its signal to the NRE sequence in the nucleus. That sequence's ability to slow transcription even in the absence of *nef,* moreover, probably reflects an independent interaction with inhibitory factors made by the cell.

The constellation of cellular factors acting on the viral genome presumably varies depending on both the condition and the kind of host cell. Some resting cells may simply lack the proteins needed for RNA initiation, so that the infection remains quiescent. In other cells the rate of viral growth may be constrained by a low concentration of initiation factors or by an abundance of proteins that inhibit mRNA synthesis. Thus the host cell, through its array of transcription factors, creates a molecular environment that influences the working of HIV's own regulatory mechanisms.



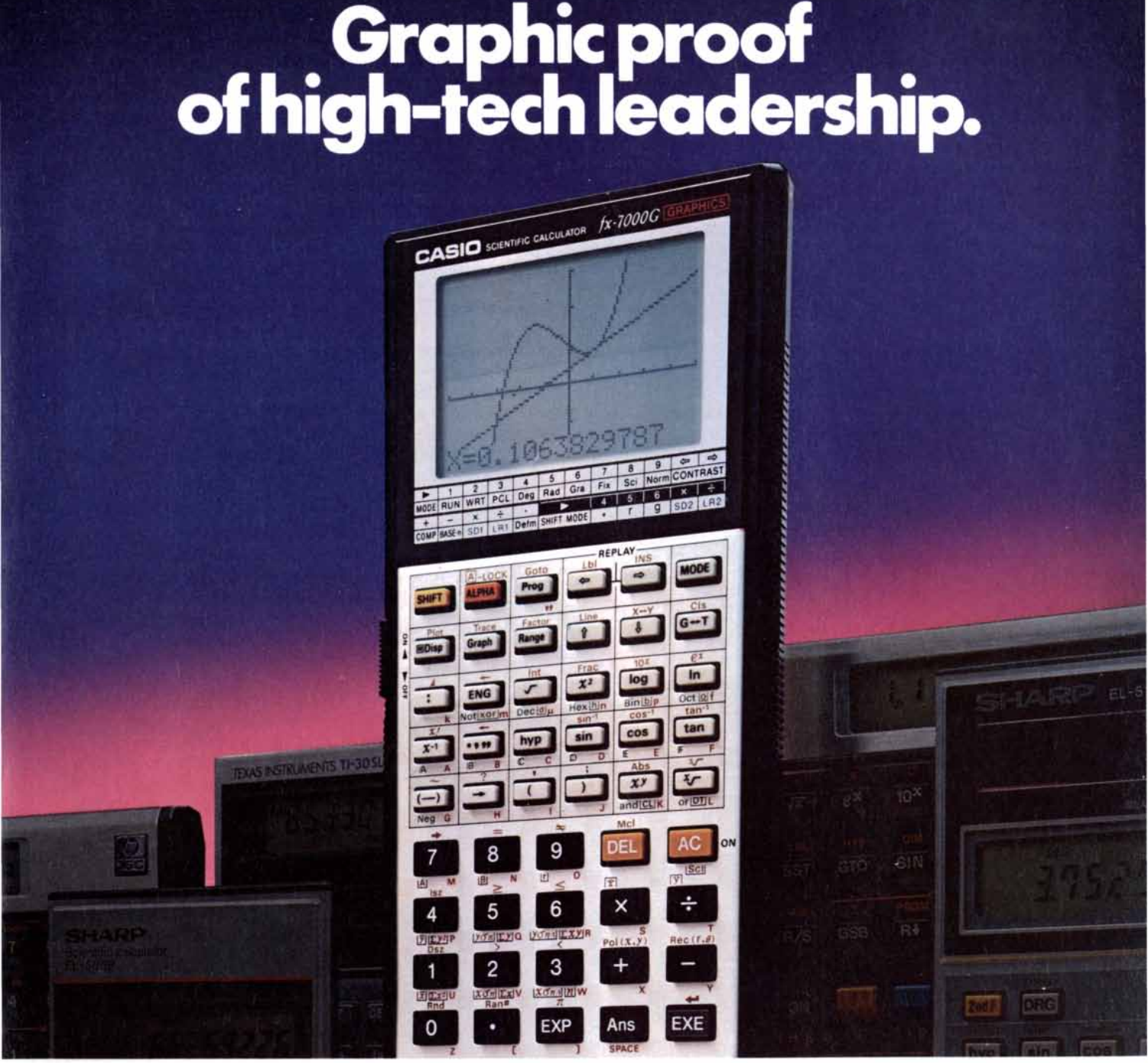
GENETIC SWITCH for viral growth is embodied in the *rev* pathway. The pathway includes two nucleotide sequences designated CRS and CAR, which are found in the messenger RNA's (mRNA's) for components of the virus core and envelope. In the absence of *rev* protein (*top*), CRS represses the synthesis of protein from these mRNA's, and the elements of new virus are not made. Only the short mRNA's for regulatory proteins (the *rev, tat* and *nef* products), which lack CRS, are made into protein. When the *rev* protein is present (*bottom*), it interacts with CAR to override the repressive effect of CRS; virion proteins are made and viral growth is switched on.

After those mechanisms trigger the production of infectious virus particles, a final gene comes into play. Called *vif,* for virion infectivity factor, the gene encodes a small protein that is found in the cytoplasm of infected cells, in the fluid surrounding them and perhaps also in free virus particles. The *vif* protein somehow enhances the ability of virus that has budded from one cell to infect another; HIV strains carrying mutations that inactivate *vif* make normal-looking virions that carry a full complement of RNA and enzymes but infect cells less efficiently.

In the absence of *vif* the initial step in infection occurs just as readily: gp120, the outer part of the envelope protein that studs the virion surface, binds to a specific protein on the surface of an uninfected cell. This receptor molecule, known as CD4, is abundant on the surface of *T*4 cells but is also present in at least trace amounts on every kind of cell infected by the virus [see "HIV Infection: The Cellular Picture," by Jonathan N. Weber and Robin A. Weiss, page 100].

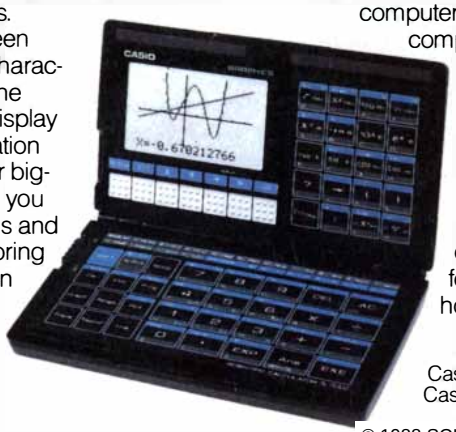
Next, in the ordinary course of events, one end of gp41, the part of the envelope protein that is embedded in the viral membrane, pierces the membrane of the target cell and initiates fusion. (An unidentified cell-sur-

Graphic proof of high-tech leadership.



The Casio fx-7000G $89.95. It's the world's first programmable scientific calculator with a graphic display. It can give form to your figures, instantly drawing graphs that depict your formulas and calculations.

With a screen measuring 16 characters by 8 lines, the fx-7000G can display enough information for some of your biggest ideas. And you can store graphs and formulas, then bring them back for an instant replay.



With its 422 step memory and 193 functions—including linear regression, standard deviation and computer math—the fx-7000G lets you perform computer functions, without acquiring computer knowledge or incurring computer costs.

For additional capabilities, there's the fx-7500G ($109.95). It has a larger memory capacity, with 195 functions, 4,006 memory steps, instant graph enlargement or reduction feature, plus a convenient horizontal folding format.

If you need even more power, our fx-8000G ($119.95) techs you even higher, with 1,446 memory steps and 225 functions. And when hooked up with our optional FA-80 interface, it works with most parallel dot matrix printers or plotters including Casio's own models.

If you have any doubts as to who's the leader in high-tech calculators, just pick up an fx-7000G, fx-7500G or fx-8000G and draw your own conclusions.

CASIO®
Where miracles never cease

Casio, Inc. Consumer Products Division: 570 Mt. Pleasant Avenue, Dover, NJ 07801
Casio Canada Ltd., 2100 Ellesmere Road, Suite 240, Scarborough, Ontario M1H3B7

face component known as fusion factor, the absence of which prevents infection of certain cell lines even though they are rich in CD4, must also be present.) The core of the virus then enters the cell, and the viral genome is copied into DNA and integrated in the cell nucleus.

In *vif*-defective virus one of these later steps apparently takes place very inefficiently. The absence of the *vif* product hampers only the transmission of free virus, however. The virus can still spread by cell-to-cell transmission, in which viral envelope protein on the surface of an infected cell binds to the CD4 receptor on an uninfected cell and the cell membranes fuse, allowing virus cores that have formed but not yet budded from the infected cell to pass into the new cell and infect it.

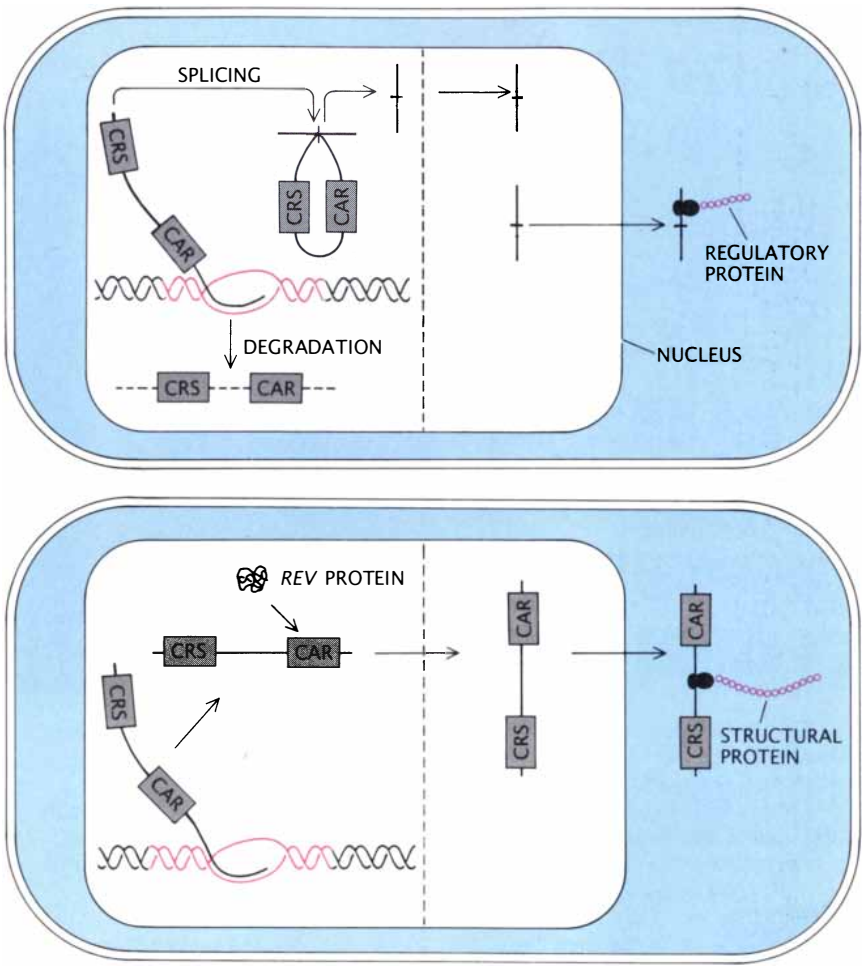
What is the molecular basis for the cellular devastation that accompanies this intricately controlled cycle of growth and dissemination? HIV infection practically eliminates the entire population of *T*4 cells and may also kill their precursors in the thymus gland and the bone marrow. It does so even though the number of infected *T* cells at any given time is quite low. Moreover, the virus is just as common in other cell populations, such as macrophages and monocytes, and yet it kills relatively few of those cells.

The properties of the viral envelope protein explain much of this pattern of cell death. The envelope protein kills cells directly in at least two ways. As virus particles bud from an infected cell, the protein on the departing virus may bind to CD4 molecules on the surrounding cell membrane, tearing holes in it. The punctured cell swells and dies. Prolific viral replication and a high concentration of surface CD4 are both needed for this means of killing cells. Infected *T* cells meet both criteria; infected macrophages, monocytes and microglial cells (structural cells in the brain and spinal cord) produce virus slowly and display little CD4. They generally escape destruction by this mechanism.

The envelope protein can also kill *T*4 cells in quantity by another means: the same process of cell fusion that is responsible for cell-to-cell transmission of the virus. Beginning with a single infected cell, the process of fusion, mediated by gp120 and the CD4 molecule, can continue until as many as 500 uninfected cells have combined into a giant, moribund mass called a syncytium. The ability of this process to multiply the cell-killing effect of infection may explain how *T*4 cells become drastically depleted in AIDS patients even though at any given instant fewer than one in every 1,000 *T* cells harbors the virus in active or latent form.

In a third process of cell killing, carried out by the immune system itself, the envelope protein has an indirect role. The immune system of a person infected with HIV makes antibodies to the envelope protein as well as to other viral proteins, yet this immune response does not eliminate or inactivate the virus. Important functional sites on the envelope protein, in particular, seem to be mostly protected from antibodies by its shape, its shroud of sugar molecules and the continual variation that results from mutations in the gene encoding it [see "AIDS Vaccines," by Thomas J. Matthews and Dani P. Bolognesi, page 120].

Not only does the immune response to the envelope protein fail to check the disease but also it may be fatal to the patient's own cells—cells such as macrophages and monocytes, which HIV does not kill directly. Antibodies that have bound to the envelope protein (routinely displayed on infected cells) may activate a set of blood proteins known as complement, which lyses, or ruptures, the antibody-coated cells. A subset of lymphocytes known as killer *T* cells may also respond to the envelope protein by destroying infected cells. The viral protein could make even uninfected cells into targets for immune-mediated killing. Infected cells readily shed gp120; the free protein can then bind to CD4 on healthy cells, subjecting them to at-



POSSIBLE MECHANISM of the *rev* switch depends on the selective transport of mRNA's. In the absence of the *rev* protein (*top*) any mRNA's that include the CRS sequence are held in the nucleus in a hypothetical subcompartment, where they are either degraded or spliced to remove CRS. Spliced transcripts can then be transported into a second subcompartment, where they are stable, and ultimately made into protein; because of the splicing, however, they yield only regulatory proteins. The *rev* protein interacts with CAR to override CRS (*bottom*). Full-length mRNA's can now be transported into the second subcompartment and then made into virion proteins.

Medical Research in AIDS

As with so many illness, there is no cure today for AIDS or HIV disease. But there is an accelerated, worldwide effort to develop effective treatments —an effort that is producing encouraging early results. A variety of new drugs have been identified that have promise because—in the test tube—they can suppress HIV or fight one of the microbes that cause the opportunistic infections seen in AIDS.

Many of these new drugs are now being tested in human volunteers with various stages of HIV disease. Such medical research is essential to the development of treatments that will be safe and optimally effective. But it also poses certain risks. It is important to both the quality of the research and the safety of volunteer study subjects that they be fully informed before enrolling in any drug trial. They must understand the methodology of clinical trials, the requirements for participation, and any risks that may be entailed.

Trials of new drugs in humans involve three phases of testing. **Phase I** trials are of short duration and involve a small number of patients. Their goal is to determine the safe dose range of a new drug and how it is dealt with by the body. **Phase II** trials aim at determining whether a new drug has therapeutic efficacy. These usually involve several hundred volunteers and are "controlled"—the efficacy of the drug is compared to a placebo or to another drug. Neither doctors nor patients know who receives the experimental drug or the control preparation. The use of these controls accelerates research because it minimizes bias—thereby improving the value of trial results. **Phase III** trials may include thousands of volunteers at multiple research centers. They help to further define—under carefully controlled conditions—how and when a drug is optimally safe and effective.

Volunteers are protected by certain laws and regulatory agencies such as the Food and Drug Administration. In the U.S., the law requires review and approval of each clinical trial protocol by an Institutional Review Board concerned with the safety of volunteers and adherence to strict ethical standards by investigators. Study volunteers must receive complete written and oral disclosure—in terms that are clearly understandable to them—of all benefits and risks in a particular drug trial. This permits subjects to provide "informed consent" before participation. Volunteering as a study subject is not only a valuable public service, it also represents a way to access forms of anti-HIV treatment that are still under investigation.

A NOTE TO THOSE WITH HIV INFECTION

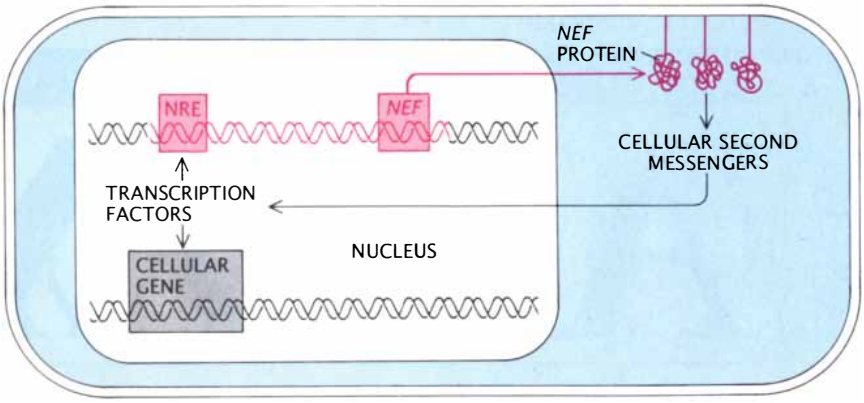
If you are told, after careful and competent medical evaluation, that you are HIV-infected or that you have AIDS, try to keep the following information in mind: Although a diagnosis of AIDS or HIV infection is nobody's idea of good news, it is *not*—repeat, *not*—an instant "death sentence." In some individuals, even full-blown AIDS has not proved fatal for many years. There are no hard-and-fast rules about how quickly HIV disease progresses. By and large, most patients and their families have time to consider their options carefully. It is crucial to seek thoughtful medical advice from a personal physican they trust.

Beware of extravagant claims or promises of miraculous results concerning any treatment. Should a new treatment be proven to be effective, it will not remain a secret for very long. Exorbitant fees or "expenses" for any experimental treatment should make you suspicious. In general, experimental drugs are provided at no cost, and no ethical medical practitioner would seek to charge more than standard fees for caring for you. What about alternative therapies? Balanced nutrition, low-dose vitamins, meditation, or mental imaging may all play a role in healing for many individuals. But, here again, be suspicious of extravagant claims, excessive cost or extreme regimens. As more promising drugs become available for study in humans, the partnership between investigators and volunteer subjects becomes ever more important. Ultimately, their research will provide enduring medical answers to this global health crisis.

Adapted from the AIDS/HIV Experimental Treatment Directory, *published quarterly by the American Foundation for AIDS Research (AmFAR). The directory includes detailed background information on clinical trial procedures and the drug approval process. To order a copy, call 1-800-992-2873. To find out more about AmFAR and its research and prevention grant programs, see the Reader Service card.*

AMERICAN FOUNDATION FOR AIDS RESEARCH

1515 Broadway
36th Floor
New York, NY 10036
(212) 333-3118



ACTION AT A DISTANCE characterizes the *nef* pathway, which represses HIV growth. The protein encoded by *nef* is found in the cell cytoplasm, probably attached to the inside of the cell membrane. Yet it seems to exert its effects by way of NRE, a sequence in the viral genome, in the nucleus. It is thought that cellular signaling systems and factors probably carry the *nef* protein's message to the nucleus. By affecting the cell's own biochemistry, *nef* might also alter the expression of cellular genes.

tack by agents of the immune system.

The envelope protein is the only HIV component whose role in cell killing has been documented. Yet the regulatory proteins may also contribute to cell death or dysfunction, by altering the expression of cellular as well as viral genes. The *nef* protein, for example, relying as it does on cellular factors to carry its message of repression to the viral genome, is very likely to have broader effects on the cell; *tat*, *rev* and perhaps other HIV genes may also disturb the cell's genetic control. Among the cellular genes thus affected might be those that direct the production of diffusible factors that help to maintain immune-system function.

For example, macrophages and monocytes release protein factors, such as interleukin-1 and interferons, that activate other cell populations in the immune system. Abnormally high or low levels of these factors could alter the behavior of the target cells or even kill them. Cells in the central nervous system require similar diffusible proteins for their survival, which raises the possibility that altered macrophage and monocyte function underlies some of the neurological deterioration seen in AIDS patients.

The viral genetic blueprint that specifies these events, from infection through replication to cell killing, is remarkably changeable. The complete sequence of nucleotides has been determined for a number of HIV samples, isolated at different times and places. Some pairs of isolates differ in no more than 1 or 2 percent of their nucleotides, but for other isolates the differences amount to more than 25 percent. What is the source of this striking variability?

HIV replication includes three steps at which mutations are likely. The viral DNA polymerase lacks the error-correcting feature that analogous cellular enzymes have, and so the copying errors it makes in converting viral RNA into a single DNA strand and then synthesizing the complementary strand go uncorrected. The cellular RNA polymerase that makes the genetic material for new virions also does not correct its own errors. These three steps are common to all retroviruses; in a bird retrovirus they—together with other, less problematic events in replication—have been found to produce an average of about one mutation per replication cycle.

At that rate new HIV variants can develop during a single infection. And yet if one sets aside differences in the disease's course and transmission properties that can be ascribed to environmental or social factors, AIDS shows a remarkably consistent face throughout the world. Why is the variability of the virus not reflected in the nature of the disease?

Many mutations leave HIV unable to survive and so are eliminated. The many other mutations that persist are concentrated in parts of the genome that are thought to have little functional role. Most mutations, then, are not likely to affect the structure and life cycle of the virus, and so strains that are rather different genetically may have similar pathogenic properties. In virus that has been maintained in culture, mutations do appear in the regulatory genes; such mutations can increase a cultured strain's growth rate by, for example, incapacitating the negative-regulatory gene *nef*. Yet mutations affecting genetic regulation do not seem common in natural infections; nearly all patients make antibodies to the *nef* protein, for instance.

That is not to say that mutations play no role at all in the pathology of AIDS. The advent of variants carrying mutations in the envelope gene in particular may well affect the progression of the disease in an individual. Changes in an exposed part of the envelope protein called the hypervariable loop, for example, may enable the virus to evade an immune response directed at the protein and so would be favored by natural selection. Mutational change in other parts of the protein may alter the virus's ability to bind to or fuse with a specific kind of cell. As one population of cells becomes depleted, HIV variants with an increased affinity for another cell population might have the advantage.

This is the molecular character of the opponent facing clinicians and workers in drug and vaccine development. The picture is a daunting one. HIV is able to slip into cells and remain there for life. Its elaborate genetic regulation enables it to lie low, hidden from immune surveillance; to replicate slowly, possibly deranging the host cell's own genetic controls as it does so, or to initiate a burst of growth that kills the infected cell. Even when HIV is active, the design of its envelope protein and the variability that results from its error-prone replication mechanisms make it a difficult target for an immune response.

A molecular description of HIV, then, reveals the full dimensions of the challenge presented by AIDS. Yet it also sets out the vital features of the virus, some of which can serve as the focus of control strategies. Surely this description contains the seeds of HIV's eventual defeat.

FURTHER READING

STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION OF HUMAN PATHOGENIC RETROVIRUSES. William A. Haseltine, Ernest F. Terwilliger, Craig A. Rosen and Joseph G. Sodroski in *Retrovirus Biology: An Emerging Role in Human Diseases*, edited by Robert C. Gallo and Flossie Wong-Staal. Marcel Dekker, Inc., 1988

CIS- AND *TRANS*-ACTIVATION OF HIV. Jay Rappoport and Flossie Wong-Staal in *Concepts of Viral Pathogenesis*, edited by Abner Notkins and Michael Oldstone. Springer-Verlag, in press.

THE CONTROL OF HUMAN RETROVIRUS GENE EXPRESSION, edited by B. Robert Franza, Jr., Bryan R. Cullen and Flossie Wong-Staal. Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, in press.

No other system of keeping up can compare with ours.

YOUR SYSTEM: a time-consuming, futile struggle to keep up with the information explosion.

The classic texts are convenient references—but the information they contain is obsolete before publication.

Like many physicians, you probably rely on the texts you first used in medical school. But even using the most recent editions, you find material that no longer reflects current clinical thinking—and they lack the latest information on such topics as herpes, oncogenes, AIDS, and photon imaging.

Reading stacks of journals alerts you to recent developments—but can't give you quick answers on patient management.

Struggling through the hundreds of journal pages published each month—even on only the really significant advances in the field—is arduous and memory-taxing. And it's a task that costs physicians valuable time—their most precious resource.

Review courses cover clinical advances—but, months later, do you recall the details of a new procedure or unfamiliar drug?

Seminars can also be costly and make you lose valuable time away from your practice—expenses that may amount to several thousand dollars. And, the speaker's skill often determines how much you learn.

OUR SYSTEM: a rewarding, efficient way to keep yourself up-to-date—and save hundreds of hours of your time for patient care.

A comprehensive, 2,300-page text in two loose-leaf volumes, incorporating the latest advances in medical practice as of the month you subscribe.

This superbly designed, heavily illustrated resource, called "the best written of all [the internal medicine] books" by *JAMA* (251:807, 1984), provides a practical, comprehensive description of patient care in 15 subspecialties. And, because the text is updated each month, the clinical recommendations reflect all the current findings. A practice-oriented index and bibliography of recent articles further enhance the efficiency of the text.

Each month, six to nine replacement chapters to update your text *plus* new references, an eight-page news bulletin, and a completely new index.

You'd have to read hundreds of journal pages each month—and memorize the contents—to get the same information SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN *Medicine* contains. With our updated text, you read only the information you really need. Our authors, largely from Harvard and Stanford, sort through the literature and monitor developments, incorporating the significant advances into our chapters.

At no additional cost, a 32-credit CME program, to save you valuable patient-care time and the expense of attending review courses.

Earn 32 Category 1 or prescribed credits per year with our convenient self-study patient management problems; each simulates a real-life clinical situation. Choose either the complimentary printed version or, at a modest extra charge, the disk version for your IBM® PC or PS/2, Macintosh™, or Apple® (or compatible).

☐ Yes, I'd like to try the SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN *Medicine* system. Please enter my subscription at a first-year price of US$265* plus $7 shipping for a total of US$272.

☐ Also enroll me in the CME program. I'd prefer:
- ☐ the printed version at no additional charge.
- ☐ the disk version at US$97* additional. Computer type or compatible:
  - ☐ IBM® PC (256K) or compatible (5¼") ☐ IBM® PS/2 (3½") ☐ Macintosh™ (512K)
  - ☐ Apple® IIc/IIe/IIGS ☐ Apple® II+ with 80-col. card by: ☐ Apple® ☐ Videx®

☐ Enroll me in the disk CME only at US$152.* (Note model above.)

☐ Check enclosed* ☐ Bill me

☐ VISA ☐ MasterCard Exp. Date _____ Account No. _____

Name _____ Specialty _____

Address _____

City _____ State _____ Zip Code _____

7001

*Add sales tax if for CA, DC, IL, MI or NY. Allow 8 weeks for delivery. Add US$10 for shipping to Canada. IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation. Apple is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. Videx is a registered trademark of Videx, Inc. Macintosh™ is a trademark of McIntosh Laboratory, Inc. and is used by Apple Computer, Inc. with its express permission.

Or, call toll-free: 1-800-345-8112

Your subscription includes:

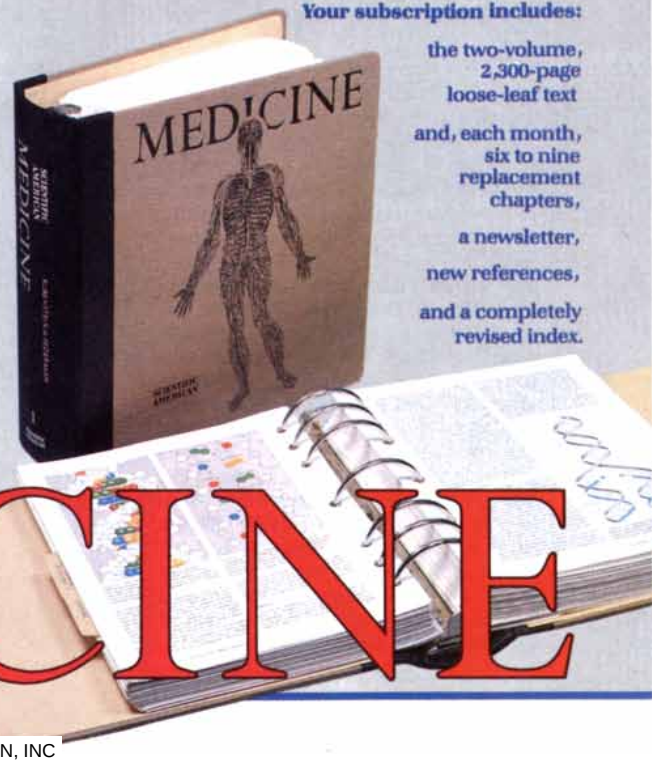
the two-volume, 2,300-page loose-leaf text

and, each month, six to nine replacement chapters,

a newsletter,

new references,

and a completely revised index.



SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN

MEDICINE

The Origins of the AIDS Virus

The AIDS virus is not unique. It has relatives in man as well as other primates. Studies of related viruses indicate that some have evolved disease-free coexistence with their animal hosts

by Max Essex and Phyllis J. Kanki

The sudden appearance and rapid spread of a previously unknown infectious disease such as AIDS raises a series of compelling questions. What is the causative agent, what is its structure and how does it function and—in the case of a previously unknown agent—where did it come from?

Our own work has addressed the third problem, that of the origin of the AIDS virus, HIV. The object of these studies, we should make clear, is not to identify a particular site or group of people that harbored a particular ancestral virus and trace a path that led to the AIDS pandemic. Rather, the object is to learn more about viruses related to HIV and so understand how HIV has evolved the unique and deadly properties that lead to AIDS.

These questions are of more than historical interest. Within the past three years we and others have identified retroviruses related to HIV in monkeys and in human beings. The different biological properties of the viruses in various hosts can reveal something about how they cause disease. Evolutionary selection tends in the long run to favor the survival of both a virus and its host. Over decades or millenniums a virus-host relation can change; a lethal disease caused by a virulent pathogen in a susceptible host tends to give way as less virulent viruses and more resistant hosts emerge. Understanding how this may have happened in the case of other viruses may reveal ways to control the AIDS virus and its disease.

MAX ESSEX and PHYLLIS J. KANKI work together at the Harvard School of Public Health, where he heads the department of cancer biology and is chairman of the new Harvard AIDS Institute and she is a research scientist in the institute. Essex has a doctor's degree in veterinary medicine from Michigan State University and a Ph.D. from the University of California, Davis. His laboratory discovered the human-retrovirus envelope proteins, which are major candidates for future AIDS vaccines. In 1986 Essex shared the Lasker Award in clinical medical research with Robert C. Gallo and Luc Montagnier. Kanki has a doctor's degree in veterinary medicine from the University of Minnesota and a D.Sc. from the Harvard School of Public Health. After working at the New England Regional Primate Research Center, she joined Essex' laboratory in 1983. Kanki is currently leading an investigation of the biology of HIV-2 in West Africa.

One way to begin searching out the origin of HIV is to look for similar viruses in nonhuman primates. Monkeys and apes are often the only animal species other than human beings that are infected with important human viruses such as yellow fever and Marburg virus; in certain cases it is even thought that wild monkeys harbor the pathogens and can be the source of human infections.

The search for monkey viruses related to HIV had a precedent in the discovery of a primate counterpart of another human retrovirus. The first retroviruses shown to infect human beings (in 1980, by Robert C. Gallo of the National Cancer Institute) were two human *T*-lymphotropic viruses: HTLV-I (the cause of a rare form of *T*-cell leukemia/lymphoma in people) and the very closely related HTLV-II. Two years later Isao Miyoshi of Kochi University described a related virus in a monkey, the Japanese macaque. The virus was remarkably similar to the HTLV's and was designated the simian *T*-lymphotropic virus, STLV.

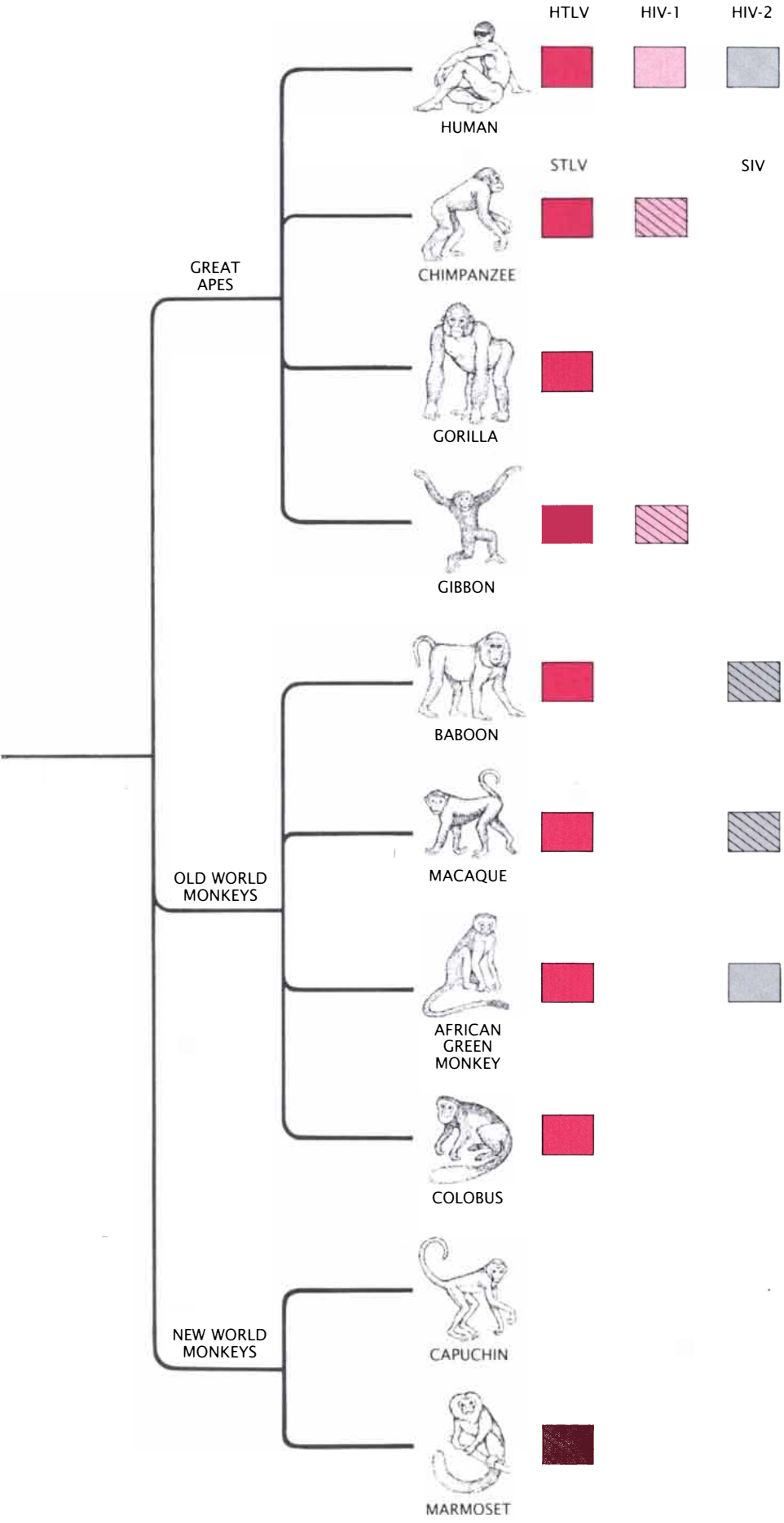
Both the HTLV's and STLV were capable of inducing immortality (one characteristic of cells transformed to the cancerous state) in *T* lymphocytes grown in the laboratory. The proteins of the two types of viruses were very similar: antibodies elicited by either virus in its host could recognize the proteins of the other virus—a phenomenon known as cross-reactivity. The genetic material of STLV was organized much like that of HTLV and the sequence of its component nucleotides was between 90 and 95 percent homologous to, or identical with, that of HTLV. Besides these virological similarities, the monkey and human viruses had similar biological properties.

When we studied Asian macaques at the New England Regional Primate Research Center in Southborough, Mass., we found that monkeys with malignant lymphoma (a cancer of lymphoid cells) showed much higher rates of STLV infection than healthy macaques. It appeared, then, that STLV was capable of inducing a lymphoid cancer in monkeys similar to the HTLV-induced lymphoid cancer in people.

The discovery of STLV prompted a number of studies aimed at determining its distribution in various primate species worldwide; the hope was to find clues to the geographic and evolutionary origin of HTLV. The simian virus was found to infect both Asian and African Old World monkeys and apes; in various serological studies (in which blood samples are analyzed for the presence of specific antibodies) the rate of STLV infection in these species varied from 1 to 40 percent. Genetic studies of STLV's from Asian and African primates showed that the human virus was more closely related to the simian virus seen in the African chimpanzee or the African green monkey (95 percent homology) than to the virus seen in the Asian macaque (90 percent), indicating that African STLV might have played the more important role in the origin and evolution of human HTLV's.

One hypothesis regarding the origin of HTLV relied on the premise that the 5 percent difference in the genetic sequences of the African STLV and HTLV was so great that it ruled out any possibility of a monkey-virus transfer to human beings any time after New World primates diverged from the Old World primate lineage during the Eo-

AFRICAN GREEN MONKEY is a major reservoir of the simian immunodeficiency virus (SIV), a relative of the AIDS virus; in various green-monkey populations from 30 to 70 percent of the animals are infected. Yet SIV does not cause disease in the infected green monkeys—whereas it causes simian AIDS in, for example, Asian macaques in primate research centers. Why?



PRIMATES AND RETROVIRUSES that infect them are related as shown. (The diagram is not drawn to reflect the precise sequence or dating of the evolutionary branching.) STLV, the first monkey retrovirus discovered, is not seen in New World monkeys; presumably it originated after they diverged from the main primate lineage. SIV infects African green monkeys in the wild. The hatched symbols indicate primate species that have been infected experimentally. HIV-1 and HIV-2 infect humans and, in the laboratory, certain primates.

cene epoch, about 40 million years ago. HTLV, then, would have evolved very long ago, from a virus infecting the primate ancestor that gave rise to the great apes.

If that were the case, however, the parallel evolution of STLV and HTLV within their respective hosts would need to have been virtually identical, considering that at the present time the two viruses differ by less than 5 percent. Many of us thought it unlikely that retroviruses could maintain such similarity after millions of years of evolution in various host species that were themselves evolving.

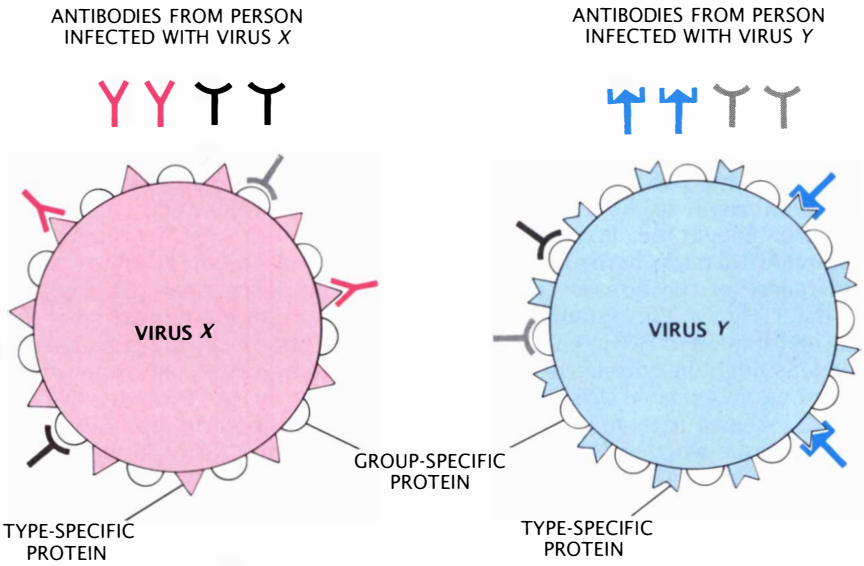
This suggested that primates could have infected human beings with a version of STLV in more recent times, within the past 40 million years. Indeed, Gallo has proposed that HTLV originated in Africa, where both people and African primates were infected, and was spread to the Americas by the slave trade and to the southwestern islands of Japan (the virus's other endemic area) by oceangoing Portuguese traders. Regardless of just how STLV and HTLV entered their respective host species, the available data made it clear that their origins were inextricably linked.

This background provided the impetus, after the AIDS virus had been characterized, for us to undertake a search for a monkey virus related to HIV. In 1984 we set about examining large numbers of primates by serological testing. Any virus infecting these primates that was related to HIV would share with HIV some sites (called cross-reactive epitopes) on its viral proteins. When an HIV-related protein was present in an infected animal, it would elicit cross-reactive antibodies to these epitopes, and we could detect the antibodies in the monkeys' blood. Soon we succeeded in finding such antibodies—and hence evidence for the presence of a monkey virus related to HIV—in blood samples from Asian macaques (*Maca-*

ca spp.) housed at the New England primate center.

At about that time veterinary pathologists at several primate research centers in the U.S. were reporting outbreaks of AIDS-like disease in captive macaque monkeys. The illness (called SAIDS, for simian AIDS) was seen only in Asian macaques. We were able to identify HIV-related antibodies in the SAIDS macaques. Then, in collaboration with Norman L. Letvin, Ronald C. Desrosiers and Muthiah D. Daniel of the New England center, we isolated and characterized the virus infecting them, which is now designated the simian immunodeficiency virus (SIV).

It was clearly related to HIV, as the antibody studies had suggested it would be. It infected the same CD4 subset of lymphocytes the human virus infects. The biochemical and biophysical properties of the SIV proteins were very similar to those of the HIV proteins. Antibodies from AIDS patients recognized cross-reactive epitopes on the SIV proteins, just as the monkey antibodies had recognized HIV proteins. The human antibodies were highly reactive with the major core protein of SIV but only minimally cross-reactive with the envelope glycoproteins on the surface of the monkey virus. It is characteristic of retroviruses that the internal core proteins are the most conserved, or "group-specific": they tend to be common to the members of a group of viruses. The envelope glycoproteins, on the other hand, are the least conserved—they are more "type-specific," or distinct for each virus in the group.



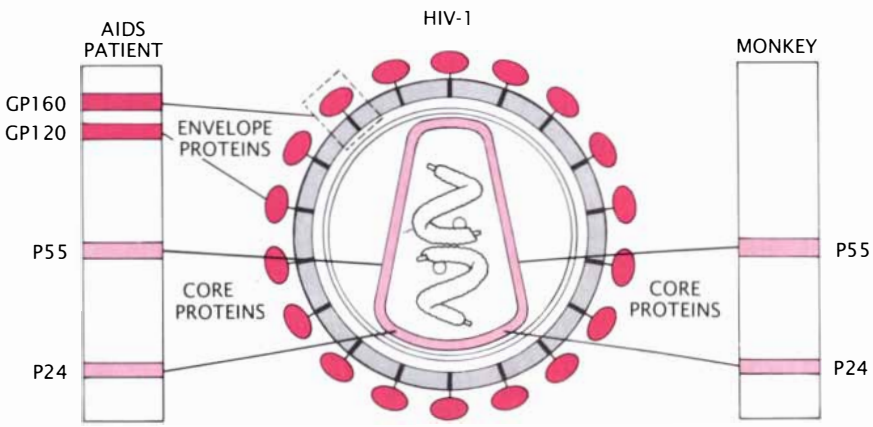
CROSS-REACTIVITY is displayed by related viruses. Each virus has on its surface type-specific proteins that are uniquely its own and group-specific ones that it shares with related viruses. Some antigenic sites (epitopes) on group-specific proteins are common to both viruses. A person infected by virus *X* will have developed cross-reactive antibodies that recognize cross-reactive epitopes on related virus *Y*.

Subsequent genetic studies have shown that SIV is approximately 50 percent related to HIV at the nucleotide-sequence level. The organization of structural and regulatory genes is virtually identical in SIV and HIV. The notable exceptions are the *vpx* gene of SIV, which is not found in HIV, and the *vpu* gene of HIV, which is not found in SIV. Like humans infected with HIV, Asian macaques infected with SIV suffered a decrease in *T*4 lymphocytes with ensuing immunosuppression; the animals died of opportunistic infections very similar to those seen in human AIDS. These features of SIV provide striking parallels to those of HIV. SIV therefore represents a system in which drugs and vaccines aimed at HIV can be subjected to preliminary testing.

As we studied SIV in 1985, the similarities between the simian virus and the human virus suggested that the two must be related, and we wondered whether the geographic distribution of the monkey virus might provide clues to the origin of the human AIDS virus. The mere existence of a related virus in captive immunosuppressed monkeys maintained in a U.S. primate facility did not provide much information in that respect. The monkey virus could have been transmitted to the macaques from another monkey species housed in the same facility or even by experimental manipulations.

We therefore investigated the possibility that wild Asian macaques also harbored SIV. Seroepidemiological studies of wild and captive Asian monkeys, including macaques, failed to find evidence of an SIV- or HIV-like agent. Studies by many investigators confirmed that SIV infection in the Asian macaque was limited to small numbers of monkeys in captivity, where it was highly associated with SAIDS. The data suggested that SIV did not naturally infect Asian monkeys in the wild. It seemed quite possible that the primate-center macaques had been exposed to SIV in captivity.

If the Asian macaque monkey was not the natural host for SIV, then what was? And how (if at all) were the primate viruses related to the observed



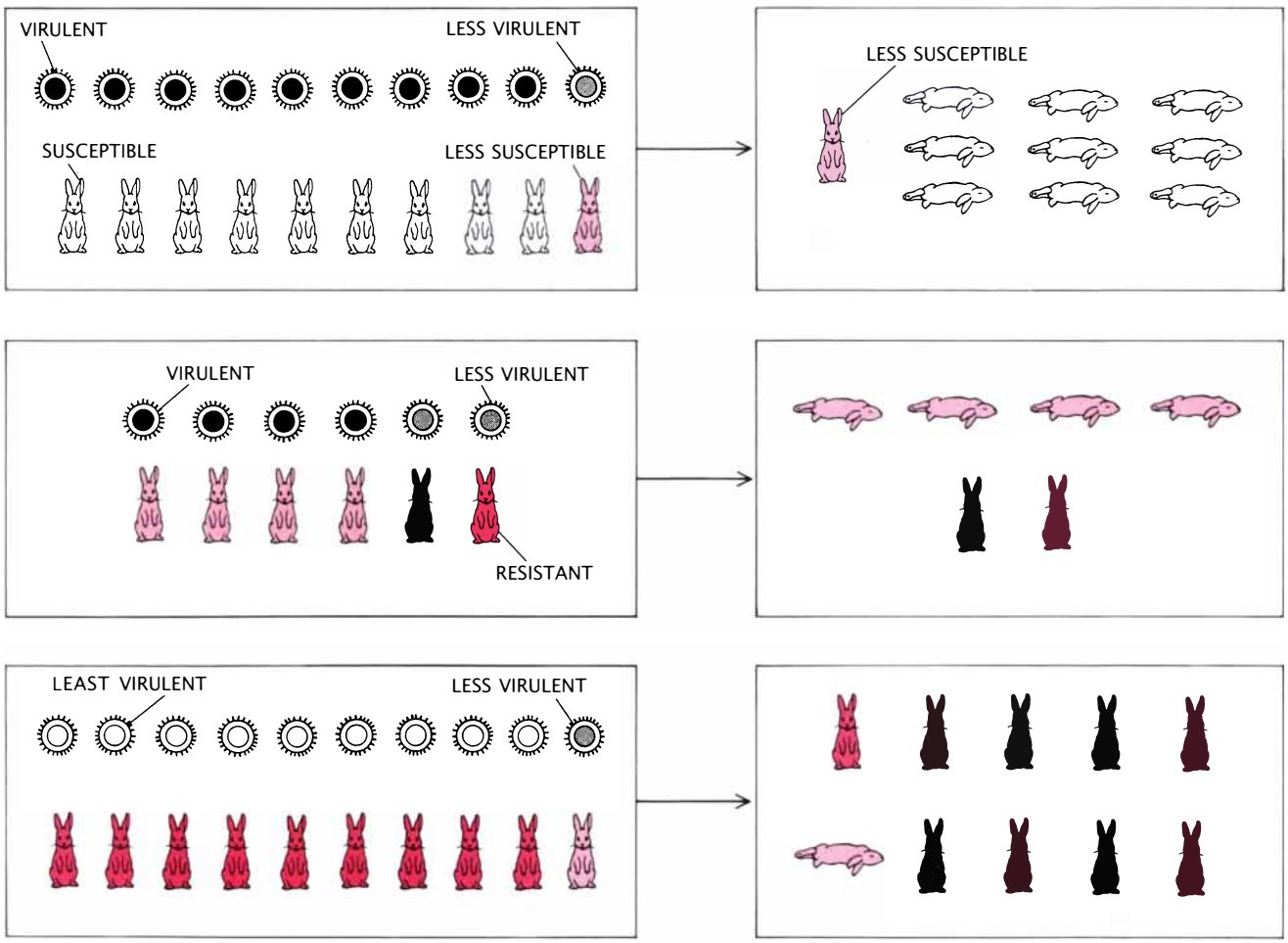
SIV was discovered by serological testing. AIDS patients have antibodies that recognize HIV-1 envelope proteins (gp120 and its precursor gp160) and core proteins (p24 and its precursor p55). Both Asian macaques that had simian AIDS and African green monkeys were found to have antibodies that recognized the HIV-1 core proteins (which are generally the more cross-reactive proteins in a retrovirus). The antibody response showed the monkeys had been infected with a virus related to HIV-1.

emergence of HIV in people? In 1985 the highest rates of HIV were reported in the U.S. and Europe, but disturbing reports from central Africa indicated that high rates of HIV infection and of AIDS prevailed there, at least in some urban centers. The reported rates of infection were so high that many workers thought the AIDS epidemic in central Africa might have predated the emergence of the disease elsewhere in the world. On the assumption that the distribution of HIV in human populations might be correlated with the distribution of related viruses in monkeys, it seemed to us to be important to determine whether HIV-related viruses were present in primate species in Africa.

We therefore obtained blood samples from representative African primates, including wild-caught chimpanzees (*Pan troglodytes*), African green monkeys (*Cercopithecus aethiops*), baboons (*Papio* spp.) and patas monkeys (*Erythrocebus patas*). The samples were analyzed for the presence of antibodies that reacted with proteins of the SIV virus from macaques. We found no evidence of SIV infection in the chimpanzee, baboon or patas monkey—but more than 50 percent of the wild African green monkeys studied in our first survey did show evidence of an SIV infection.

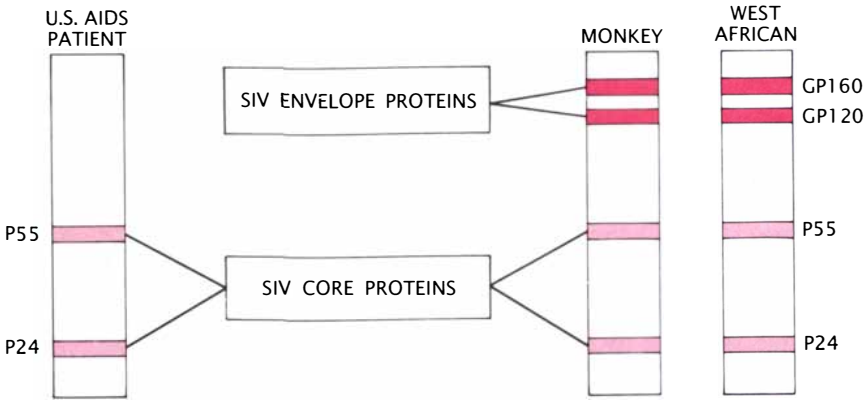
We have since analyzed samples from several thousand African green monkeys caught in various regions of sub-Saharan Africa and from many others housed in research facilities throughout the world. We find SIV infection in from 30 to 70 percent of them. Yet they show no sign of immunosuppression or of SAIDS. Moreover, in spite of their having the highest rates of SIV infection, the various green-monkey subspecies are among the most ecologically successful African primates, suggesting that the high infection rate in these monkeys has not been exerting long-term adverse selection pressure on the species.

Why SIV is endemic in these wild African monkeys but seems to do them no harm, and is also found in the captive Asian macaques, where it causes disease, was (and still is) an enigma, but the puzzle pointed to a line of investigation. It seemed quite possible that the captive Asian monkeys might first have been infected when they were accidentally exposed to African monkeys in holding facilities. The fact that a virus that seemed to be quite harmless in African monkeys was wreaking havoc in the newly exposed Asian monkeys indicated that at least some strains of SIV still had a potential for great virulence. The infected African species must have evolved mechanisms that kept a potentially lethal pathogen from causing disease. Indeed, some SIV strains might also have evolved toward coexistence with their monkey hosts.



CASE OF THE RESISTANT RABBITS illustrates the mutual evolution of a virus and its host. Myxoma virus was introduced into Australia in an effort to get rid of wild rabbits. Virulent viruses killed most of the rabbits, but a few animals happened to be less susceptible; they survived (*right*) and multiplied. The virulent viruses eventually killed them, but a few truly resistant rabbits were spared. Meanwhile natural selection favored the evolution of avirulent virus strains (because a virus does best if its host survives). Eventually a resistant rabbit population was established, coexisting with a largely avirulent virus.

There is a rough parallel between the differential SAIDS susceptibility of green monkeys and macaques and the very different susceptibility to AIDS of chimpanzees and human beings. Chimpanzees are the only animals that can be experimentally infected with the HIV isolated from AIDS patients. Yet the virus does not appear to cause lethal disease in chimpanzees as it does in people. Might it be, we wondered, that chimpanzees have somehow acquired resistance to the AIDS virus? If they have, could it be because wild chimpanzees have had earlier evolutionary experience with some close relative of HIV—a relative that might, in fact, be an immediate evolutionary precursor of HIV?



HIV-2 was discovered by serological testing with SIV proteins. The blood of U.S. AIDS patients had antibodies only to the core proteins, in keeping with the roughly 50 percent relation of SIV to HIV-1. As one might expect, SIV-infected monkeys had antibodies to both core and envelope proteins of SIV. People in high-risk groups in West Africa turned out also to have antibodies that reacted with both the core and the envelope proteins, indicating that they were infected by a human virus more closely related to SIV than to HIV-1. The virus is now designated HIV-2.

Retroviruses (like other intracellular parasites) tend to coexist with their natural host species in some way that allows both to survive. In the case of some retroviruses of rodents and chickens, there has been mutual adaptation to the extent that the complete viral genome, integrated into the host genome, is regularly inherited in all members of the host species. Such genetically inherited "endogenous" viruses have also evolved to become totally nonpathogenic. The human and simian retroviruses we are discussing, however, are "exogenous": they are transmitted horizontally, from individual to individual. It seems logical that retroviruses, like other infectious agents, may be most pathogenic when they first enter a new species. Selection for survival on the part of both the virus and the host species might then ensue.

A classic example of rapid evolution of the virus-host relation resulted from the introduction of myxoma, a lethal virus of rabbits, into Australia several decades ago. It was done deliberately, in an effort to get rid of wild rabbits that had become agricultural pests. At first the virus killed most exposed rabbits, but soon populations of rabbits emerged that were able to survive infection by the virulent myxoma virus and in the process to become immune to it. Less virulent strains of the virus also emerged; their hosts tended to survive, giving them a selective advantage over the lethal strains. Within a few years the rabbit population was restored to its original size—and the virus-host relation was completely changed.

Could the Asian macaques be analogous to the first generation of Australian rabbits, which were exposed to the myxoma virus without prior evolutionary experience and therefore died of myxomatosis? Might the African monkeys be analogous to the later, myxoma-resistant generations of rabbits? Knowing what mechanisms of immune resistance have evolved naturally in SIV-infected African monkeys, one could try to mimic such mechanisms in people exposed to HIV. The analogy between myxomatosis and SAIDS might extend to the viruses. Like the myxoma virus, HIV and SIV can mutate rapidly. Perhaps some strains of SIV, including the one that infects Asian macaques in captivity, are highly virulent and others are much less virulent. Identifying and comparing such strains could contribute to the understanding of HIV and the development of effective vaccines.

Clearly SIV is the closest known animal-virus relative of HIV. Yet it is only about 50 percent related on the basis of sequence analysis—not close enough to make it likely that SIV was an immediate precursor of HIV in people. Postulating that various HIV's and/or SIV's might exist as a spectrum of viruses in different monkey or human populations, we expanded our serological studies. Perhaps, we thought, one could find such a virus—an intermediate between SIV and HIV—in human beings.

To address the possibility that there might in fact be such a human virus, we examined high-risk people from diverse parts of Africa where we had earlier identified SIV-infected monkeys. We included female prostitutes, because they are at elevated risk for infection with sexually transmitted viruses; the groups that are at risk for HIV infection in industrialized countries, such as male homosexuals, intravenous drug abusers and hemophiliacs, either are rare or are difficult to identify in much of Africa.

In early 1985 we found evidence for such an SIV-related virus in Senegal in West Africa. With our collaborators Souleymane M'Boup of the University of Dakar and Francis Barin of the University of Tours, we had tested blood-serum samples from prostitutes with antigens from both HIV and SIV. HIV-positive serums (samples known to have antibodies to HIV) from both central Africa and the U.S. were tested with the same antigens. About 10 percent of the samples from prostitutes had antibodies that reacted with both HIV and SIV. Surprisingly, the antibodies reacted much better with SIV antigens than with those of HIV, particularly with SIV's type-specific external envelope glycoprotein and envelope transmembrane protein. In contrast, the HIV-positive serums from central Africa and the U.S. did not react very well with the SIV envelope antigens.

All in all, the reactivity of the prostitutes' antibodies to SIV antigens was indistinguishable from that of antibodies in the blood of SIV-infected macaques and African green monkeys. This clearly suggested that people in West Africa were infected with a retrovirus different from the one infecting people in central Africa, Europe and the U.S., and that the West African virus was more closely related to SIV than to HIV. Because the putative West African human virus responsible for these serological findings was clearly distinct from the AIDS virus (which in 1985 was still called HTLV-III or LAV) and would be a fourth

human retrovirus, we suggested that it be designated HTLV-IV; now the original AIDS virus is called HIV-1 and the West African human virus is HIV-2.

Soon Francois Clavel and Luc Montagnier of the Pasteur Institute also showed that West African people were infected with a virus very similar to SIV. Their studies and ours showed that people infected with HIV-2 have antibodies entirely cross-reactive with SIV antigens; in fact, it is impossible to distinguish between SIV and HIV-2 on the basis of serological criteria.

When the genetic material of the two viruses was examined, the nucleotide sequences too were found to be closely related. All of this suggests at least that the primate and human viruses share evolutionary roots and at most that there may have been interspecies infection—that SIV-infected monkeys transmitted the virus to humans or vice versa. The sequence studies also pointed to a possibility that one of the early isolates of HIV-2 reported from our laboratory might have been from a cell culture that was contaminated with the monkey virus itself. This suspicion is based on the assumption that there cannot have been any interspecies transmission of SIV to people. It is still not possible to say with certainty how these highly related viruses came to infect their respective hosts.

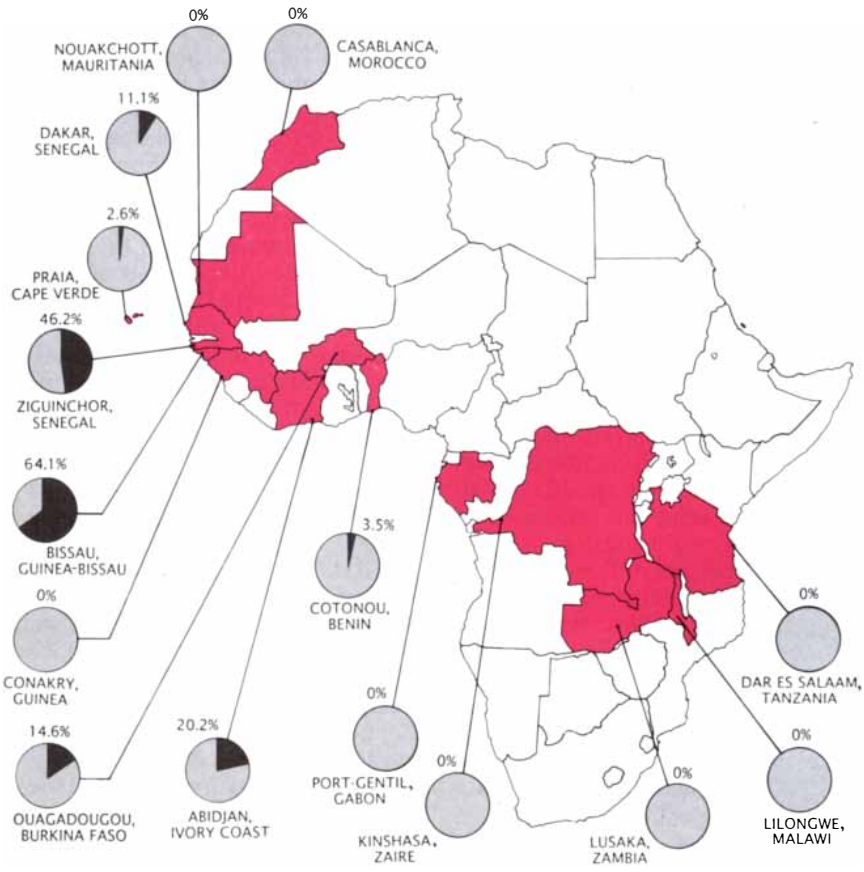
Our early studies showed HIV-2 was endemic in West Africa—where there did not appear to be any clinical epidemic of AIDS. This raised new questions. Was HIV-2 minimally pathogenic in humans, as SIV seemed to be in African monkeys? HIV-2 might cause a different syndrome, one that is less severe and not as regularly lethal as HIV-1. It is also possible that AIDS cases were present in West Africa but were missed because of inadequate clinical diagnosis. Still another explanation for the seeming absence of an epidemic is the possibility that a mixture of HIV-2 strains was present in the population; differences in virulence among the strains might limit the development of AIDS to only a fraction of the infected people.

One could address the question of the degree of HIV-2's virulence in West African people in several ways. Clavel and Montagnier and their colleagues had isolated HIV-2 from West African AIDS patients who had been referred to Europe for treatment, suggesting that at least some strains of HIV-2 could cause AIDS. Yet the isolation from AIDS patients was not enough evidence to establish HIV-2 as a cause of AIDS. To determine whether HIV-2 strains in general were as virulent as strains of HIV-1, the epidemiology of HIV-2 had to be assessed in a number of African populations; the extent to which AIDS was associated with HIV-2 infection could help to establish the virulence of the virus.

We undertook extensive sero-epidemiological studies in 14 African countries in order to determine the rates of HIV-2 and HIV-1 infection, examining more than 10,000 people in three groups: female prostitutes, patients with severe infectious diseases (such as systemic tuberculosis) that might signal an AIDS-like immune deficiency, and healthy control adults. In the controls, rates of HIV-2 infection ranged from less than 1 percent to more than 15 percent depending on location. The rates were from five to 10 times higher in female prostitutes, indicating that HIV-2, like HIV-1, is transmitted sexually. To our surprise, individuals with tuberculosis or other severe infectious diseases did not have significantly higher HIV-2 rates than the controls. We found only very low rates of HIV-1 in the West African countries where HIV-2 was most prevalent. On the other hand, HIV-2 was virtually absent in the central-African countries we studied.

Prostitutes who tested positive for HIV-2 in 1985 were subsequently followed and examined carefully for abnormal clinical signs and symptoms. In contrast to prostitutes in other parts of Africa who are positive for HIV-1, they showed negligible rates of generalized lymphadenopathy (enlargement of the lymph nodes); none have shown signs or symptoms of AIDS-related complex or AIDS itself. All in all, the data suggested that West Africans infected with HIV-2 were at substantially lower risk for the development of AIDS than individuals infected with HIV-1.

Whether the difference is due to the widespread distribution of less virulent strains of HIV-2 in West Africans remains to be determined. One

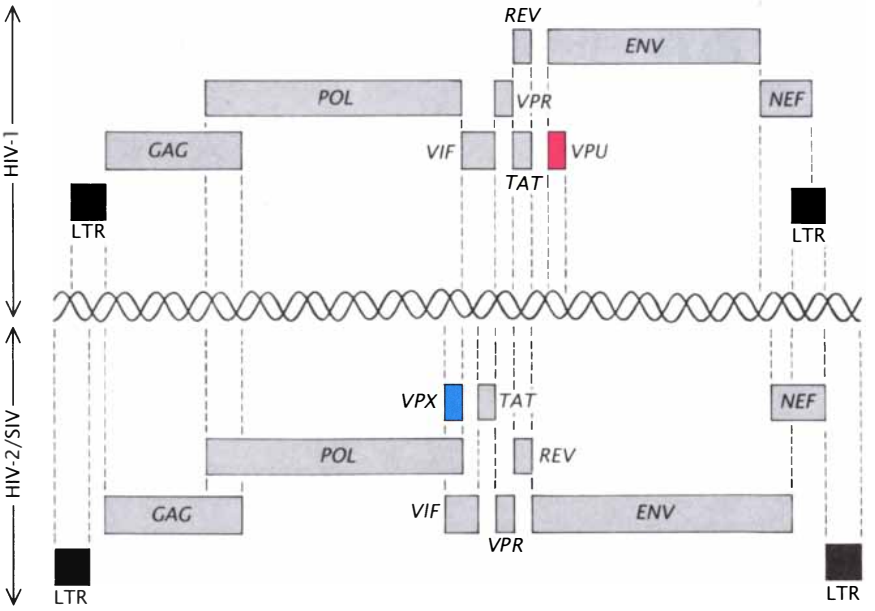


DISTRIBUTION OF HIV-2 in Africa was established by serological testing of female prostitutes, who constitute a high-risk group. The seroprevalence rates (the fraction of individuals who tested positive for HIV-2) are given for 15 cities in 14 countries where the test was administered. The virus appears to be limited to West Africa.

should also consider the possibility that HIV-2 infection of human beings is simply too new for AIDS to have developed after a long period of latent infection. Several observations seem to argue against that possibility. One is the fact that older prostitutes have higher antibody rates than younger ones. This could simply reflect an increase in the total number of exposures to the virus with increasing age. The age effect also suggests, however, that the women who had been exposed for a long time were not being eliminated from the population pool by illness (as they would be by HIV-1 infection), and therefore that HIV-2 has been present in West African populations for a longer time but has not been very efficient at causing disease.

We also analyzed blood from patients who were in Dakar hospitals with AIDS-like illnesses, looking for evidence of infection with HIV-2 or HIV-1. Most patients had type-specific antibodies to HIV-1 rather than to HIV-2, in spite of the much lower background rates of HIV-1 infection in Dakar's population—a finding compatible with HIV-1's being more pathogenic than HIV-2. Although about 20 percent of the AIDS patients did appear to have been infected with HIV-2 rather than HIV-1, the disease seen in HIV-1-positive patients was severer and fitted a more stringent definition of AIDS. For the known human lymphotropic retroviruses, then, there appears to be a spectrum of pathogenicity. HIV-1 causes lethal disease in most infected people, whereas HTLV causes leukemia in only a few. The disease-inducing potential of HIV-2 may fall between the two.

A real difference in pathogenicity between HIV-1 and HIV-2 could be significant, and it would be important to determine its molecular basis. The two viruses infect the same populations of cells, binding to the same CD4 receptor, but there are some differences in their genetic material and therefore in their proteins. One of the most obvious is the presence in HIV-1 of the *vpu* gene, which is absent in HIV-2 (and in SIV, for that matter). Perhaps the product of this gene, a small 16-kilodalton peptide, enhances pathogenicity. Similarly, HIV-2 and SIV contain the *vpx* gene; HIV-1 does not. If this gene's 12-kilodalton product somehow slows the proliferation or spread of the virus or reduces its ability to kill cells, that too could help to explain why HIV-2 and SIV appear to be less regularly pathogenic than HIV-1.



GENETIC ORGANIZATION of HIV-2 and SIV is compared with that of HIV-1 (*top*). The genes are arranged along the strand of proviral DNA as is shown. The *gag* gene encodes the core proteins, *env* the envelope proteins and *pol* the enzymes needed for replication. Sequences constituting some genes overlap or are noncontiguous. The two genes that are not common to both genomes are shown in color. Knowledge of their function might help to show why HIV-1 causes lethal disease but HIV-2 may not.

Prostitutes from West Africa who have been infected by HIV-2 are now beginning to be exposed to HIV-1, particularly in countries such as Ivory Coast and Burkina Faso, to which HIV-1 seems to be moving from central Africa. We and others will be watching to see whether or not people previously infected by HIV-2 show decreased rates of infection with HIV-1. (Such resistance might be brought about by a number of mechanisms, including the elicitation by HIV-2 of a protective immune response to both viruses.) If individuals previously infected with HIV-2 nonetheless become infected with HIV-1, will HIV-1 then cause disease as relentlessly as it does in previously uninfected people?

Answers to these questions are likely to yield information that will help in the design of vaccines to prevent infection with HIV's. Although progress toward a vaccine against HIV-1 may have seemed to be disappointing, it appears likely that some species of monkeys, and perhaps some people, have already evolved protective mechanisms that keep certain HIV's and SIV's from causing lethal disease. Obviously one cannot simply wait for natural selection to respond (as in the case of the Australian rabbits) with the advent of more efficient immune mechanisms in people or of less virulent viruses. The challenge, then, is to understand the mechanisms that may have been involved in successful evolutionary immunoselection. Thus the origin and history of the AIDS viruses themselves may provide the very information that is critical to the prevention and control of AIDS.

FURTHER READING

SEROLOGIC IDENTIFICATION AND CHARACTERIZATION OF A MACAQUE T-LYMPHOTROPIC RETROVIRUS CLOSELY RELATED TO HUMAN HTLV-III. P. J. Kanki, M. F. McLane, N. W. King, Jr., N. L. Letvin, R. D. Hunt, P. Sehgal, M. D. Daniel, R. C. Desrosiers and M. Essex in *Science,* Vol. 228, No. 4707, pages 1199–1201; June 7, 1985.

ISOLATION OF T-LYMPHOTROPIC RETROVIRUS RELATED TO HTLV-III/LAV FROM WILD-CAUGHT AFRICAN GREEN MONKEYS. P. J. Kanki, J. Alroy and M. Essex in *Science,* Vol. 230, No. 4728, pages 951–954; November 22, 1985.

SEROLOGIC EVIDENCE FOR VIRUS RELATED TO SIMIAN T-LYMPHOTROPIC RETROVIRUS III IN RESIDENTS OF WEST AFRICA. F. Barin, S. M'Boup, F. Denis, P. Kanki, J. S. Allan, T. H. Lee and M. Essex in *The Lancet,* Vol. 2 for 1985, pages 1387–1389; December 21/28, 1985.

HUMAN T-LYMPHOTROPIC VIRUS TYPE 4 AND THE HUMAN IMMUNODEFICIENCY VIRUS IN WEST AFRICA. Phyllis J. Kanki et al. in *Science,* Vol. 236, No. 4803, pages 827–831; May 15, 1987.

CLINICAL, HEMATOLOGIC, AND IMMUNOLOGIC CROSS-SECTIONAL EVALUATION OF INDIVIDUALS EXPOSED TO HUMAN IMMUNODEFICIENCY VIRUS TYPE-2 (HIV-2). Richard G. Marlink et al. in *AIDS Research and Human Retroviruses,* Vol. 4, No. 2, pages 137–148; April, 1988.

The Epidemiology of AIDS in the U.S.

In 1981 Federal officials noted that a rarely prescribed drug was being dispensed more often. It was the first sign of the AIDS epidemic. By 1992 there will probably be 365,000 cases in the U.S.

by William L. Heyward and James W. Curran

Today AIDS has become a major cause of morbidity and mortality in the U.S. Indeed, it has become the leading cause of death in the country among people with hemophilia and users of illegal intravenous (IV) drugs. Moreover, nationwide morbidity and mortality rates will increase in the next few years as some of the one to 1.5 million Americans who are already infected with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) develop AIDS. Most of those affected in the near future will be either homosexual men or IV drug abusers, and a significant proportion of them will be blacks and Hispanics. Yet, given the fact that the virus is transmitted through sexual contact, through the traces of blood in needles and other drug paraphernalia and from mother to newborn infant, one can envision many possible chains of infection, which leave no segment of the U.S. population completely unaffected by the threat of AIDS.

The discovery of the epidemic, the enumeration of the varied manifestations of HIV infection and the analysis of the circumstances that made it possible for such an infection to spread have been missions assigned to epidemiology: the study of the occurrence and distribution of disease as well as its control in a given population. Epidemiologists monitor mortality and morbidity rates associated with HIV infection and AIDS; they also make predictions of likely changes in HIV infection rates in the course of time.

Most important, by carrying out studies to define the ways HIV is transmitted from person to person, epidemiologists can identify the population groups that are at greatest risk of acquiring AIDS and thereby develop strategies for the prevention and control of the disease—strategies that are independent of the development of an effective vaccine or therapy. Indeed, determining the risk factors for AIDS enabled the U.S. Public Health Service and other groups to issue recommendations for the prevention of AIDS as early as 1983, a full year before HIV was firmly identified and two years before laboratory tests to detect the presence of the virus became widely available.

To carry out all these tasks epidemiologists depend on surveillance: the gathering of high-quality, consistent and interpretable data on a disease or an infection. Surveillance data are routinely compiled from reports filed with state and local health departments that are then forwarded to the U.S. Centers for Disease Control (CDC).

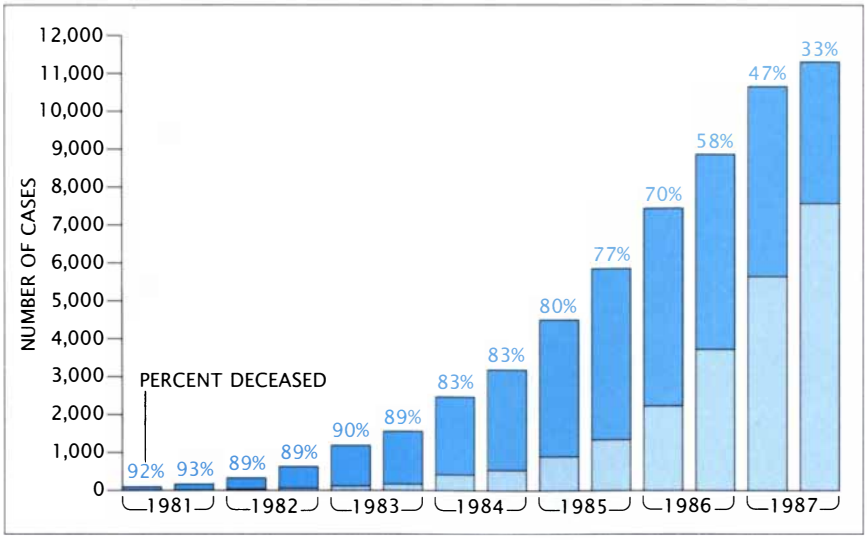
It was just such a report, in June of 1981, that first alerted the CDC to AIDS. The report described how in the past eight months five cases of an extremely rare type of pneumonia caused by the protozoan *Pneumocystis carinii* had been diagnosed in the Los Angeles area. (Protozoans are a type of primitive microorganism.) This pneumonia is characteristically an opportunistic infection, occurring in people whose immune system has been profoundly impaired by cancer or by powerful immunosuppressive drugs. The disease was so uncommon that the drug given to treat it, pentamidine isethionate, was considered investigational (experimental) and could be dispensed solely by the CDC. Records at the CDC showed that between November, 1967, and December, 1979, there had been only two requests for pentamidine isethionate to treat adults who had contracted *P. carinii* pneumonia without an underlying disease. Yet in these five new cases the pneumonia had struck young homosexual men whose immune system had no apparent reason for malfunctioning.

At about the same time the CDC received reports of an increase in the incidence of a type of cancer known as Kaposi's sarcoma. The cancer had been seen only rarely in the U.S. before—predominantly in elderly men and patients receiving immunosuppressive therapy. Yet in a 30-month span 26 cases of Kaposi's sarcoma had been diagnosed among young homosexual men in New York and California. Several of these patients had also experienced *P. carinii* pneumonia and other severe opportunistic infections.

Not long afterward clinicians and epidemiologists noted an increased occurrence among homosexual men of two unexplained conditions: chronic lymphadenopathy (a condition characterized by enlarged lymph nodes) and a relatively rare malignancy called diffuse, undifferentiated non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Once again, the only

WILLIAM L. HEYWARD and JAMES W. CURRAN are colleagues in the AIDS Program at the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) in Atlanta. Heyward is chief of international activities for the program. He was working in a CDC laboratory in Alaska in 1985 when the first AIDS case was diagnosed in that state. Since then his involvement in AIDS research has increased steadily; he moved to Atlanta in 1987. Curran is director of the AIDS Program. He was a member of the CDC task force that was organized after the first AIDS cases were diagnosed in 1981 to help make investigators aware of the disease and to stimulate the research that led to the discovery of its cause. The authors would like to note that the photographs accompanying this article were not provided by the CDC.

INTRAVENOUS (IV) DRUG ABUSERS share hypodermic needles and other paraphernalia that can be contaminated with blood infected with HIV. If they inject themselves with traces of the blood, they may become infected. IV drug abuse is directly or indirectly responsible for most of the HIV infections in the U.S. among heterosexual men and women as well as among infants.



NUMBER OF REPORTED CASES of AIDS in the U.S. has increased each year since the disease was first recognized in 1981. The two bars for each year represent the number of cases diagnosed respectively in the first and second half of the year. The dark part of each bar corresponds to the fatality percentage among the cases. Most of the patients who were diagnosed before 1986 as having AIDS have already died.

common underlying factor among the new findings and the previously reported cases of opportunistic infection and Kaposi's sarcoma was a severely impaired immune system. This collection of clinical conditions was recognized as an entirely new syndrome that became known in 1982 as acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, or AIDS.

Because the patients exhibited various common characteristics (such as age, race, city of residence and sexual orientation), it was suspected that the wide range of clinical conditions had the same underlying cause. Moreover, laboratory tests indicated that many patients with mild lymphadenopathy who did not exhibit any other signs of disease nonetheless had an abnormal immune status, suggesting there was an asymptomatic period in the patients between initial infection and the eventual development of AIDS. During this so-called latency period a person might not be ill and yet might be capable of transmitting the disease. This in turn meant that the pool of people who might be capable of transmitting the AIDS agent was significantly larger than the number of cases of AIDS reported to the CDC. AIDS was only the tip of an epidemic iceberg.

The method commonly employed by epidemiologists to determine risk factors for a particular disease is the case-control study. In this type of study people with the disease of interest (cases) are systematically compared with a similar group of people free of the disease (controls). The first national AIDS case-control study, done in 1981 among homosexual men, indicated the variable that most clearly distinguished patients with the disease from homosexual controls was the number and frequency of sexual contacts.

Another study, done in June of 1982, provided further evidence that there was an AIDS agent and that it was transmitted through sexual relations among homosexually active men. In that study data were obtained on the sexual partners of 13 of the first 19 cases of AIDS among homosexual men in the Los Angeles area. Within five years before the onset of their symptoms, nine of them had sexual contact with people who later developed Kaposi's sarcoma or *P. carinii* pneumonia. The nine were also linked to another interconnected series of 40 AIDS cases in 10 different cities by one individual who developed lymphadenopathy and was later diagnosed with Kaposi's sarcoma. Overall, investigation of these 40 cases indicated that 20 percent of the initial AIDS cases in the U.S. were linked through sexual contact—a statistical clustering that was extremely unlikely to have occurred by chance. Still, many doubted that AIDS could be caused by a transmissible agent.

Then came the first significant evidence that other modes of transmission were possible. In 1982 AIDS cases were described among people who had been injected with blood or blood products but had no other expected risk factors. Such cases were confirmed first among people with hemophilia and then among blood-transfusion recipients as well as people who had shared hypodermic needles to inject themselves with illicit drugs.

In July, 1982, three patients with hemophilia from three different states were confirmed as having *P. carinii* pneumonia. In December of the same year an unexplained immunodeficiency with fatal *P. carinii* pneumonia was reported in a 20-month-old baby who at birth had received a blood-platelet transfusion from a man who subsequently had died of AIDS. These reports convincingly supported the hypothesis that the disease was caused by an infectious agent in the blood and perhaps in other body fluids. The reports also bolstered the evidence that the period between HIV infection and AIDS could be quite long.

During the following months several additional reports were received describing cases of AIDS in people who had received blood transfusions an average of two years before the onset of the symptoms. In each case at least one individual who had donated the blood for the transfusions was identified as being in a group at high risk for AIDS (such as homosexual men or IV drug abusers). These reports not only reconfirmed the transmissibility of the putative AIDS agent through blood but also emphasized the urgent need for preventing high-risk people from donating blood and for the development of laboratory tests that could detect the AIDS agent in donated blood.

In January, 1983, two well-documented AIDS cases among heterosexual partners of male IV drug abusers were reported, indicating that the AIDS agent could be clearly transmitted to an infected man's heterosexual partners as well as his homosexual ones. Later that year AIDS cases were first recognized in people from central Africa and Haiti who had no history of homosexuality or IV drug abuse. It became increasingly evident that AIDS was a sexually transmitted disease and that the most important risk factor was the relative number of different sex partners—not necessarily sexual preference. It was also evident that the extent of homosexual transmission of AIDS in relation to its heterosexual transmission varied from country to country.

Because the disease appeared to be transmitted through the exchange of blood or by sexual contact, most investigators were con-

vinced by late 1982 that the cause of AIDS was an infectious agent (most likely a virus) and not the result of exposure to toxic substances or other environmental or genetic factors. The infection hypothesis was finally confirmed when HIV was isolated by Luc Montagnier and his colleagues at the Pasteur Institute in Paris and by Robert C. Gallo and his colleagues at the National Cancer Institute.

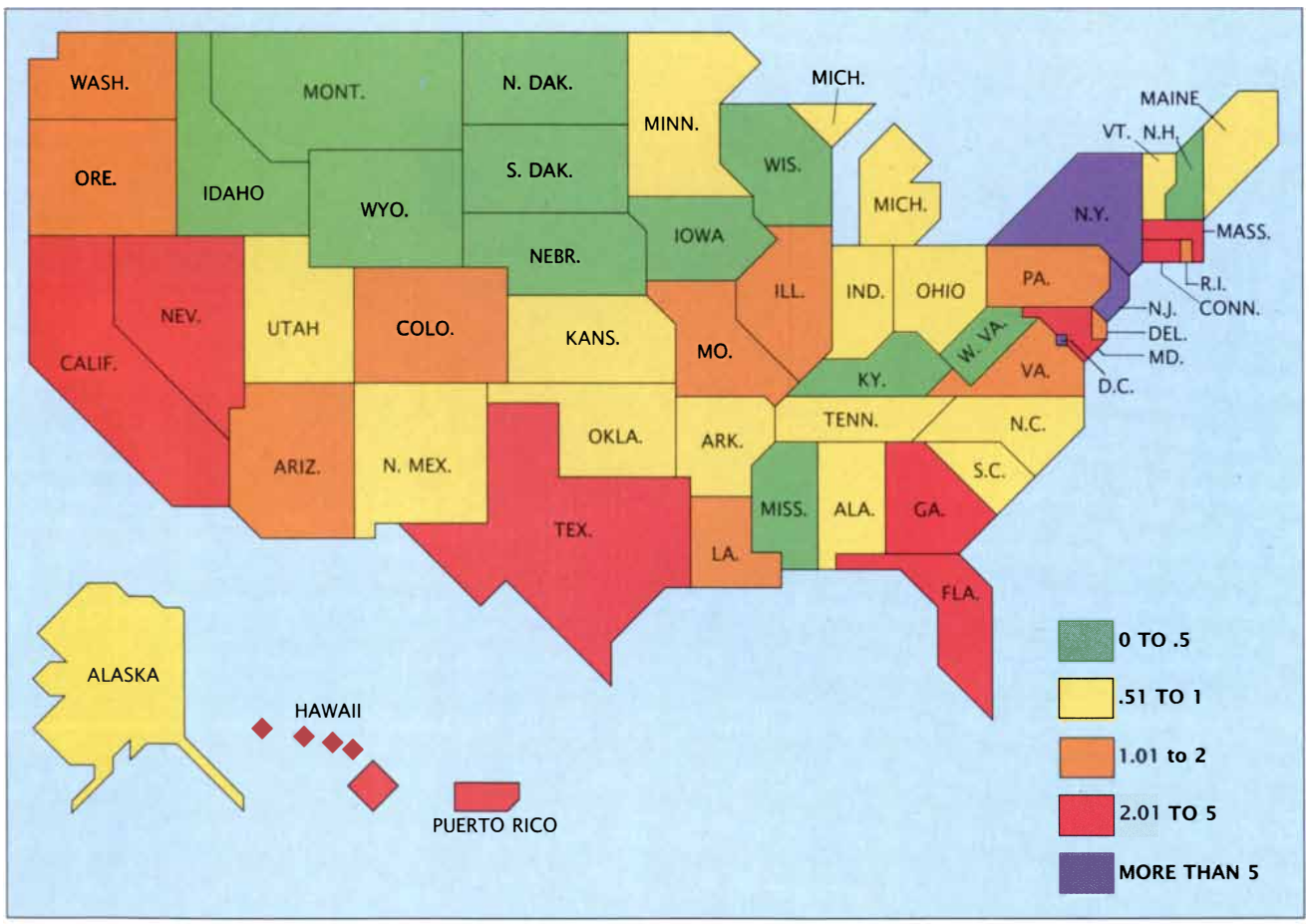
Soon after the discovery of the AIDS agent a laboratory test was developed to detect antibodies to HIV in the blood. A positive result in a test of a person's blood sample was a reliable sign that the person was infected with the virus. Such a serological test made it possible to detect HIV infection in people who showed no clinical symptoms, and to confirm clinical diagnoses of AIDS and other HIV-related conditions. It also made it possible to measure directly the prevalence of HIV infection (the number of infected people in a given population at a given time) and its incidence (the number of new infections occurring within a defined period in a specific population). Most important, perhaps, was the fact that the national supply of donated blood could now be screened, so that additional cases of AIDS due to blood transfusions and contaminated blood products could be avoided.

Serological studies among high-risk groups soon confirmed what had originally been suspected: the AIDS cases recorded so far constituted just a fraction of the total number of people infected with HIV. These studies made possible a clearer definition of the disease's modes of transmission, the factors affecting the risk of infection and the specific population groups that should be targeted for prevention and control measures. The serological test also clarified the clinical spectrum of the disease and enabled the CDC to formulate a more precise "case definition" of AIDS that made the diagnosis and reporting of AIDS cases more consistent nationwide.

AIDS cases (along with cases of other diseases or health conditions) are reported to state or local health agencies. Currently all 50 states, the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico require that all such reports be passed along, without identifying the individual patients, to the CDC. The primary sources of surveillance data on AIDS therefore include hospitals, clinics, physicians and medical-record systems (which handle such matters as death certificates, tumor registries, communicable-disease reports and hospital-discharge summaries).

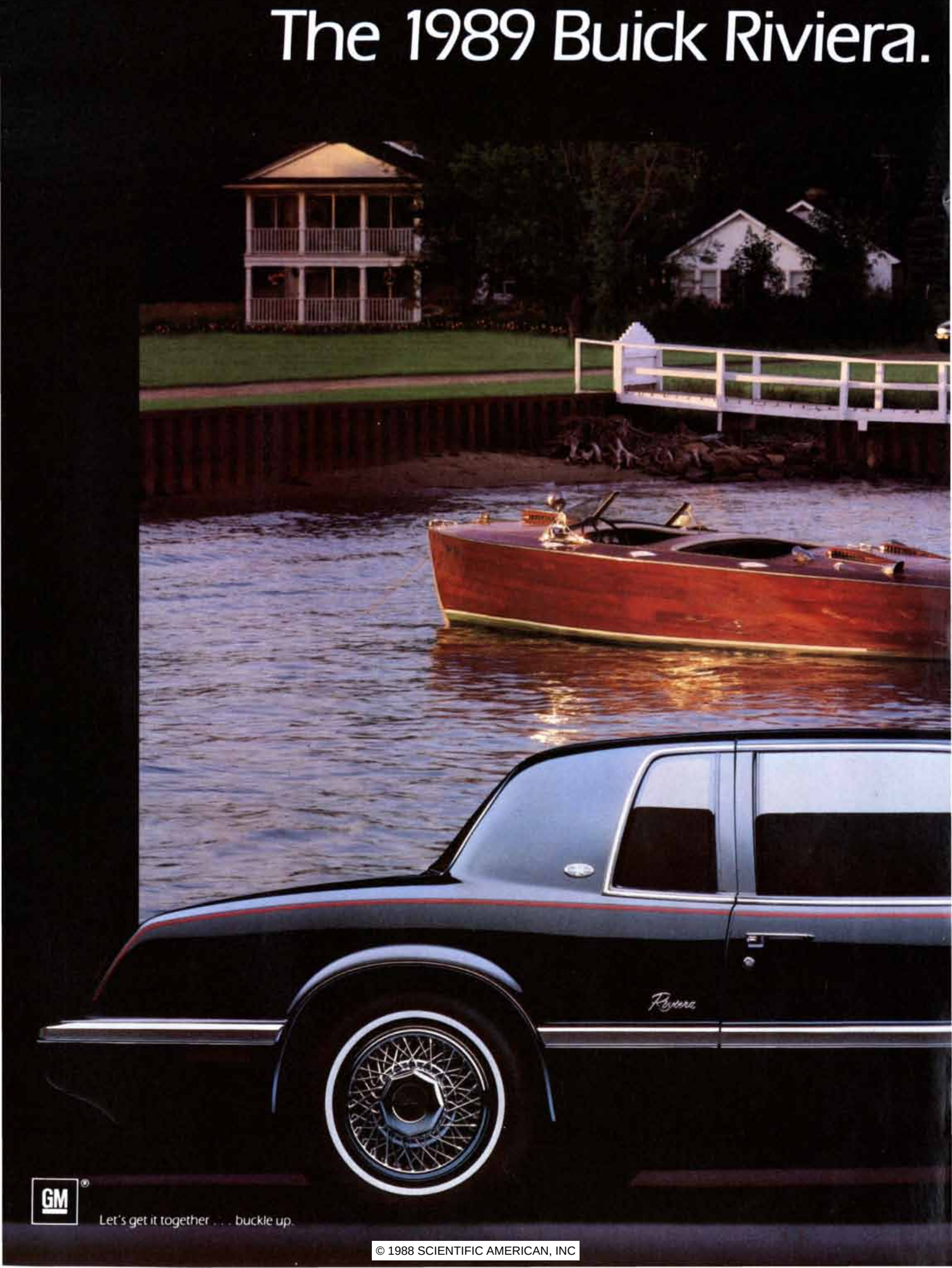
The main concern about any surveillance system is the completeness of the reporting. One way to measure this is to compare reports from various surveillance sources. Recent studies in five major cities showed that at least 90 percent of the diagnoses meeting the AIDS case definition were in fact reported. This rate of reporting is extraordinarily high compared with that for most other diseases, for which only between 10 and 25 percent of the cases are typically reported.

As of July 4 of this year, a total of 66,464 adults and children have been reported as AIDS cases to the CDC. Of these, 37,535—more than half—have died, including more than 80 percent of the patients diagnosed before 1985. Since 1981, when reporting of AIDS cases began, 63 percent



GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION of AIDS shows that the Northeast has been most affected. The map displays the cumulative reported cases of AIDS per 10,000 population for each state, the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico as of March 28, 1988.

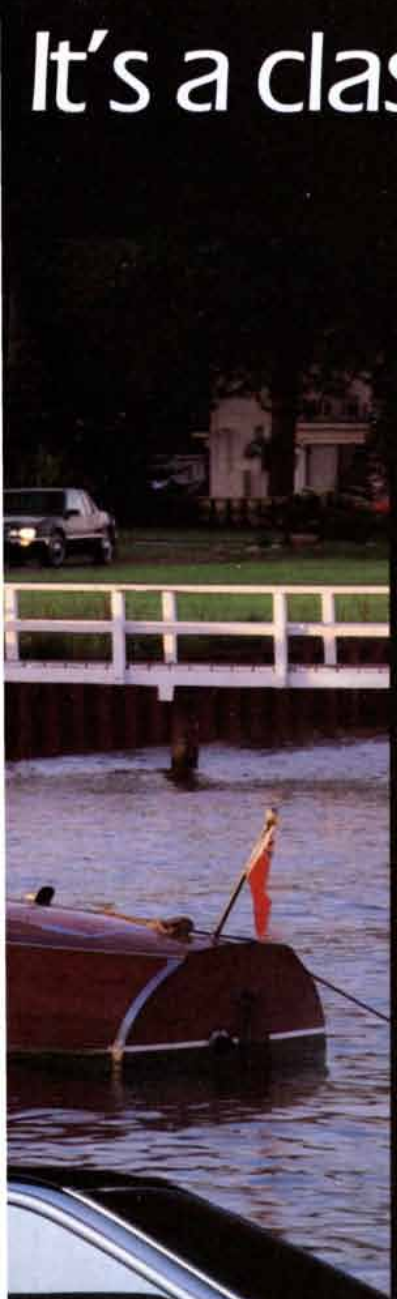
The 1989 Buick Riviera.



GM

Let's get it together . . . buckle up.

It's a classic all over again.



Riviera was an instant success when it was first introduced 25 years ago—and soon became a classic. And though it has been redesigned and re-engineered through the years, it has always maintained a distinctive look.

Now, for 1989, there is a new Riviera. It is noticeably longer, and its styling is totally new. Yet it recalls a grand tradition.

And, since it is the Riviera, it is very well equipped indeed: ■ 165-horsepower 3800 V-6 engine with sequential-port fuel injection ■ 4-speed automatic transmission with overdrive ■ 4-wheel independent DynaRide suspension ■ 4-wheel power disc brakes ■ Electronic Touch Climate Control air conditioning ■ Electronic Control Center ■ 6-way power driver's seat ■ P205/70R steel-belted radial tires on 15" wheels, with wire wheelcovers ■ And more.

The new Riviera is a classic all over again. See your Buick dealer for a test drive.

The Great American Road belongs to

BUICK

USA Official Car of the 1988 U.S. Olympic Team

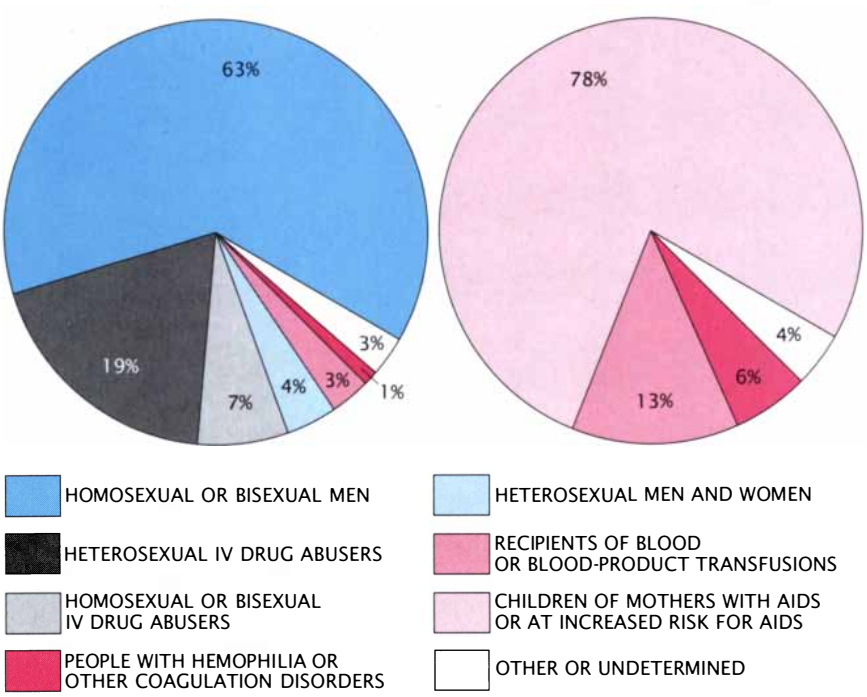
of the victims of the disease in the U.S. have been homosexual or bisexual men without a history of IV drug abuse, 7 percent were homosexual or bisexual men with a history of IV drug abuse and 19 percent were heterosexual men and women who were IV drug abusers. In addition almost 3 percent of all the recorded AIDS cases were associated with transfusions of contaminated blood, nearly all of which had been received before 1985 (when serological screening of blood donors was instituted); roughly 1 percent of the adults who contracted AIDS were hemophiliacs. The means by which the HIV infection was acquired was undetermined in only 3 percent of adults with AIDS, generally because of incomplete information on the frequency of their sexual contacts, among other factors .

Of the 2,702 AIDS cases attributed to heterosexual transmission (representing 4 percent of the total), 1,643 (367 men and 1,276 women) had a history of sexual contact with a person documented as having been infected with HIV or with a person in another risk category. Another 1,059 were born in countries where heterosexual contact is the major mode of transmission. The 1 : 3.5 ratio of male to female cases of heterosexually transmitted AIDS in the U.S. is probably due to a larger pool of men infected by other means, such as IV drug abuse and homosexual contact. It is also possible that male-to-female transmission is more efficient than female-to-male transmission.

The members of the fastest growing group of reported AIDS patients are not adults; they are children. In the past 12 months 502 cases of AIDS have been reported in children under 13 years old—a 114 percent increase over the previous 12-month period. A total of 1,054 such pediatric cases have now been recorded. In 78 percent of them the HIV infection was acquired perinatally (before, during or soon after birth). Most of these pediatric cases can be traced to IV drug use by the child's mother or her sexual partner. In 19 percent of all pediatric cases the source of HIV infection was either a blood transfusion or treatment for hemophilia.

In the U.S. 59 percent of the reported AIDS cases among adults and 23 percent of the cases among children have been white; blacks have accounted for 26 percent of adult cases and 53 percent of pediatric cases, and Hispanics for 14 percent of adult and 23 percent of pediatric cases. Such figures are in striking contrast to the respective percentages of blacks (11.6 percent) and Hispanics (6.5 percent) in the general U.S. population.

The disproportionate percentage of AIDS cases among blacks and Hispanics largely reflects higher reported rates of AIDS in black and Hispanic IV drug abusers, their sex partners and their infants. Because of the high concentration of IV drug abuse in the Northeast, the risk of contracting AIDS is between two and 10 times higher for blacks and Hispanics living in that region than it is elsewhere in the country. Rates for transfusion-associated AIDS do not differ significantly when they are divided by race or ethnicity for adult cases, although the rates are significantly higher for black infants—perhaps owing to a greater need for transfusions to manage low birth weight in black newborns.



POPULATION GROUPS accounting for the adult (*left*) and pediatric (*right*) cases of AIDS as of July 4, 1988, are indicated by these pie charts. As can be seen, homosexual or bisexual men and IV drug abusers together account for 89 percent of all adult cases. More than three-fourths of the children with AIDS acquired the disease from a mother who either had AIDS or was a member of the group at increased risk for AIDS.

The human immunodeficiency virus is transmitted primarily through sexual contact, exposure to blood and blood products and from mother to child during the perinatal period. In the U.S. most sexual transmission of HIV has been among homosexual men. The risk of infection in these men increases with the number of sexual partners and the frequency with which they are the receptive partner in anal intercourse. The insertive partner in anal intercourse, however, has also been known to become infected with HIV, and one report has described infection in the receptive partner in orogenital intercourse. The relative efficiency of transmission for different types of sexual practices is difficult to determine precisely, because most homosexual men in studies have engaged in multiple practices. As in the case of other sexually transmitted diseases, the frequency of female-to-female transmission is very low, although at least one such case (involving the tearing of skin and mucous membranes) has been reported.

Syphilis and genital herpes, as well as other causes of genital or anal ulcers, have been associated with HIV infection in homosexual men in the U.S. and in heterosexuals in central Africa. It is supposed that the damage done to the genital skin and mucous membranes by these infections may facilitate HIV acquisition or transmission. If sexually transmitted genital-ulcer diseases increase the transmission rate of HIV, then populations with high rates of venereal disease are likely to be at increased risk for HIV infection. Prevention and prompt treatment of sexually transmitted infections could potentially slow the spread of HIV among sexually active men and women.

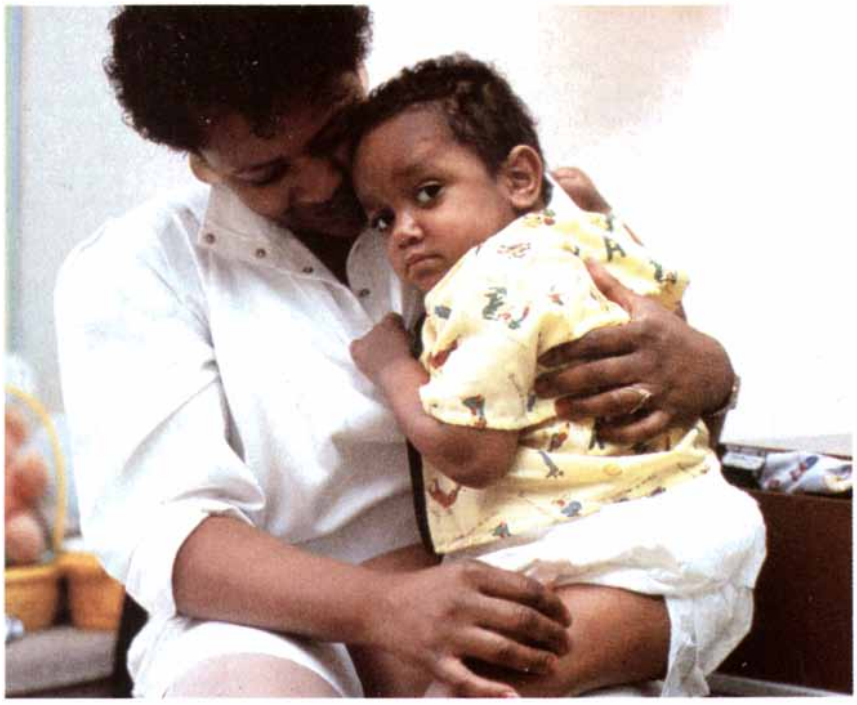
Although there have been many doc-

umented cases of male-to-female as well as female-to-male sexual transmission of HIV, the study populations have been too small to allow a comparison of the relative efficiencies of transmission in the two directions. Most heterosexual transmission of HIV occurs during vaginal intercourse, but two small studies have suggested that anal intercourse increases the risk of infection in women. The cumulative rate of infection has been reported to be significantly higher among the female partners of infected male IV drug abusers and men from Haiti or countries in central Africa than it is among female partners of infected men in other risk groups (including bisexual men, hemophiliacs and transfusion recipients). Among heterosexual couples in which one partner (the "index" case) is infected with HIV, from 10 to 70 percent of the other partners have become infected through sexual intercourse.

This variability in infection rate is not fully explained by the frequency of sexual contact; it may have something to do with how long the index case has been infected. Recently it has been shown that people with AIDS or symptomatic HIV infection are more likely to transmit HIV infection than those who are asymptomatic or at an earlier stage of infection. Nevertheless, partners in some such couples have managed to remain uninfected, in spite of the fact that the couples had long-standing sexual relations and took no precautions against infection.

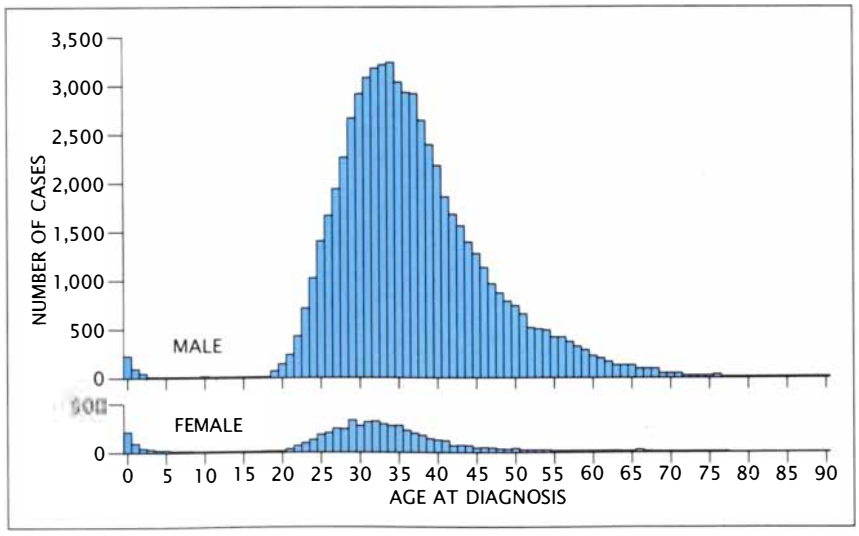
These findings suggest that, in addition to behavioral factors, biological factors often contribute to HIV transmission. It also appears that some infected individuals may be more efficient transmitters of HIV than others and that a person's infectiousness may vary with time.

Transfusion of a single unit of HIV-contaminated blood is very likely to result in infection; between 89 and 100 percent of recipients of contaminated blood are reported to become infected. Fortunately transfusion of HIV-infected blood in the U.S. is now rare, since high-risk people are discouraged from donating blood and all donated blood is screened for HIV antibodies. Because the sharing of needles and other drug-related paraphernalia also provides a way for contaminated blood to be injected into the body (in amounts substantially smaller than those involved in transfusions), that activity can result in HIV transmission as well. Indeed, in the U.S. IV drug abuse is now the major source of HIV transmission in heterosexual men and women and, consequently, of perinatal transmission as well.



FIVE-YEAR-OLD AIDS PATIENT is one of the increasing number of children who have become infected with HIV perinatally: before, during or soon after birth. Reports of such pediatric cases doubled in number in a recent 12-month period.

The possibility that one can become infected with HIV if contaminated blood penetrates the skin or mucous membranes also represents a small but definite occupational risk for health-care workers. In a national collaborative study done by the CDC, four of 870 health-care workers who had accidentally punctured their skin with needles contaminated with the blood of HIV-infected people developed HIV infection, but none of the 104 workers whose mucous membranes or skin had been exposed to blood became infected. In another study of health-care workers at the National Institutes of Health, no HIV infections occurred among 103 workers with needle-stick



AGE DISTRIBUTIONS for male and female AIDS patients in the U.S. indicate that most patients are males between the ages of 25 and 45. The distinct peaks at the left of the distributions represent the small but increasing number of pediatric AIDS cases.

injuries, nor were there any HIV infections among 691 workers who had a total of more than 2,000 reported skin and mucous-membrane exposures to blood or body fluids of AIDS patients. These studies are consistent with other data indicating that the occupational risk of acquiring HIV infection in health-care settings is low and is most often associated with percutaneous inoculation of blood from an infected patient.

HIV is also transmitted from an infected mother to her newborn child, but the extent of transmission that takes place respectively during pregnancy, at birth or soon afterward is as yet unknown. Detection of HIV in fetal tissues supports the hypothesis that infection occurs in utero, and case reports of women who became infected with HIV immediately after giving birth, and subsequently infected their infants, suggest that the virus may be transmitted through breast-feeding.

Studies of such perinatal transmission are greatly complicated by the lack of a reliable diagnostic test to determine HIV infection in newborns. As is the case with other infections, infants born to HIV-infected mothers have maternally derived HIV antibodies circulating in their blood—regardless of whether or not they have been infected. The maternal HIV antibodies may persist for as long as 12 months and cannot be distinguished from antibodies that may be present in an infant infected with HIV. Other tests are under development for identifying HIV infection in these newborns. Currently all infants born to infected mothers must be followed closely for at least 12 months to see whether there is any clinical or laboratory evidence of HIV infection or AIDS.

There has been considerable concern that in rare circumstances other types of transmission might occur—particularly through casual contact with HIV-infected people or by way of insect vectors. Although HIV has been recovered from the saliva of infected individuals, the virus concentration is much lower in saliva than it is in blood. In a CDC study not one of 48 health-care workers became infected after skin or mucous-membrane exposure to the saliva of HIV-infected people.

To evaluate the risk of HIV transmission through other casual contacts, several prospective studies (which are carried out over several years) have been done of the families of infected adults and children. In spite of tens of thousands of days of household contact with infected individuals, not one of more than 400 family members has been infected with HIV—except for sexual partners of the infected person and children born to infected mothers. In these studies the documented risk of household transmission was zero, and therefore the actual risk must be extremely low, even in crowded households. The risk of transmission in other social settings, such as schools and offices, is presumably even lower than in household settings.

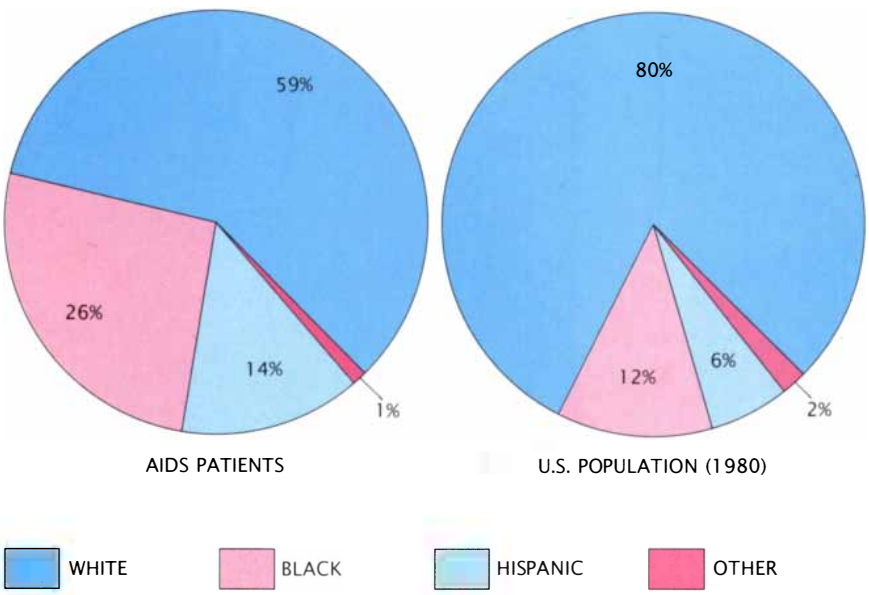
Epidemiological studies in the U.S. and other countries throughout the world show no patterns of HIV infection consistent with transmission by insect vectors. If HIV were transmitted by insect vectors, additional cases of infection would be seen in people who share environments with infected individuals. Such evidence is lacking, in spite of extensive surveillance efforts. In addition there is a relative absence of HIV infection in African preadolescent children—another fact that argues against insects as an important mode of transmission. Although HIV can survive for from several hours to several days in insects artificially fed blood with high concentrations of the virus, there is no evidence that HIV actually grows in insects. Such a biological event is important in most viral diseases transmitted by insects.

To be sure, the existence of other unrecognized modes of HIV transmission can never be entirely excluded, but if they do exist, they appear to be extremely rare.

Mathematical models have been developed to predict the future course of HIV infection and AIDS in the U.S. These models, which are useful for planning public-health programs, take into account the natural history of HIV infection and make certain assumptions about the size of the population groups at risk, diagnostic and reporting practices and the incidence of infection. The projections must also adjust for the prolonged latency period of AIDS. (It is now estimated that about half of the people infected with HIV will develop AIDS in 10 years.)

The Public Health Service estimates that currently a total of between one and 1.5 million people in the U.S. are infected with HIV. Yet since the epidemic of HIV infection in the U.S. is actually a composite of many partially overlapping epidemics, each with its own rate of spread, there must be estimates of incidence in each of the groups at risk for AIDS in order to predict accurately the future course of the overall epidemic. Unfortunately the accurate data necessary for detailed estimates of the incidence and prevalence of HIV infection in most specific groups and geographic areas are not currently available. Obtaining the data is therefore a priority of the Public Health Service as well as state and local public-health departments.

At least two methods have been utilized to forecast short-term future



RACIAL AND ETHNIC CLASSIFICATION of the adult AIDS cases shows a disproportionate fraction of them are among blacks and Hispanics. The figures reflect the higher reported rates of AIDS in black and Hispanic IV drug abusers and their sex partners.

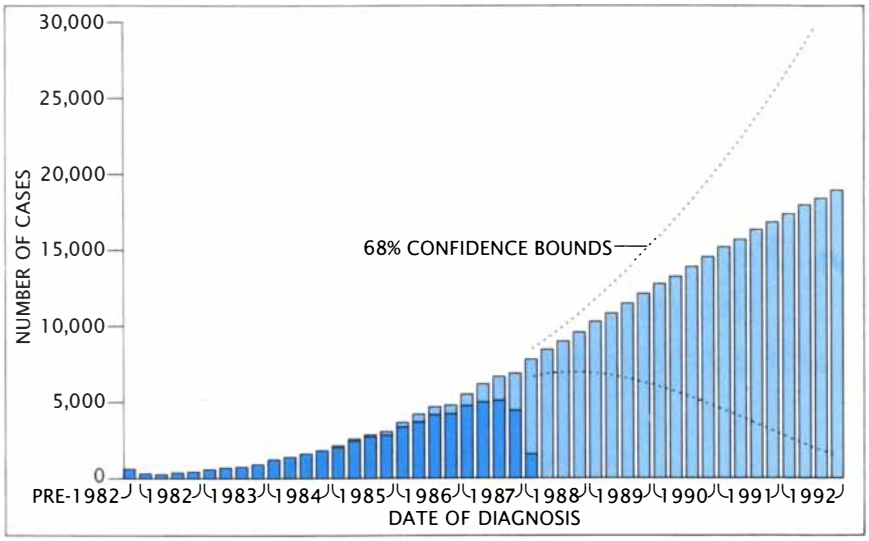
trends of AIDS in the U.S. One method, employed by W. Meade Morgan and John Karon of the CDC, involves fitting a curve to the cases of AIDS reported in the past and extrapolating it into the future. Another approach, called the back-calculation method, is used by Ronald Brookmeyer and his collaborators at the Johns Hopkins University School of Hygiene and Public Health. This method makes use of current AIDS incidence data and estimates of the latency-period distribution to predict the future trend of AIDS incidence.

For both models projections of current HIV prevalence and trends in AIDS incidence over the next few years are nearly the same. The extrapolation model predicts that about 39,000 cases of AIDS will have been diagnosed during 1988, and that the annual-incidence figure will increase to 60,000 in 1990. It also projects that the cumulative case count will reach 365,000 by the end of 1992. Although the uncertainty associated with these projections increases the further into the future one goes, in the two years that have passed since the initial projection was made more than 95 percent of the total projected cases have in fact been reported to the CDC.

Since the latency period may be as long as several years, the incidence of reported AIDS cases will continue to increase for many years after the incidence of HIV infection has stabilized or begun to decline. Although current data are not yet sufficient to determine whether the overall annual incidence of HIV infection has in fact stabilized, the data are encouraging for homosexual men, transfusion recipients and people with hemophilia.

Extensive studies of homosexual men followed over a period of several years consistently show lower rates of incidence for HIV infection between 1985 and 1987 compared with the early 1980's. This decrease can be at least partially attributed to marked changes in sexual behavior in homosexual men, as is demonstrated in several other studies. Perhaps as a result of these changes, there has also been a marked decline in reported syphilis and gonorrhea cases in the group.

In spite of these downward trends, the recent decrease in incidence rates for homosexual men is not uniform and certainly the risk of HIV infection for homosexual men remains high. In contrast, since the screening of blood and blood products for HIV antibodies was instituted, the incidence of HIV infection among people with hemophilia and among blood-transfusion recipients has dropped precipitously.



QUARTERLY INCIDENCE of AIDS in the U.S. is projected through 1992 by extrapolating pre-1987 trends. Actual cases reported to the Centers for Disease Control in Atlanta through March 31, 1988 (*color*), account for about 90 percent of the total projected.

More than 30 months of serological testing of applicants for military service has shown stable or declining HIV-infection rates among the applicants, both as a group and when they are analyzed by age, sex, race, ethnicity or geographic region. These results suggest that people likely to be infected are selectively avoiding enlisting, making the data difficult to interpret. Nevertheless, these data do not suggest an explosive rise in infection in the population from which military applicants are drawn.

Incidence rates are measured directly among groups in which the same people are tested more than once. Accurate determination of the incidence of HIV infection in the U.S. will remain a challenge, since people who have just become infected seldom seek medical care and it is hard to sample truly representative populations. As a consequence, trends in prevalence among groups that are available for HIV testing must be used to estimate overall trends of HIV infection.

The strategy for controlling HIV infection and AIDS in the U.S. involves educating and counseling people on how to avoid behavior that results in the transmission of HIV. Counseling people found to be infected with HIV involves not only advising them and their sexual partners on how to avoid HIV transmission but also providing them with medical care, social services and perhaps treatment for drug addiction. Indeed, the treatment and prevention of IV drug abuse, so that the sharing of HIV-contaminated needles and other drug-related equipment is reduced, will be a crucial step in preventing HIV transmission in the U.S.

Many gaps remain in our understanding of the dynamics of HIV infection in the U.S. At the state and local level the highest priorities should be to understand better the precise populations at risk for HIV infection and to apply this information in directing and monitoring specific prevention programs. These efforts in both investigative and applied epidemiology will have to be expanded rapidly and continued for the foreseeable future in order to limit the further spread of HIV in the U.S.

FURTHER READING

AIDS: FROM THE BEGINNING. Edited by Helene M. Cole and George D. Lundberg. American Medical Association, 1986.

AIDS (ACQUIRED IMMUNODEFICIENCY SYNDROME) AND OTHER MANIFESTATIONS OF HIV INFECTION. Gary P. Wormser, Rosalyn E. Stahl and Edward J. Bottone. Noyes Publications, 1987.

HUMAN IMMUNODEFICIENCY VIRUS INFECTION IN THE UNITED STATES: A REVIEW OF CURRENT KNOWLEDGE. Timothy J. Dondero and the HIV Data Analysis Team in *MMWR* (*Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*), Vol. 36, Supplement No. S-6; 1987.

REPORT OF THE PRESIDENTIAL COMMISSION ON THE HUMAN IMMUNODEFICIENCY VIRUS EPIDEMIC. U.S. Government Printing Office, 1988.

The International Epidemiology of AIDS

Reports to the World Health Organization suggest that at least five million people worldwide are infected by the AIDS virus and a million new cases of AIDS are likely within the next five years

by Jonathan M. Mann, James Chin, Peter Piot and Thomas Quinn

Ever since the AIDS pandemic was initially recognized in 1981 it has been met by denial and a gross underestimation of its potential magnitude. The pandemic is still in its early stages and its ultimate dimensions are difficult to gauge, but by now it is apparent that AIDS is an unprecedented threat to global health. From our current knowledge of the disease, we estimate that over 250,000 cases of AIDS have already occurred, that between five and 10 million people worldwide are infected with the AIDS virus and that within the next five years about one million new AIDS cases can be expected. In short, the global situation will get much worse before it can be brought under control.

This grim prognosis is based on numerous epidemiological studies that have clarified the current distribution patterns of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), which causes AIDS, and its various modes of transmission. Worldwide surveillance of AIDS, from which the global distribution pattern is determined, is coordinated by the Global Program on AIDS (GPA) at the World Health Organization (WHO) in Geneva. Reports to Geneva are received from the WHO's regional offices and individual countries' ministries of health. The accuracy and completeness of AIDS reporting vary in different areas of the world. In the U.S., validation studies by the Centers for Disease Control in Atlanta have indicated that from 80 to 90 percent of diagnosed cases are in fact reported. In most developed countries, it is thought that the majority of diagnosed cases are reported to national health authorities. On the other hand, it is thought that in most developing countries the majority of AIDS cases to date have not been reported to the WHO because of significant underrecognition, underdiagnosis and underreporting.

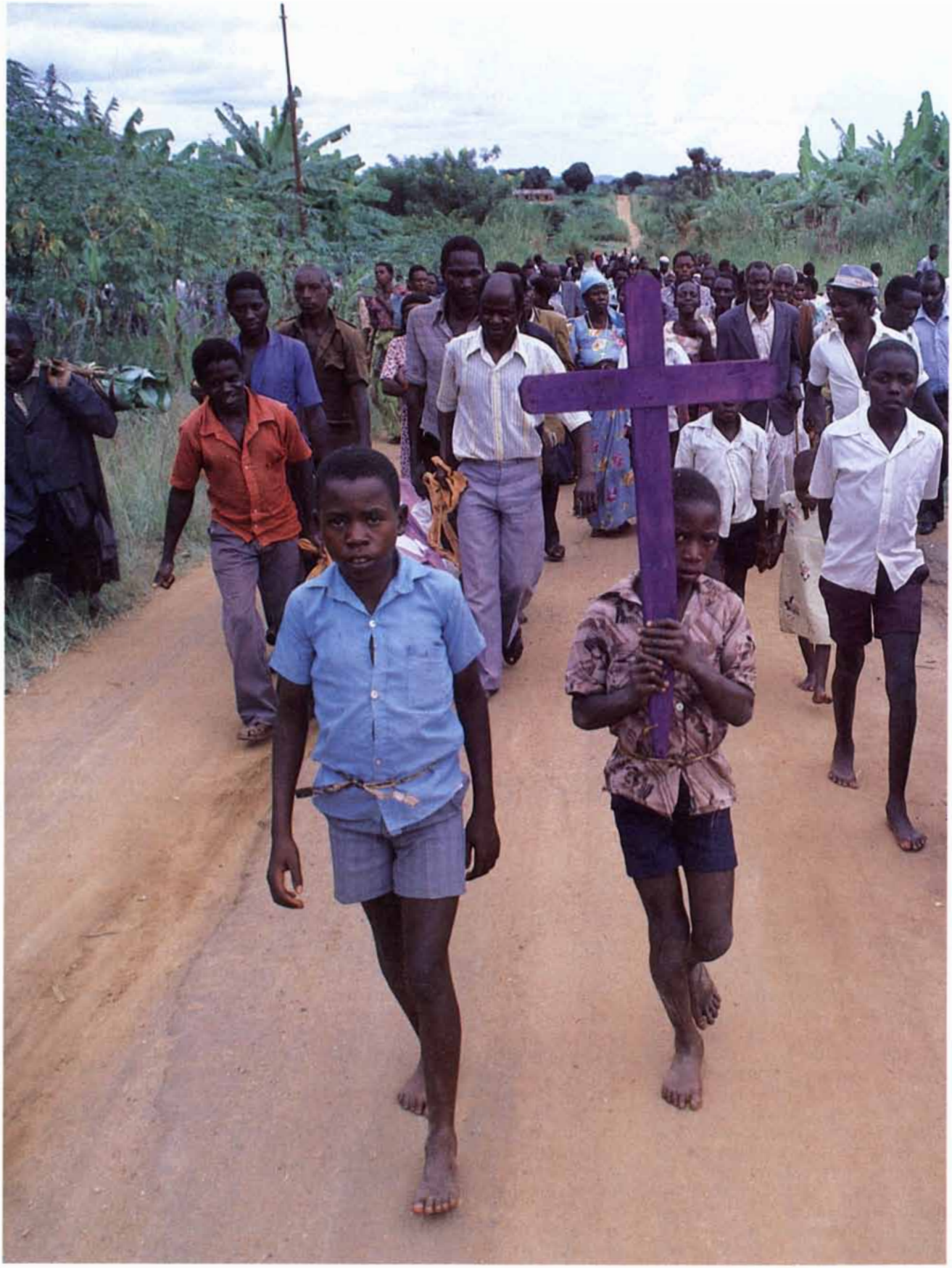
JONATHAN M. MANN, JAMES CHIN, PETER PIOT and THOMAS QUINN collaborate on the investigation of AIDS. Mann has been director of the World Health Organization's Global AIDS Program (GPA) since its inception in 1986. Chin is chief of the AIDS Surveillance Unit for the GPA. Piot is professor of microbiology at the Institute of Tropical Medicine in Antwerp. Quinn is on the medical staff of the National Institutes of Health and at the Johns Hopkins Hospital in Baltimore.

The thousands of AIDS cases now being reported every year are due to HIV infections that began spreading silently and extensively in the 1970's, before the disease was even recognized and before HIV was isolated. Although blood stored as early as 1959 in Zaire has been found to contain antibodies against the AIDS virus, the actual origin of HIV is still not known with any certainty; this ignorance was underscored when in 1987 the World Health Assembly stated that HIV is a "naturally occurring retrovirus of undetermined geographic origin." In 1985 a related virus was discovered in West Africa. The original virus and the newer one are now referred to as HIV-1 and HIV-2 respectively. Although preliminary observations suggest that HIV-2 infections may be less pathogenic than those of HIV-1, the natural history of HIV-2 has not been fully established and for the purposes of this article the two viruses are assumed to have similar effects.

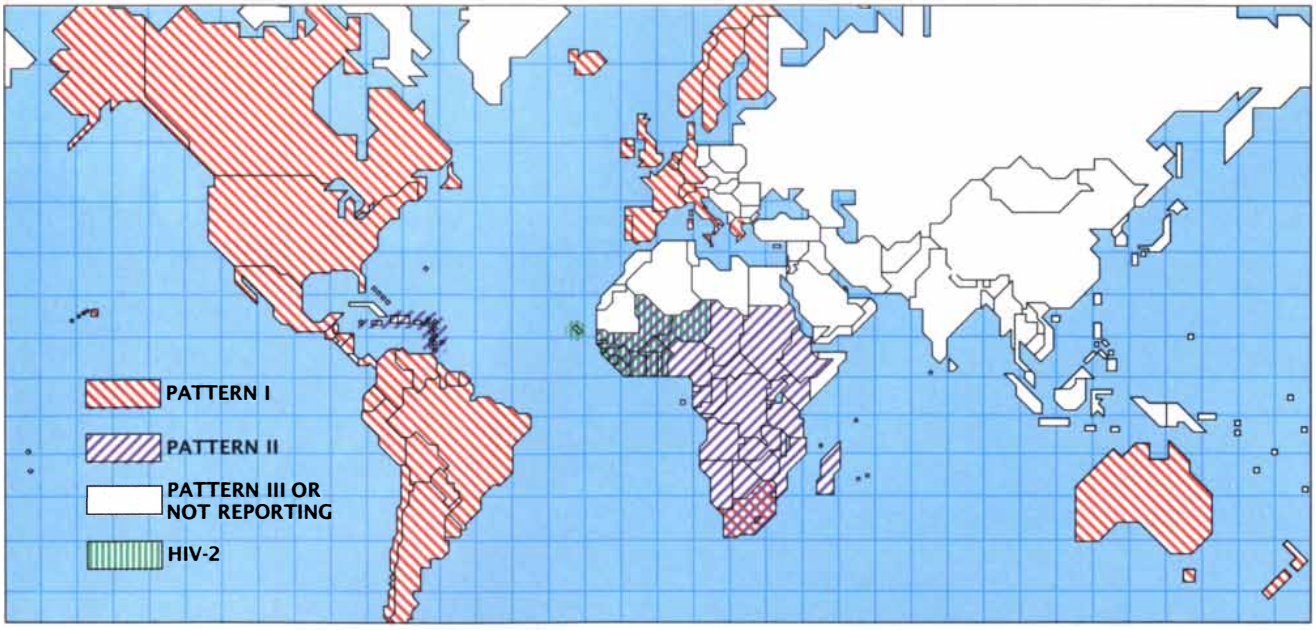
By now a clear picture of how HIV is transmitted has emerged. Studies have consistently shown that the virus is transmitted by sexual intercourse (vaginal or anal), by the injection or administration of infected blood or from an infected mother to her infant. There is no evidence to support transmission by food or water, by biting insects or by coughing or sneezing. Most important, there is no evidence for casual transmission between people in schools, in the workplace or other such social settings. Individual reports and rumors to the contrary should not be allowed to distort the basic facts about transmission, because an understanding of how HIV is spread and not spread is central to the development of appropriate and effective control measures.

After infection a person may remain symptom-free for years. An unknown proportion of infected people do experience an early, brief, mononucleosis-like illness with fever, malaise and possibly a skin rash. Such symptoms, when they are present, develop at about the time antibodies produced by the body against HIV can first be detected. This usually occurs between two weeks and three months after infection, rarely later. From that point on an average of eight or nine years may pass before AIDS is fully developed. The fatality rate for AIDS, once it has developed, is very high; it may reach 100 percent. The interval between diagnosis of AIDS to death varies greatly: in developed countries about 50 percent of the patients die within 18 months of diagnosis, and 80 percent die within 36 months. Survival times appear to be shorter in Africa and Haiti, but this may be due to later diagnosis and limited medical facilities. To date no study has found any resistance to HIV among any race group.

Since HIV infection precedes the development of AIDS by at least several years, to get a good picture of the disease's current distribution one cannot rely solely on reported AIDS cases;



FUNERALS FOR AIDS VICTIMS are daily occurrences in Kyotera, a town in Uganda from which most of the merchants have fled and where most of the children are now orphans. HIV, which causes AIDS, infects as many as 15 or 20 percent of certain segments of the adult urban population of Uganda, as well as that of the Congo, Rwanda, Tanzania, Zaire and Zambia.



THREE INFECTION PATTERNS of the AIDS virus are apparent worldwide. Pattern I is found in North and South America, Western Europe, Scandinavia, Australia and New Zealand. In these areas about 90 percent of the cases are homosexual males or users of intravenous drugs. Pattern II is found in Africa, the Caribbean and some areas of South America; the primary mode of transmission in these regions is heterosexual sex and the number of infected females and males is approximately equal. Pattern III is typical of Eastern Europe, North Africa, the Middle East, Asia and the Pacific (excluding Australia and New Zealand); there are relatively few cases and most of them have had contact with pattern-I or pattern-II countries.

it is also necessary to collect data on the number or proportion of people who are infected with HIV. Such "seroprevalence data" indicate by the presence in the blood of antibodies against HIV, that a person has been infected by the virus. From analyses of both AIDS reports and seroprevalence data three broad, and yet distinct, patterns of AIDS have been recognized.

Pattern I is typical of industrialized countries with large numbers of reported AIDS cases. These countries include the U.S., Mexico and Canada, many Western European countries, Australia, New Zealand and parts of Latin America. Some regions of North Africa also exhibit pattern-I behavior, though these areas are not industrialized. In pattern-I countries HIV probably began to spread extensively in the late 1970's. Most cases occur among homosexual or bisexual males and urban intravenous (IV) drug users. Heterosexual transmission is responsible for only a small percentage of cases but is increasing. There was transmission due to the transfusion of some blood and blood products between the late 1970's and 1985, but that route has now been practically eliminated by convincing people in high-risk groups not to donate blood and by routine, effective testing of blood donors for antibodies against HIV. Unsterile needles, except those used by IV drug users, are not a significant factor in HIV transmission in pattern-I countries.

In pattern-I areas the male-to-female sex ratio of reported AIDS cases ranges from 10 to one to 15 to one. Because relatively few women are infected in these areas, to date perinatal transmission (transmission from mother to infant) is not common. In the overall population of pattern-I countries, infection by HIV is estimated (on the basis of seroprevalence data) to be less than 1 percent, but it has been measured at more than 50 percent in some groups practicing high-risk behavior: men with multiple male sex partners and IV drug users who share unsterile needles or syringes.

Pattern II is presently observed in some areas of central, eastern and southern Africa and increasingly in certain Latin American countries, particularly those of the Caribbean. Like pattern-I areas, pattern-II areas probably saw the extensive spread of HIV beginning in the late 1970's. In contrast to pattern-I areas, however, most cases in pattern-II areas occur among heterosexuals and the ratio of infected males to females is approximately one to one. Transmission through homosexual activity or IV drug use is either absent or at a very low level, but because many women are infected, perinatal transmission is common.

Pattern III prevails in areas of Eastern Europe, North Africa, the Middle East, Asia and most of the Pacific (excluding Australia and New Zealand). In pattern-III countries, HIV was probably introduced in the early to mid-1980's, and only a small number of AIDS cases has so far been reported. These have generally occurred in people who have traveled to pattern-I or pattern-II areas and who have had sexual contact with individuals from such areas. Indigenous homosexual, heterosexual and IV-drug-use transmission have only recently been documented. Some cases have been caused by imported blood or blood products and, in a few pattern-III countries, they account for the largest percentage of reported AIDS cases to date.

With these infection and disease patterns as a guide, we shall now examine the geographical distribution of AIDS in more detail, concentrating on the epidemiology outside North America [see "The Epidemiology of AIDS in the U.S.," by William L. Heyward and James W. Curran, page 72].

The continent hardest hit by the AIDS pandemic is Africa where all three infection patterns can be found. Patterns I and II are seen in South Africa. Pattern III prevails in North Africa, including most countries in the Sahel region. In sub-Saharan Africa, below the Sahel, pattern II prevails in the large urban areas of cen-

tral, eastern and southern Africa. In West African countries, where pattern II is also found, HIV-2 infections are much more common than HIV-1 infections. AIDS cases are being increasingly detected in West Africa; whether HIV-2 will ultimately prove to be as pathogenic as HIV-1 remains an open question and is the subject of intense epidemiological and clinical research.

AIDS has become one of the major health problems that confront the countries of central and eastern Africa in particular. In many of the urban centers of the Congo, Rwanda, Tanzania, Uganda, Zaire and Zambia from 5 to 20 percent of the sexually active age-group has already been infected with HIV. Rates of infection among some prostitute groups range from 27 percent in Kinshasa, Zaire, to 66 percent in Nairobi, Kenya, and 88 percent in Butare, Rwanda. Close to half of all patients in the medical wards of hospitals in those cities are currently infected with HIV. So are from 10 to 25 percent of the women of childbearing age, and that will mean an increase in child mortality by at least 25 percent; the gains achieved with difficulty by child-survival programs over the past two decades may be nullified. By the early 1990's the total adult mortality rate in these urban areas will have been doubled or tripled by AIDS.

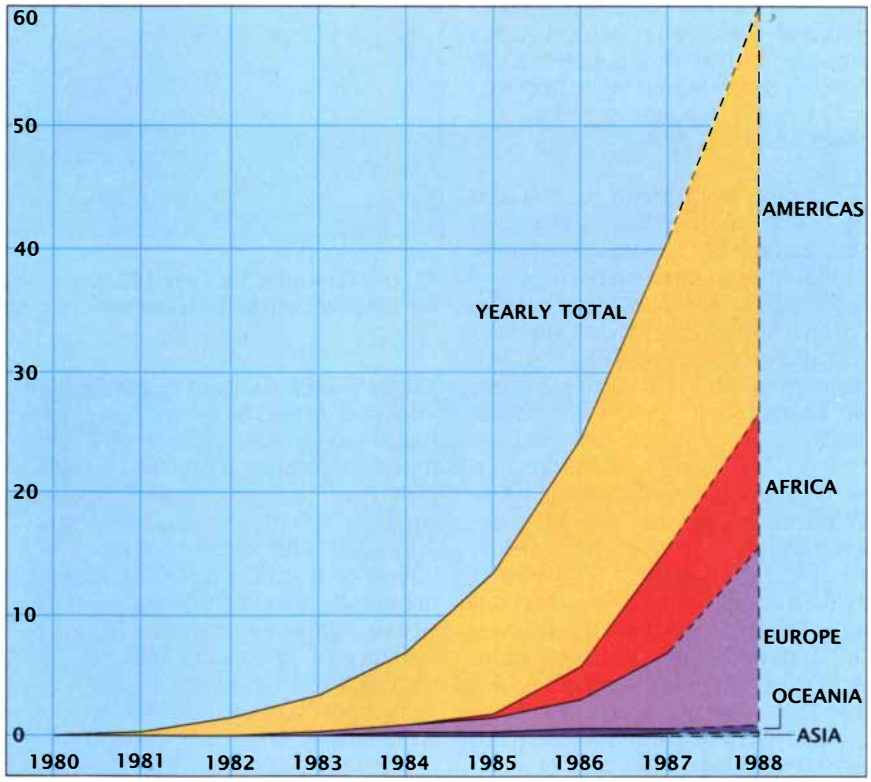
As bleak as this picture is, the situation could become even worse if the AIDS epidemic spreads significantly from urban areas, where it is now focused and which contain only from 10 to 20 percent of the population, to the rural areas where most people live. The cumulative total of AIDS cases in Africa by mid-1988 was estimated at more than 100,000, and health-care systems in developing African countries are often unable to cope with the current patient load. How these health-care systems will be able to manage the additional 400,000 cases projected within the next five years in urban areas is a problem seeking solutions; it will be a severe challenge not only to the countries directly affected but to external assistance groups.

In pattern-I countries, for example the U.S., HIV infection is found overwhelmingly among male homosexuals and IV drug users. In contrast, the major characteristic of the pattern-II infection in most of sub-Saharan Africa is its prevalence among heterosexuals. What accounts for the difference?

Widespread IV drug use, which would lead to increased heterosexual transmission, is not a significant problem in sub-Saharan Africa; although homosexuality exists worldwide, it has not been documented to any appreciable extent among AIDS cases or HIV-infected people in sub-Saharan Africa. Many epidemiological studies have shown that transfusion of HIV-infected blood can account for only a small fraction of the infections in sub-Saharan Africa. The use of unsterile needles or other skin-piercing instruments within the health-care system or as part of traditional healing practices also accounts for only a small portion of HIV infections in these areas. Ritual surgical removal of the clitoris in females has been postulated to be an important factor in the spread of HIV. The areas where such so-called circumcisions are still carried out, however, do not in general coincide with the areas where HIV or AIDS is currently most prevalent.

Genetic differences between pattern-I and pattern-II populations have also been proposed by several Indian and Caribbean investigators to explain the level and extent of heterosexual transmission in Africa. Yet no genetic basis has been identified among race groups for either increased susceptibility to infection or the capacity to disseminate HIV. Neither have virological studies so far revealed any difference among any strains of HIV that would result in increased infectious capability and hence the large number of infections among Africans.

Given that the above factors do not appear to contribute significantly to the spread of AIDS in Africa, one returns to what is well established: the likelihood of sexual transmission of HIV appears to be governed by the probability of exposure to an infected partner as well as the specific sexual acts performed with that partner. Although systematic studies of sexual behavior in sub-Saharan Africa are not yet available, investigators have generally reported a greater number of sexual partners and/or contacts with female prostitutes among African males who have AIDS than among control groups. High rates of partner exchange, or the frequent exposure to a relatively small number of prostitutes of many men who then return to their spouses, could contribute to the epidemiological pattern of HIV infection



NUMBER OF AIDS CASES reported to the World Health Organization (WHO) in each year from 1979 to 1988 is shown. The 1988 data, indicated by dashed lines, are projections. The Americas dominate the number of reported cases in part because of high reporting efficiency, which perhaps approaches 90 percent. The total-cases curve exhibits nearly exponential growth, with a doubling time of slightly over a year. This striking rate of increase is due not only to an actual increase in the number of AIDS cases but also to improved surveillance. The cumulative total as of August 1 was 108,176. Underreporting is still a problem in many parts of the world, however, and the WHO estimates that the true total was actually close to 250,000.

in these areas. Among sexual practices, available studies strongly suggest that vaginal intercourse is the dominant behavior in sub-Saharan Africa, reinforcing the supposition that frequency of sexual contact is the primary factor governing the transmission of HIV there.

Certain aggravating factors may help to explain possible differences in susceptibility to HIV infection. For example, individuals whose immune system has been activated by chronic infections might be more easily infected on exposure to HIV. There is also increasing evidence that the presence of other sexually transmitted diseases increases the risk of HIV infection. Studies in Africa indicate that such diseases (in particular those characterized by genital ulceration, such as chancroid and syphilis) may increase susceptibility to infection on exposure to a partner carrying HIV or may increase the infectivity of a person carrying HIV. Studies in the U.S. show that HIV infection is positively correlated with the presence of genital or anal lesions in homosexual men. Moreover, the higher prevalence of sexually transmitted diseases, including chancroid and syphilis, in tropical Africa compared with general populations in Europe is consistent with the hypothesis that such diseases aggravate the spread of AIDS in Africa.

Turning from Africa to Asia and the Pacific, one finds a less grim situation. In Oceania, as of June 1, 1988, four countries have reported a total of 892 cases of AIDS, all but two of which were reported by Australia (813) and New Zealand (77). These two countries exhibit the pattern-I infection characteristic of the U.S. Other countries in Asia and the Pacific have generally low levels of HIV infection and few AIDS patients. In these areas HIV infection and AIDS have been detected mainly in people who have visited a pattern-I or pattern-II country or have had sexual or needle-sharing contact with people from such countries.

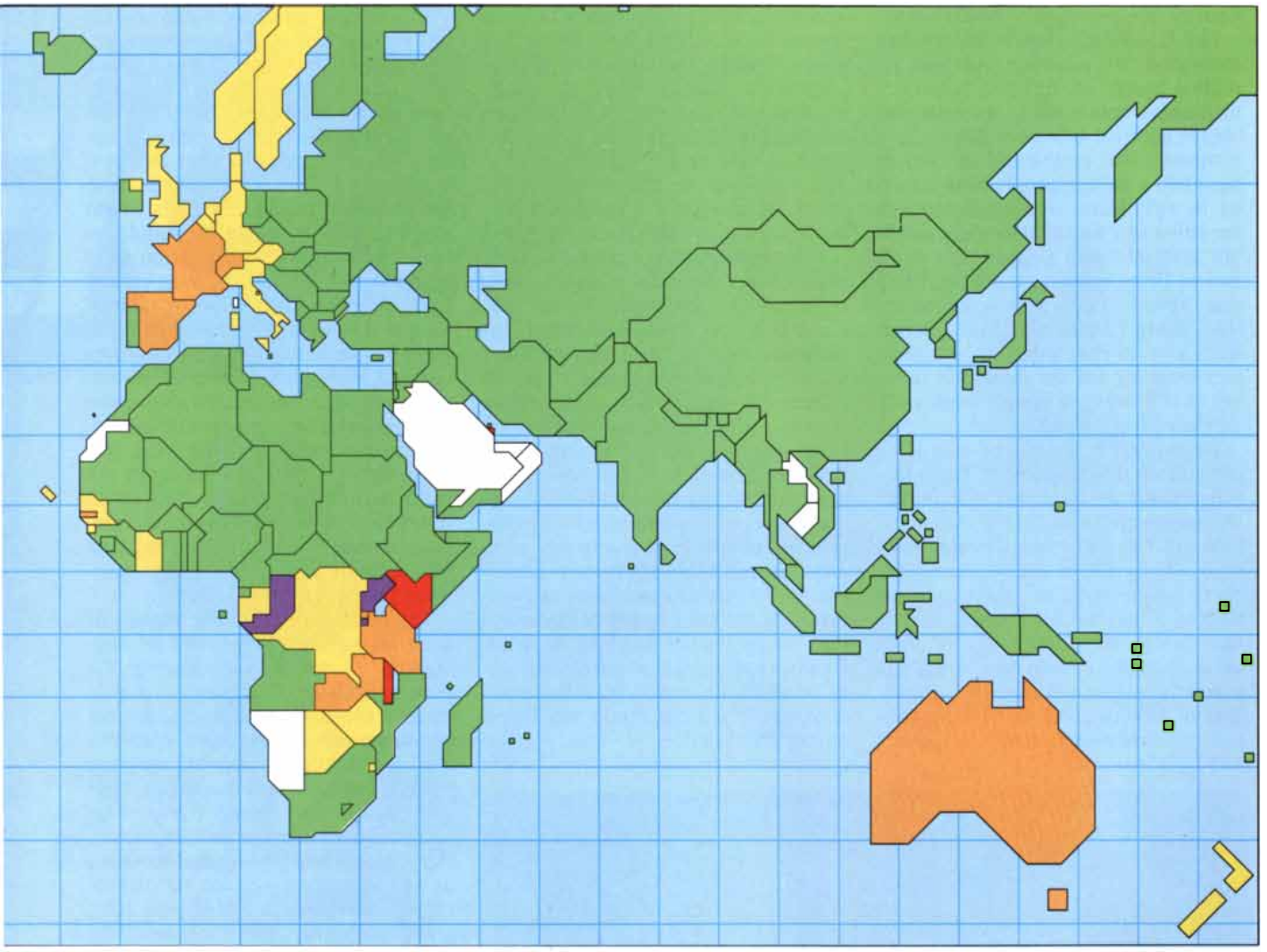
In China and Japan the largest number of documented HIV infections are among those people to whom imported blood or blood products were administered before 1986. Still, in absolute and relative terms the number is very small. Among blood donors in Hong Kong and Singapore, only about one person in from 50,000 to 80,000 have been found HIV seropositive, that is, to have antibodies against HIV. In female prostitute populations, the HIV infection rate has been found to be either zero or at most about one per 1,000. Small pockets of relatively high infection rates, however, have been found among some prostitute groups in the Philippines, where up to .5 percent may be infected, and in India, where up to 6 percent may be infected.

REPORTED AIDS CASES per 100,000 of population are mapped for 1987. Displaying the case rate rather than absolute numbers has the advantage of showing approxi-

In Asian and Pacific countries HIV infections do not appear to be spreading rapidly among the general heterosexual population, but intensive surveillance of prostitutes and patients with sexually transmitted diseases is being undertaken to monitor this situation closely. Of great public concern in Thailand was the documentation in early 1988 of a marked increase of HIV-infected IV drug users in Bangkok. The infection rate in this group went from zero in 1986 to 1 percent in 1987 and 16 percent in early 1988. It is estimated that there are 60,000 IV drug users in Bangkok, and so there may now be close to 10,000 HIV-infected people in that city. Besides posing a great potential for further spread within the IV drug community, these people also provide a relatively large pool for sexual transmission of HIV within that community and outside it.

In Europe the epidemiology of AIDS shows a sharp contrast from east to west and from north to south. In Western Europe the pattern is strikingly similar to that in the U.S., albeit delayed by a couple of years. Homosexual males and IV drug users account for more than 90 percent of AIDS cases, as they do in the U.S.

Regional differences in the share of AIDS cases accounted for by homosexuals and IV drug users are seen in Western Europe, as they are in the U.S. For example, in California homosexual males account for 90 percent of AIDS cases and drug users less than 10 percent; in New York each group accounts for about 50 percent. In such



mately what proportion of the population has AIDS. Such data do, however, tend to overstate the incidence in small countries with good AIDS surveillance; the incidence tends to be understated for countries that do not report most cases to the WHO.

northern countries of Western Europe as Denmark, Sweden and the U.K., homosexual cases account for from 70 to 90 percent of the total, whereas in two southern countries, Italy and Spain, IV drug users account for more than half of all AIDS cases.

Eastern Europe presents a somewhat different picture. The few AIDS cases that have been reported there collectively represent only about .5 percent of all reported European AIDS cases. Of this small fraction the majority of cases are among homosexual men and IV drug users who have generally acquired their infection from outside Eastern Europe. The delayed appearance of AIDS in Eastern Europe and its low prevalence there compared with Western Europe are likely to be related to different social patterns of homosexuality and to drug use.

The AIDS epidemic in Latin America and the Caribbean, as in the rest of the world, is concentrated primarily in large urban areas. By June of this year approximately 8,000 cases had been reported from Latin America and the Caribbean; the number of unreported or unrecognized cases is probably several times this figure. During the first few years of AIDS reporting Latin America followed pattern I: virtually all the reported cases were homosexual men or IV drug users. This was particularly the case in Brazil, where about 3,000 cases have been reported to date, the highest figure from a Latin American country. During the past year or two, however, the trend toward heterosexual acquisition of HIV has been increasing. This is now true in the Caribbean countries of Haiti and the Dominican Republic, where heterosexual cases now outnumber homosexual and IV drug cases.

The data that contribute to the preceding epidemiological picture of AIDS enable one to make some broad statements about the present and future. The number of countries reporting to the WHO now stands at 175; 138 have listed at least one AIDS case. As of August 1 these countries had reported 108,176 cases to the WHO Global Program on AIDS. Of these cases about 10,000 were reported in the first half of 1988. Because of inherent delays in reporting as well as the underreporting and underrecognition that persist in many parts of the world, however, a more reasonable estimate of the number of AIDS cases that have already occurred would exceed 250,000.

Estimating the number of HIV-infected people in 1988 is more difficult, because the available seroprevalence data are limited. As more AIDS testing is carried out and newer studies are made available, estimates will be revised, but the following

figures are reasonably conservative.

The U.S. Public Health Service has estimated that between one and 1.5 million people are infected in the U.S. In Europe, epidemiologists responsible for national AIDS surveillance have estimated that by the end of 1987 at least half a million people were infected by HIV. Many serological surveys are still under way in Zaire and Uganda but available data suggest that from two to three million people in Africa may already have been infected by HIV. Adding Canada and Latin America leads one to conclude that a consistent estimate for the minimum number of HIV-infected people worldwide would be five million.

To project the course of AIDS is as difficult as it is important. Many factors complicate accurate prediction of the pandemic's ultimate dimensions: First, it has only been possible to study the scope of the pandemic for about seven years, and there is virtually no other viral infection in human beings whose behavior is similar enough to provide an analogy for predictions. Furthermore, the proportion of HIV-infected individuals who will eventually develop AIDS is still not known. Estimates have ranged from a low of about 10 percent within five years of initial infection to a high of 30 percent or more. Whether the proportion will reach 50, 75 or 100 percent within 10 or 20 years after infection can only be answered with time. The pathogenicity and distribution of HIV-2 compared with HIV-1 are also not known and need to be determined.

The problem of prediction is complicated by the role of aggravating cofactors of the type already discussed. It has been postulated, for instance, that the presence of other sexually transmitted diseases may facilitate the transmission of HIV. Other cofactors may speed the progression from infection by HIV to the actual development of AIDS, but their roles have not yet been determined. Nor is the degree of infectiousness of HIV-infected people known with any accuracy. Although there is some evidence that infectiousness increases markedly during the later stages of HIV infection, more studies need to be done. Finally, one hopes that current efforts to prevent AIDS will eventually invalidate any long-term prediction based on current data.

EDUCATIONAL BROCHURES warning Ugandans to "love carefully" and practice "zero grazing" are distributed in 10 languages. The pamphlets held by two girls from the Sese Islands on Lake Victoria follow Ugandan slang in calling AIDS "slim"; this refers to the final stages of the disease, when patients suffer radical weight loss. Since an effective AIDS vaccine is unlikely in the near future, educational measures, now being adopted by dozens of countries, are the only practical way to slow the epidemic.

In contrast, short-term projections (up to five years) of the number of AIDS cases can be made because they are virtually independent of any future trends in HIV infection. The reason is that the vast majority of the AIDS cases and deaths over the next five years will involve people who are already infected; the cases would develop and the deaths would occur even if all HIV transmission were to cease in 1988. The average period from infection to the development of AIDS is now estimated by most modelers to be between eight and nine years. If five million people are infected worldwide, as estimated above, one can conservatively expect one million new AIDS cases over the next five years. Beyond five years the death toll from those infected as of 1987 could potentially double or triple. We emphasize that this figure does not take into account the number of new infections that will inevitably occur.

The social and economic impact of such an AIDS explosion will be substantial. Mortality rates among the economically and socially most productive age-groups, in particular people from 20 to 49 years old, will rise severalfold in severely affected pattern-I and pattern-II areas as a result of AIDS. This selective impact on young and middle-aged adults, including business and government workers, as well as members of the social, economic and political elites, will have grave economic consequences. The Harvard Institute of International Development estimates that by 1995 the annual loss to Zaire from AIDS' deaths will be $350 million, or 8 percent of the country's 1984 G.N.P.; this was more than Zaire received in that year from all sources of development assistance combined. The same study estimates that economic losses in central Africa by 1995 will be $980 million. It is not inconceivable that such social and economic impacts could lead to political destabilization of the countries involved.

The urgency of the situation has resulted in the creation of a global program against AIDS coordinated by the WHO. The program has three objectives: to prevent new HIV infections, to provide support and care to those already infected and to link national and international efforts against AIDS.

The first objective is achievable in principle because it is now known that HIV is almost always transmitted through certain readily identifiable and mostly voluntary behaviors. It is

vital to emphasize this point; because they are recognizable, the behaviors that transmit HIV also make it possible to prevent its spread. Consequently information and education programs are needed in all countries. For these education programs to be effective, however, they must be supplemented by health and social services. Advocating the use of condoms is pointless if condoms are not available, costly and of poor quality. Advocating a change of behavior among drug users is fruitless if treatment centers are not available.

Prevention of new HIV infections through blood transfusion is also feasible. Screening of donated blood for HIV antibodies is now routine in the U.S. and in many parts of the industrialized world. In most areas of Africa and Latin America, unfortunately, the cost of screening and the general infrastructure requirements for blood-banking have limited the implementation of such safety measures. Particularly in Africa, voluntary abstention of infected individuals from donating blood or the screening of donors is not likely to protect the blood supply and could drastically reduce the available donor pool. A simple and inexpensive screening assay for HIV infection appropriate for use in the developing world is urgently needed.

The prevention of perinatal transmission depends primarily on protecting women of childbearing age from HIV infection. In women already infected with the virus it may be possible to prevent pregnancy. Dealing with issues of childbearing, contraception and abortion calls for varied approaches adapted to the cultural background of the population.

The second objective of the WHO's global AIDS strategy is to reduce the personal and public impact of HIV infection. This means giving AIDS patients humane care of a quality at least equal to that provided in each society for other diseases. Counseling, social support and services must be available to all infected individuals. HIV-infected persons must not be discriminated against; the rights and dignity of these people must be protected to ensure that AIDS programs can be effective and that the AIDS problem is not simply driven underground.

The third objective, to unify national and international efforts against AIDS, has speedily become a reality. More than 150 countries have now established national AIDS committees. As of June 10, 151 countries had requested support from the WHO's Global Program on AIDS. Technical evaluation and assessment visits have already taken place in 137 of these countries. Short-term national AIDS plans to cover an initial six-to-18-month period have been established in 106 countries; urgent technical and financial support has been delivered to help start this work without delay. More than 40 countries have been given support to develop medium-term (three-to-five-year) comprehensive national AIDS plans. Through more than 40 scientific meetings, the WHO has established the basis for national policy formulation; scientific consensus is leading to plans to coordinate international trials of therapeutic agents and AIDS vaccines as these become available for field testing.

There is no precedent in the history of public-health efforts for the speed, intensity or scope of this global mobilization against AIDS. This in itself is cause for optimism. Yet the control and ultimate prevention of AIDS will require sustained, long-term, national and international commitment. There will be no easy answer.

COUNTRY	1987 (Cases)	1987 (Rate)	1988 (Cases)
Argentina	51	0.1	43
Australia	342	2.1	143
Austria	85	1.1	37
Bahamas	78	33.9	25
Belgium	85	0.8	25
Brazil	1,361	0.9	206
Burundi	652	13.0	235
Canada	513	1.9	232
Chile	34	0.2	13
Denmark	97	1.8	25
Dominican Republic	256	3.9	152
Ethiopia	19	0.0	18
France	1,852	3.3	555
French Guiana	45	56.2	10
Greece	53	0.5	18
Haiti	332	5.0	231
Honduras	58	1.2	38
Israel	13	0.3	11
Italy	888	1.5	387
Jamaica	37	1.4	13
Japan	34	0.0	7
Mexico	499	0.6	14
Netherlands	215	1.4	75
New Zealand	30	0.9	21
Norway	35	0.8	11
Portugal	44	0.4	35
South Africa	46	0.1	19
Sweden	73	0.8	34
Switzerland	163	2.4	84
United Kingdom	653	1.1	239
United States	21,846	8.9	6,442
West Germany	873	1.4	222
Yugoslavia	18	0.0	12
Zambia	286	4.0	218

ALL COUNTRIES that have reported more than five AIDS cases to the WHO in 1988 are listed here. The left column gives the total number of cases reported by each country for 1987, the middle column gives the 1987 rate (AIDS cases per 100,000 population) and the last column shows the number of cases reported in early 1988. Most 1988 reports were for only the first quarter or third of the year, and so comparison with 1987 should be avoided. Owing to reporting delays of six months or more, cases reported in 1988 actually were diagnosed in 1987. Moreover, some countries with high AIDS rates have not reported any cases in 1988 and so are not shown here.

FURTHER READING

CONFRONTING AIDS: DIRECTIONS FOR PUBLIC HEALTH, HEALTH CARE, AND RESEARCH. Edited by Roy Widdus. National Academy Press, 1986.

AIDS—A GLOBAL PERSPECTIVE. In *The Western Journal of Medicine,* Vol. 147, No. 6; December, 1987.

CONFRONTING AIDS: UPDATE 1988. Edited by Robin Weiss. National Academy Press, 1988.

THE AIDS ISSUE. In *Science,* Vol. 239, No. 4840; February 5, 1988.

HIV Infection: The Clinical Picture

The human immunodeficiency virus causes a spectrum of disease that culminates in AIDS. Early detection of HIV infection, often years before symptoms emerge, is key to prolonging health and life

by Robert R. Redfield and Donald S. Burke

As physicians we are often asked to describe the typical course of AIDS: the severe immune deficiency that enables normally benign organisms to flourish destructively in patients. Our answer is that people are asking the wrong question. Now that AIDS is known to be caused by a virus—the human immunodeficiency virus, or HIV—the focus should be on the full course of the viral infection, not solely on AIDS. HIV causes a predictable, progressive derangement of immune function, and AIDS is just one, late manifestation of that process.

An emphasis on HIV is important because it facilitates both treatment and prevention. Prompt diagnosis of HIV infection enables the patient to receive optimal medical care from the earliest moments of the disease. Such care can often prevent complications from developing or getting unnecessarily out of hand. For instance, the lethal opportunistic infection *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia (PCP), which has been a hallmark of AIDS, can now actually be prevented with medication given early in the course of HIV disease. (Opportunistic infections are ones that occur because the immune system has broken down.) In addition, the medicine Retrovir (also known as AZT), which has been shown to prolong life in patients with late-stage disease, holds promise as a therapy for patients in earlier stages of infection. Early diagnosis also eliminates the unwitting transmission of HIV and gives people the opportunity to consider changing their behavior before they pass the virus to others.

Although the continuing emphasis on AIDS alone is seriously misguided, it is somewhat understandable. When AIDS was first identified in 1981, it was a mysterious syndrome: a cluster of rare diseases that had suddenly become alarmingly common in homosexual men. In order to identify similar cases of AIDS, and thereby help to uncover the cause and means of transmission, the U.S. Centers for Disease Control (CDC) adopted a strict epidemiological-surveillance definition. People were said to have AIDS if they contracted Kaposi's sarcoma (a rare cancer) or if they developed any of a few rare opportunistic infections, most notably PCP.

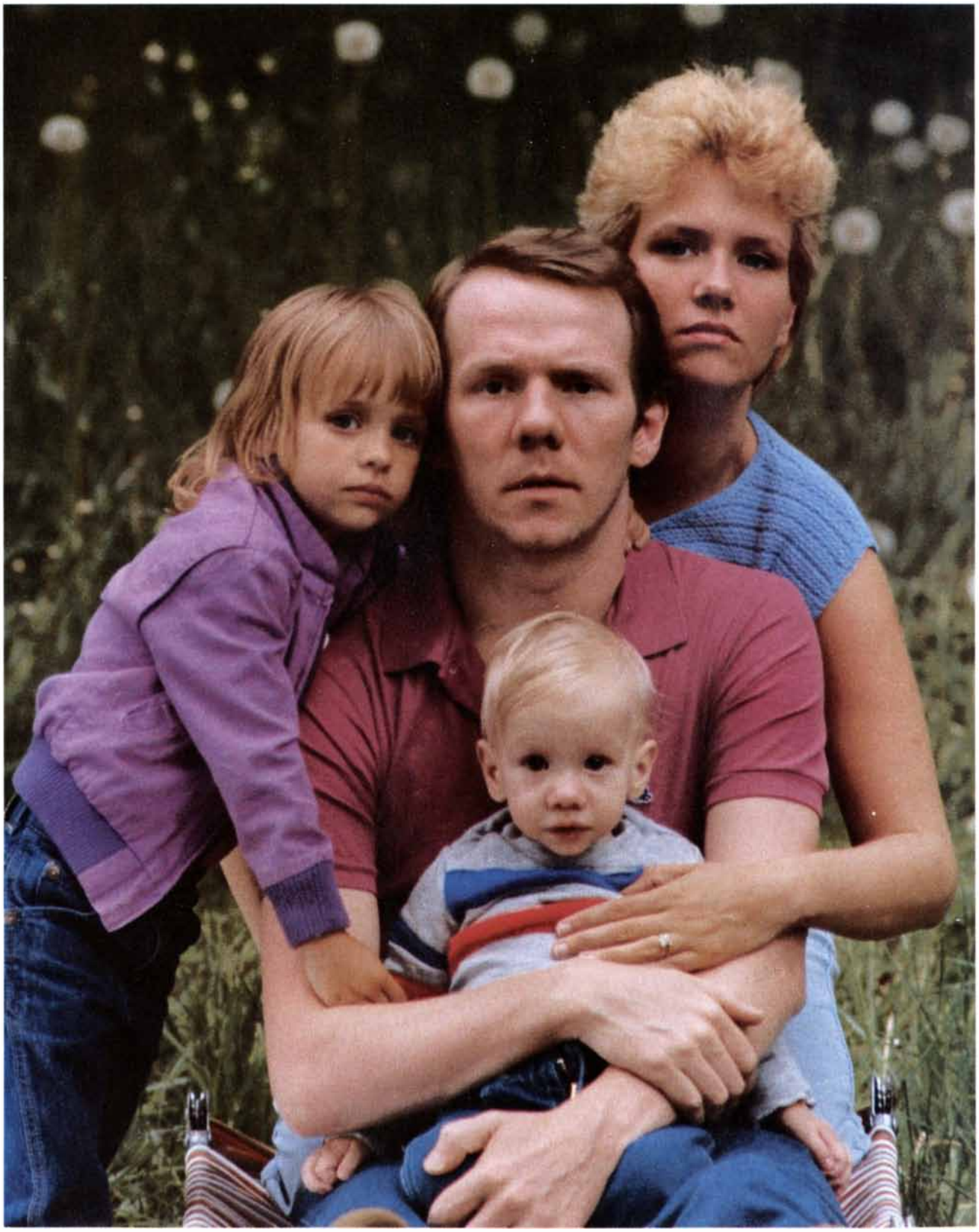
The extremely restricted definition worked brilliantly: by 1984 HIV had been identified as the cause of AIDS. Moreover, workers had gained great insight into the methods of transmission, which are now known to be primarily intimate sexual contact, direct contamination of the blood (as when virus-contaminated drug paraphernalia is shared) or the passage of virus from a mother to a fetus or to a suckling baby. Unfortunately the early CDC definition also focused attention so narrowly on AIDS that many doctors and lay people failed to broaden their view once HIV was identified.

Because we and our colleagues at the Walter Reed Army Medical Center believe HIV-infected patients must be treated on the basis of the fullest possible understanding of their disease, in 1984 we developed a classification system that provides a framework for managing patients and understanding the progression of the disease. The system groups patients according to their stage of infection, judged by several indicators of the immune impairment that underlies HIV disease.

As the disease progresses, the patient moves through six stages, the last of which is AIDS. In our system the presence of opportunistic infections is a criterion for the diagnosis of AIDS, but the presence of Kaposi's sarcoma is omitted because the cancer is not caused by immune suppression and can appear early in the course of HIV infection. (Inclusion of Kaposi's sarcoma in the CDC definition hindered the understanding of the natural progression of HIV infection and confounded studies of longevity because patients with Kaposi's sarcoma alone usually lived longer than people who had severe immune impairment.)

The immune dysfunction on which the Walter Reed scheme is based has long been known to result mainly from depletion of a specific set of white blood cells called *T*4 lymphocytes. The various parts of the immune system are highly interdependent, but if any one part can be called its quarterback, it is the *T*4 cell, also known as the helper *T* cell. Among other functions, it recognizes foreign antigens, or markers, on infected cells and helps to activate another set of white cells called *B* lymphocytes. The *B* cells then multiply and produce specific antibodies that bind to infected cells and to free organisms bearing the identified antigen, inactivating those cells and organisms or leading to their destruction. The *T*4 cell

ROBERT R. REDFIELD and DONALD S. BURKE are colleagues at the Walter Reed Army Institute of Research in Washington, D.C. Redfield is chief of the section of retrovirology, immunoregulation and immunotherapy and medical director of the clinical virology laboratory. He was recently given the first annual Thomas Parran Award for his work on HIV infection. Burke is a colonel in the Medical Corps of the U.S. Army. He has been chief of the Department of Virus Diseases at the Institute of Research since 1984.

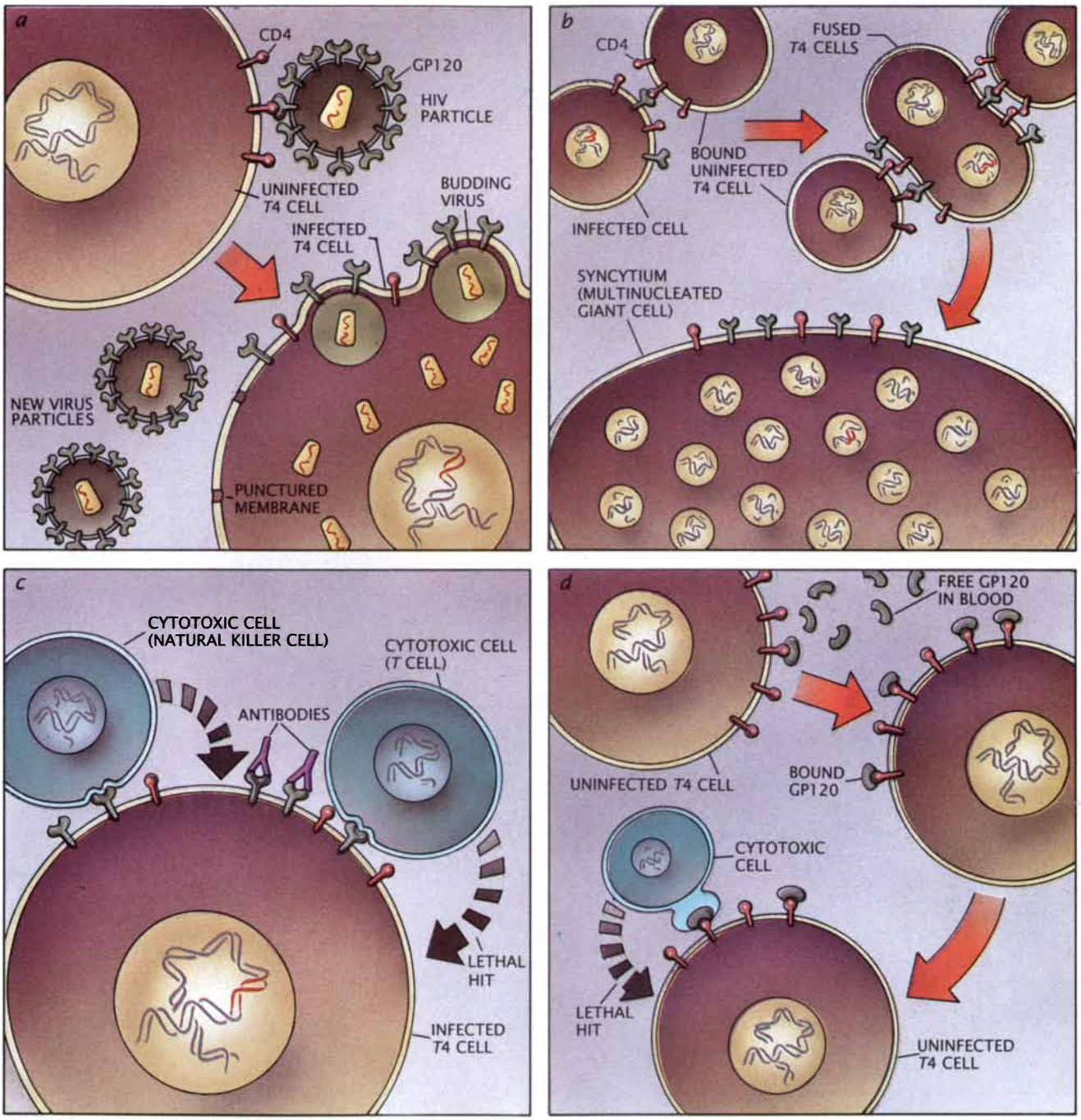


BURK FAMILY, shown in 1985, looked like a typical U.S. family. Yet the father, Patrick, a hemophiliac, had contracted HIV from a transfusion and, before he was aware of the infection, had passed the virus to his wife, Lauren, who then transmitted it to their son, Dwight, while she was pregnant or breast-feeding. When the photograph was made, Patrick and Dwight already had AIDS; they have since died. The daughter, Nicole, is not infected. This story underscores two important facts. Anyone, regardless of age, sex or sexual orientation, can contract HIV if exposed to it through a known transmission route. And there usually are no symptoms of early infection; many people transmit HIV to others before they know they are ill. For these reasons the authors recommend that anyone who thinks he or she has been exposed to HIV seek an early diagnosis.

also orchestrates cell-mediated immunity: the killing of infected cells by cytotoxic cells such as *T*8 lymphocytes and white cells known as natural killer cells.

*T*4 cells influence the activity of another group of cells as well—the mobile scavengers known as monocytes and macrophages, which engulf infected cells and foreign particles. Activated monocytes and macrophages secrete a variety of cytokines: small but highly potent proteins that modulate the activity of many cell types, including *T* and *B* cells. *T*4 cells also secrete cytokines of their own, notably ones that stimulate the proliferation of *T* and *B* cells.

The loss of *T*4 cells seriously impairs the body's ability to fight most invaders, but it has a particularly se-



DESTRUCTION OF *T*4 CELLS, which are critical to immune defense, is the major cause of the progressive immune dysfunction that is the hallmark of HIV infection. The virus is known to kill cells by replicating, budding from them and damaging the cell membrane (*a*). HIV might also kill *T*4 cells indirectly, by means of a viral protein, gp120, that is displayed on an infected cell's surface. A molecule on *T*4 cells—the CD4 receptor—has a strong affinity for gp120, and healthy *T*4 cells can bind to the gp120 and merge with the infected cell (*b*). The end result, called a syncytium, cannot survive, and all the once healthy cells it contains are destroyed along with the infected cell. HIV can also elicit normal cellular immune defenses against infected cells (*c*). With or without the help of antibodies, cytotoxic defensive cells can destroy an infected cell that displays viral proteins on its surface. Finally, free gp120 may circulate in the blood of people with HIV (*d*). The free protein may bind to the CD4 receptor of uninfected cells, making them appear to be infected and evoking an immune response.

vere impact on the defenses against viruses, fungi, parasites and certain bacteria, including mycobacteria (the group that includes the bacterium that causes tuberculosis). Eradication of these organisms requires a strong, highly orchestrated cell-mediated immune response. Other organisms, including many types of bacteria, tend to be destroyed by the "humoral," or antibody-dependent, arm of the immune system. In a humoral response newly made antibodies or antibodies that were stored after an earlier infection attack the invader without *T*-cell participation. Hence bacterial infections present a smaller threat to people with a limited number of *T*4 cells.

STAGE	HIV ANTIBODY AND/OR VIRUS	CHRONIC LYMPHADENOPATHY	*T*-HELPER CELLS/MM^3	DELAYED HYPERSENSITIVITY	THRUSH	OPPORTUNISTIC INFECTIONS
WR0	–	–	> 400	NORMAL	–	–
WR1	+	–	> 400	NORMAL	–	–
WR2	+	+	> 400	NORMAL	–	–
WR3	+	+/–	< 400	NORMAL	–	–
WR4	+	+/–	< 400	P	–	–
WR5	+	+/–	< 400	C AND/OR THRUSH		–
WR6	+	+/–	< 400	P/C	+/–	+

WALTER REED CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM charts the course of patients from exposure to HIV (WR0) and the onset of infection (WR1) through stages of progressive immune dysfunction. The essential criteria by which patients are assigned to each stage are shown in red and always include laboratory evidence of HIV infection. Stage 2 is characterized by chronic lymphadenopathy, or swollen lymph nodes. Stage 3 is reached when the *T*4-cell count drops below 400 cells per cubic millimeter of blood and stays down. (A normal count is 800.) A patient moves into stage 4 after subclinical (asymptomatic) defects are found in delayed hypersensitivity: the ability to react to skin tests that are a barometer of immune functioning. ("P" indicates a partial defect.) The line is crossed into stage 5 when the patient completely ("C") fails to respond to the skin tests or when thrush (a fungal disease of the mouth) develops. (Lymphadenopathy and abnormalities of *T*4-cell and skin tests must persist for at least three months to serve as criteria.) Patients enter stage 6 and are said to have AIDS when opportunistic infections (ones that occur because the immune system has broken down), such as cryptococcal meningitis, develop elsewhere in the body.

How exactly does HIV infect and kill *T*4 cells? Infection begins as a protein, gp120, on the viral envelope binds tightly to a protein known as the CD4 receptor on the cell surface. The virus then merges with the *T*4 cell and transcribes its RNA genome into double-strand DNA. The viral DNA becomes incorporated into the genetic material in the cell's nucleus and directs the production of new viral RNA and viral proteins, which combine to form new virus particles. These particles bud from the cell membrane and infect other cells.

Early investigations of *T*4-cell killing demonstrated that under certain circumstances HIV could multiply prodigiously in the helper *T* cells and kill them, suggesting that viral replication was the main cause of cell destruction. In particular, it was discovered that HIV replication and cell death increase when infected helper *T* cells become activated, as they do when they take part in an immune response to HIV or to other viruses in other cells. Thus the very process that should defeat HIV—an immune response—has the diabolical effect of increasing the proliferation of the virus.

Yet further investigation revealed an apparent paradox: HIV replication could be demonstrated in only a small fraction of *T*4 cells collected from HIV-infected patients. The cells killed by replication alone might hamper the immune system somewhat but would not cause the severe immune deficiency seen in AIDS. The paradox could be resolved only if the cells were also killed by other means. To date several other mechanisms of killing have been documented in the laboratory. Whether they also occur in the body is not yet known.

One mechanism is the formation of syncytia: massive bodies consisting of many merged cells. Syncytia develop after a single cell becomes infected with HIV and produces viral proteins, including gp120, which is displayed on the surface of the infected cell. Because gp120 and the *T*4 cell's CD4 receptor have a high affinity for each other, uninfected *T*4 cells can bind to the infected cell and merge with it. The resulting syncytium cannot function and dies. The original infected cell is killed, but so are dozens or hundreds of uninfected *T*4 cells.

Infected *T*4 cells can also be killed by the standard antiviral activities of cytotoxic antibodies and cells. Even HIV-infected cells that do not produce new virus are vulnerable to immune destruction if they display viral proteins. Similarly, in a process that is unique to HIV, free viral gp120 may circulate in the blood and the lymph and bind to the CD4 receptor of uninfected helper *T* cells, making them susceptible to attack by the immune system.

A final process, which is more speculative, has to do with HIV's effects on cytokine production in various cell types. The virus infects and replicates not only in *T*4 cells but also in monocytes, macrophages and similar cells called tissue-dendritic cells found in the skin, mucous membranes, lymph nodes, liver, spleen and brain. Such cells are not killed by the virus, but their functioning may nonetheless be deranged in some ways. In particular, HIV infection may somehow alter the amount or structure of the cytokines normally produced by activated macrophages or activated lymphocytes in a way that is toxic to helper *T* cells.

Regardless of how helper *T* cells are killed by HIV, their progressive decline leads to a more general decline in immune functioning and hence is the primary factor determining the clinical course of the patient. In recognition of those cells' importance, the Walter Reed classification system relies on the *T*4-cell count and function as an indicator of a patient's stage of disease. Other indicators include the onset of chronic lymphadenopathy, or swollen lymph nodes, the response to a set of skin tests that reflect the overall functioning of cell-mediated immunity and the presence of infections that have been unequivocally associated with a specific degree of im-

mune suppression. Lymphadenopathy and abnormal test results must persist for at least three months before they are taken to be evidence of the stage of infection.

The specific stages chart the course of the immune system's decline. When HIV infection is first detectable by standard tests, the *T*4-cell concentration is often close to the normal level of about 800 cells per cubic millimeter of blood, and the patient feels well. Usually within six months to a year, chronic lymphadenopathy develops. Within a few years laboratory and other tests reveal more severe, subclinical (silent) immune defects: first the slowly declining *T*4-cell count falls below 400 and then patients exhibit abnormalities on the skin tests. Later, as the *T*4-cell number drops further, overt disease sets in, first as chronic infections of the skin and mucous membranes and then as disseminated, systemic infections.

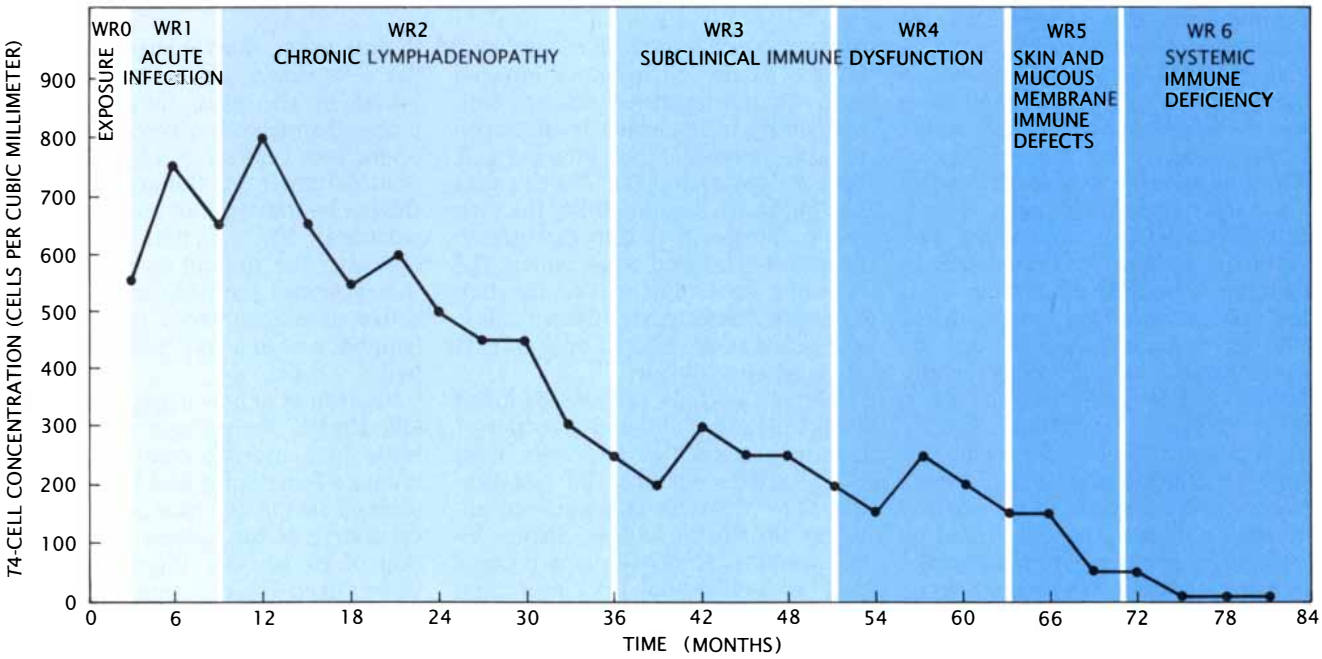
Throughout the course of HIV infection people may also develop cancers and disorders of the central nervous system. These are noted along with the Walter Reed stage of disease but are not included in the criteria for each stage because in most instances their causes and their relation to the immune deficiency are not known. The same is true for the various "constitutional" symptoms that some physicians have dubbed the AIDS-related complex, or ARC: unexplained fevers, persistent night sweats, chronic diarrhea and wasting. We hope the data we are collecting about all these disorders and their relation to the stage of disease will lead to new insights into their causes and to new treatments.

The Walter Reed classification system begins with stage zero: exposure to the virus through any of the known transmission routes. Noting exposure facilitates early diagnosis: people who are known to have been exposed to HIV can be evaluated for evidence of infection, such as the presence of antibodies to HIV in the blood. Even before infection is detected they can be told that they may be infected with HIV and so should take steps to avoid spreading the possible infection to others; HIV usually causes no symptoms at first and can take root from six weeks to a year before it is detected by the standard (antibody) HIV test. Stage zero has also been included to emphasize the fact that, in 1988, exposure to HIV, rather than membership in some "risk" group, is the single most important factor leading to HIV infection.

Once the presence of HIV has been documented by any reliable test, patients are said to be in Walter Reed stage 1, provided they do not meet the criteria for a higher stage. In addition to identifying antibodies to HIV in blood samples, some laboratories are now able to detect infection by culturing whole virus or identifying viral nucleic acid or protein in blood or tissue samples.

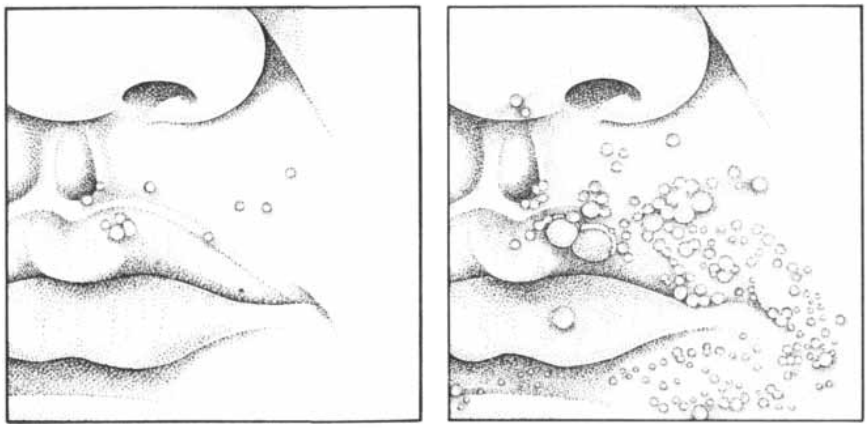
Although most people have no symptoms when HIV infection is first diagnosed, some patients develop a disorder resembling mononucleosis. Its symptoms include fatigue, fever and swollen glands, which may or may not be accompanied by a rash. In addition self-limited disorders of the central nervous system have been noted. These range from headaches to encephalitis (inflammation of brain tissue). The cause of these symptoms is not entirely clear. In any event, they disappear, usually within a few weeks. Unfortunately HIV does not do the same; it continues to replicate and slowly but persistently destroys *T*4 cells.

For the majority of patients the first sign that something is amiss in the immune system is the development of chronically swollen lymph nodes.



DECLINE in *T*4-cell count (rounded to the nearest 50) was tracked in the blood of a young man whose disease followed a typical course. About three months after sexual exposure to HIV the patient tested positive for the virus; his *T*4-cell count dropped and then rebounded, presumably because his immune system temporarily controlled the infection. He developed chronic lymphadenopathy at nine months and, at 51 months, after a long, slow decline in his *T*4-cell count (by 36 months it was chronically below 400), exhibited chronic, subtle abnormalities of delayed hypersensitivity. He displayed persistent anergy (the complete absence of delayed hypersensitivity) at 63 months but had no overt symptoms of infection until about 68 months, when he developed thrush and oral hairy leukoplakia, a tongue infection. Less than a year later he was besieged by opportunistic infections, including cytomegalovirus infection, which made him blind. He died at 83 months.

With the appearance of this chronic lymphadenopathy a patient moves into stage 2. The cause of the lymphadenopathy is relatively straightforward. Although HIV infection suppresses many immune functions, it also is marked by one kind of hyperactivity. The ongoing presence of HIV overstimulates *B* cells, which are abundant in the lymph nodes, and keeps them in a state of chronic activation. The flood of antibodies produced as a result of such activation includes some antibodies that combat current infections or recurrences of past infections. In general, however, the hyperactivity is not beneficial. The activation of large numbers of *B* cells diminishes the number of resting cells that can differentiate to produce antibodies in response to new pathogens or to inoculation with vaccines.



VIRAL INFECTION known as molluscum contagiosum normally produces a few small lesions (*left*) that disappear on their own within several months. In a patient with advanced HIV infection the lesions persisted, grew and multiplied so profusely (*right*) that they disfigured the face, demonstrating that when the immune system is compromised, even common, ordinarily minor infections can be overwhelming.

Stage 2 typically lasts for from three to five years, and patients still feel well even when it ends. The beginning of stage 3 is defined by a persistent drop in the *T*4-cell count to less than 400, which is a harbinger of a decline in immune functioning. Patients remain in this stage, however, until direct evidence of an impairment in cell-mediated immunity is discovered—usually about 18 months later—at which point they enter stage 4. That evidence is the failure to respond to three out of four skin tests that measure what is called delayed hypersensitivity: the individual's ability to mount a cellular immune response against specific proteins injected under the skin.

Although the *T*4-cell count in stage 4 can dip quite low (for example, to 50), the Walter Reed system requires only that it be persistently less than 400 in this stage and also in stages 5 and 6. This criterion is not narrower, because patients can vary quite a bit in their immune function at any specific low *T*4-cell count.

Progression to stage 5 is usually determined on the basis of the development of anergy (a total absence of delayed hypersensitivity). Some time later the first overt symptom of a breakdown in cell-mediated immunity arises: the development of thrush, a fungal infection of the mucous membranes of the tongue or the oral cavity. Thrush, which can occasionally develop before anergy, is identified by the presence of white spots and ulcers covering the infected area. By the time most people reach stage 5, their *T*4-cell count has generally fallen to less than 200.

In addition to thrush, stage-5 patients often develop unusually severe or persistent viral or fungal infections of the skin and mucous membranes. One example is chronic infection with the Herpes simplex virus, which often produces painful and persistent sores in the skin surrounding the anus, the genital area or the mouth. In addition, *Candida albicans,* the fungus that causes thrush, may spread throughout the vagina, resulting in chronic infection there.

Recently many stage-5 patients have developed oral hairy leukoplakia: a mucous-membrane infection marked by fuzzy white patches, usually on the tongue, that cannot be rubbed off. The cause is not clear. Although these infections now appear to be the commonest ones in stage 5, it is becoming apparent that any viral or fungal pathogen in the skin or mucous membranes can cause equally severe infection at this stage of the immune deficiency.

Many people develop chronic or disseminated opportunistic infections at sites beyond the skin and mucous membranes within a year or two after entering stage 5. The emergence of these infections reflects an extremely severe decline in immune function and constitutes progression to stage 6, or what is also called opportunistic-infection-defined AIDS. (Again, Kaposi's sarcoma is not sufficient evidence of stage-6 disease.) Most patients enter stage 6 with a *T*4-cell count of 100 or less and most, unfortunately, die within two years.

We cannot discuss all of the many opportunistic infections that can develop during stage 6, but we shall mention a few that are particularly common or virulent in the U.S. The diseases that appear most often in this stage—and in stage 5—are prevalent probably because the agents that cause them are ubiquitous in human beings. Similarly, infections that appear in some geographic areas but not in others are probably caused by organisms that are prevalent in distinct locales. We should also point out that any pathogen that can be eradicated only with the help of vigorous cell-mediated immunity can cause serious disease. Hence, in addition to the exotic infections that receive most of the publicity, a host of more familiar diseases, such as tuberculosis, can also develop and be quite severe.

In addition to PCP, other disorders associated with AIDS include the parasitic infections toxoplasmosis (which often infects the brain and can lead to seizures and coma) and chronic cryptosporidiosis (which typically attacks the intestinal tract, causing chronic diarrhea). Stage-6 opportunistic diseases also include the fungal infections cryptococcosis (which frequently causes meningitis but may also damage the liver, bone, skin and other tissues) and histoplasmosis (which can cause self-limited pneumonia in individuals with an intact immune system but causes a disseminated infection of the liver, bone marrow and other tissues in HIV-infected patients and is a frequent cause of chronic fevers).

A common viral infection is cytomegalovirus, a cause of pneumonia, encephalitis, blindness and inflammation of the gastrointestinal tract. As is the case with histoplasmosis and tuberculosis, the cytomegalovirus infection seen in HIV patients is usually a reactivation of a childhood infection that was well controlled until HIV seriously hobbled the patient's immune system. Such bacteria as *Legionella*

and *Salmonella* can also be a severe problem for someone in stage 6.

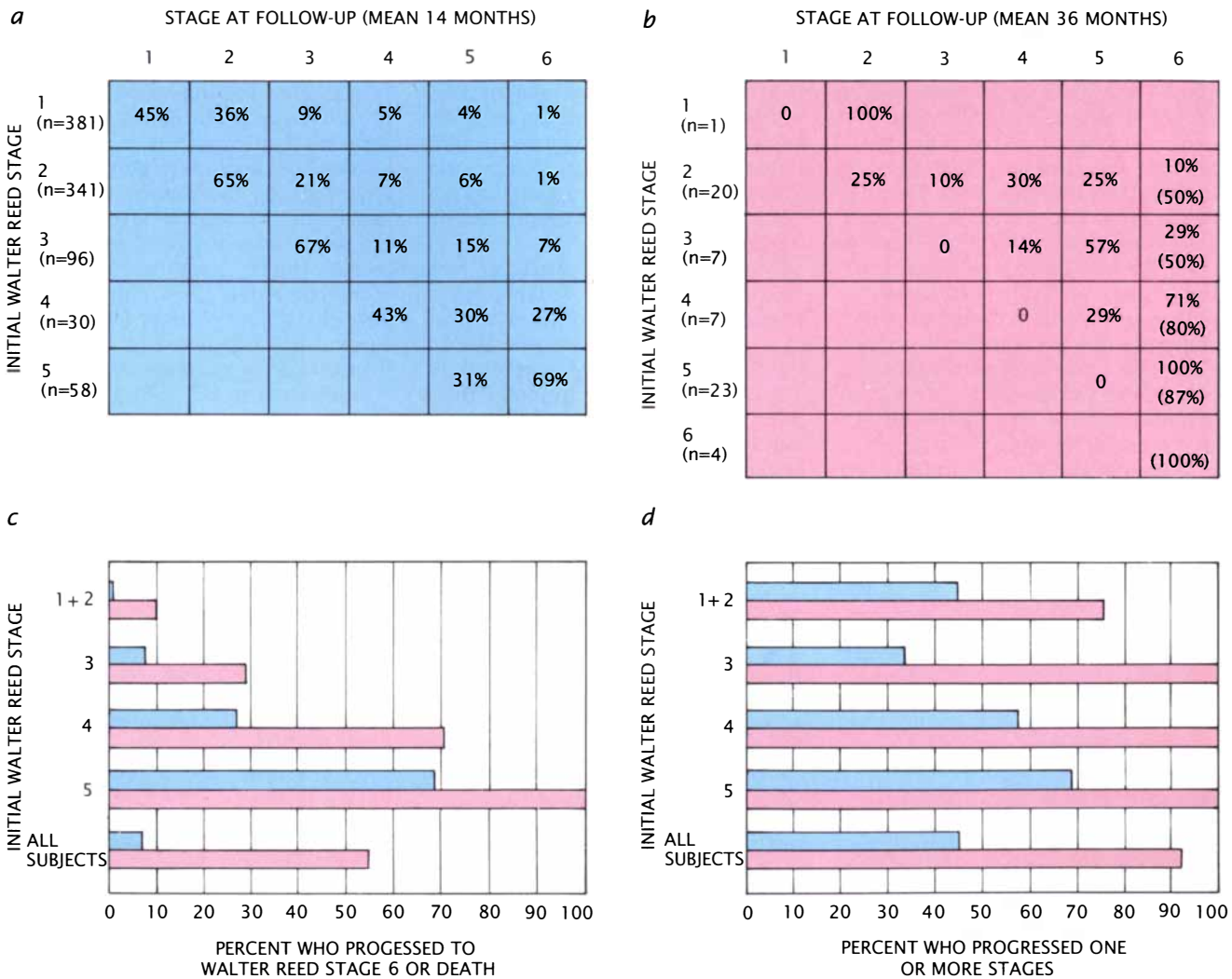
Standard or experimental therapies exist for all these disorders. Among the most exciting developments in recent years is the discovery of several medications that control or even prevent PCP. Pentamidine, Septra/Bactrium and dapsone are all effective in clearing up the infection; the first two—and a drug called Fansidar—serve as preventives as well.

Also exciting are new treatments for cytomegalovirus. Just two years ago investigators had little hope of discovering an effective therapy for the virus. Today there are two treatments, including a medicine (ganciclovir) that can halt the progression of cytomegalovirus-induced blindness. Research workers are making progress against other HIV-related diseases as well. A drug called acyclovir is under study for the prevention of Herpes simplex infection, and new treatments have been developed for cryptococcal meningitis, disseminated histoplasmosis and mycobacterial diseases.

Just as investigators continue to seek better treatments for the opportunistic infections associated with HIV, so too the search continues for the causes of the neurological disorders and cancers that have been associated with HIV infection. Thus far the causes—and their relation to immune deficiency—are a matter of conjecture. One would expect that conditions arising late in the course of infection could be a consequence of immune deficiency, whereas conditions arising earlier would probably have other causes.

Early neurological findings can include subtle alterations in cognitive function, such as in memory and judgment. The brain damage could stem from diseases that are transmitted in the same way as HIV, such as syphilis, and that often coexist with it. On the other hand, HIV may cause trouble on its own, for example by replicating in brain cells or inducing the secretion of neurotoxic cytokines.

In the terminal stages of HIV infection many patients suffer from the AIDS dementia complex: a syndrome characterized by a gradual loss of precision in both thought and motion. In

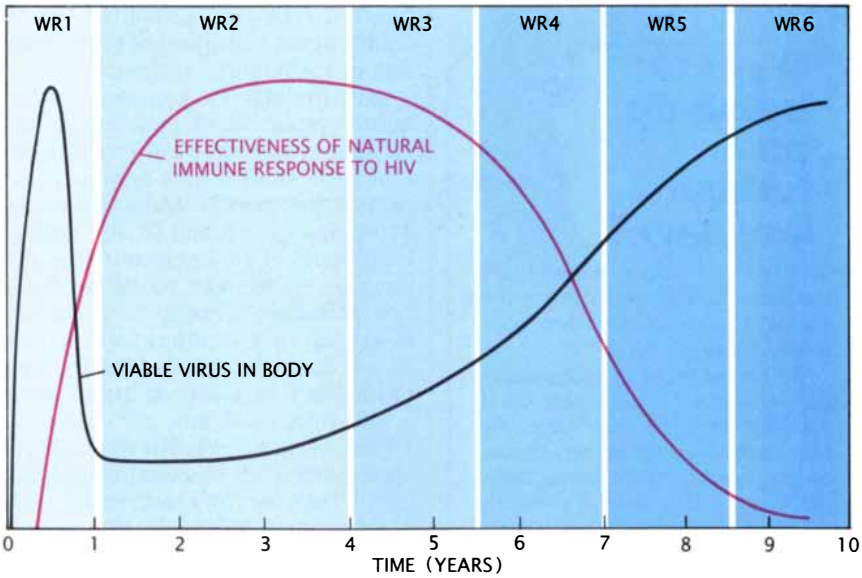


DISEASE PROGRESSION was examined in 906 patients followed for a mean of 14 months (*a*) and in a subset of 62 patients followed for a mean of 36 months (*b*). (Numbers in parentheses reflect the percentage of stage-6 patients who died.) Comparison of the percentage of patients who moved from their initial Walter Reed stage to stage 6 (*c*) or who progressed by one or more stages (*d*) revealed that the longer people with HIV are followed, the more likely it is they will have moved to a severer stage of disease. For example, the shorter study (*pink*) found that about half of the subjects advanced one or more stages by the end of the follow-up period, but the longer study (*blue*) found that more than 90 percent of subjects had advanced. Until better treatments are found, it appears that most (if not all) people who contract HIV will eventually develop AIDS.

the end, some people are unable to walk or communicate effectively. The cause remains a mystery.

The cancers associated with HIV are also perplexing. In addition to Kaposi's sarcoma, which produces tumors in the skin and in the linings of internal organs, they include various lymphomas (cancers of lymphoid tissue) and cancers of the rectum and tongue. Some workers have postulated that Kaposi's sarcoma is caused in part by HIV-induced changes in the amounts or types of cytokines produced by defensive cells or by other cell types. These changes could occur quite early and could explain why Kaposi's sarcoma often appears relatively early in the course of HIV infection.

Certain lymphomas can also develop quite early, lending credence to the notion that *B*-cell hyperactivity plays a role in their development. Lymphomas that arise later might result from cancer-causing viruses that take hold in the course of immune deficiency. If the immune system provides constant surveillance against cancer, as dogma says it does, the lymphomas and other cancers that appear late in HIV disease could also stem from the failure of the compromised immune system to recognize and destroy cancer cells.



BALANCE OF POWER between HIV (*black curve*) and the immune system (*red curve*) shifts during the course of the infection, according to a model proposed by the authors. The amount of HIV in the body soars in the first days of infection, but once the immune system "kicks in," it initially operates normally and reduces the amount of virus. The immune system remains in good control of the virus for several years, but HIV gains ground slowly. At some point the *T*4 cells that orchestrate the immune response become so depleted that the balance of power switches. HIV then replicates wildly, killing the remaining *T*4 cells and hence any vestiges of immune defense.

We expect that looking at cancers and neurological disorders within the framework of the Walter Reed classification system will help to distinguish those that stem from immune dysfunction from those that arise by other means. On another front, the system has made it possible to show that most people infected with HIV follow about the same basic course and do indeed move from stage to stage. The notion that genetic variation in the virus or distinctive features of the patient are the crucial factors influencing the disease course has now fallen by the wayside.

Early studies of disease progression by other investigators were relatively optimistic, suggesting that only about 30 to 40 percent of patients infected with HIV progressed to AIDS. Without a staging system, however, such studies could not say whether the remaining subjects progressed to some intermediate stage of disease.

In contrast, early diagnosis of HIV infection and the use of the Walter Reed system has been standard practice in the U.S. military services for several years (thanks to enlightened military leadership and extraordinary commitment and cooperation among an array of health professionals). The primary aim has been to facilitate optimal medical care and prevention, but proper diagnosis combined with accurate staging has also provided information about the natural history of HIV infection in young adults. In addition to diagnosing more than 5,000 individuals with HIV, military physicians have tracked the course of some 900 of those patients for more than a year, a subset of some 250 patients for more than 18 months and a smaller subset of about 60 patients for more than three years.

Looking at progression by one or more stages and not just at the development of AIDS, we have found that the longer we follow our patients, the greater the percentage is of people who progress to a higher stage. Whereas 54 percent of the patients in the group followed for one year remained in their initial stage at the end of the study period, only about 8 percent of the smaller, three-year group stayed in the same stage. In other words, more than 90 percent of the patients progressed within three years.

When we looked at the progression to stage 6 (opportunistic-infection-defined AIDS), we found that after three years 10 percent of the patients initially in Walter Reed stage 2, 29 percent of those in stage 3, 71 percent of those in stage 4 and 100 percent of those in stage 5 had moved into stage 6 or had died. These findings underscore the grim reality that, in the absence of a scientific solution to HIV, most (and perhaps all) people who are infected with HIV will eventually develop end-stage disease and will die prematurely.

One question relating to disease progression remains: Why is it that the disease progresses slowly? One theory holds that the answer lies with the virus alone. For instance, HIV might be a slow-replicating organism that initially poses little danger to cells but later changes into a more active and highly cytotoxic agent. Another theory postulates that HIV is active in the body throughout the infection but its cytotoxic effects are held in check for a time by the immune system. Although viral factors likely play some role, the activity of the immune system is probably of paramount importance.

One reason we think so is that a range of defensive activities have been shown to occur after infection with HIV, demonstrating that the body initially mounts a vigorous immune response. These activities include the production of different types of antibodies against the virus—some that neutralize it, others that prevent it from binding to cells and still others that stimulate cytotoxic cells to attack

infected cells. The response also includes direct activation of the cellular arm of the immune system.

Such findings suggest that the immune system limits viral replication for quite some time but that the potent virus slowly gains ground. Eventually a threshold is reached (probably between stages 3 and 5): the decline in *T4* cells is so significant that the immune system can no longer function efficiently enough to hold HIV in check. Viral proliferation increases, as does the virus's toxicity, and the balance of power shifts in favor of the virus. With time the decline in *T4* cells is so severe that the immune system becomes essentially nonfunctional. Then the virus proliferates wildly, destroying the *T4* cells that remain in the body.

This model postulates a gradual rise in the amount of virus in the blood with time, rather than a steady, low level followed by a sudden rise. Indeed, with each successive stage of disease the amount of viral protein that can be detected increases, as does the ability to isolate virus from the blood.

The implications of these observations go far beyond proving the validity of a theoretical model. More virus in the body means greater infectivity. Indeed, we in the military, and workers elsewhere, have demonstrated that as the *T4*-cell depletion progresses, an infected person's likelihood of transmitting the disease to a spouse increases. Hence the longer people are infected with HIV and the more immune-deficient they become, the more readily they seem to pass HIV to others. People are also likely to be highly infectious at the earliest moments of infection, before the immune system "kicks in" effectively, and particularly before antibody is detected.

These findings highlight, once again, the importance of medical follow-up and early diagnosis of HIV infection for anyone who has been exposed to the virus, including people who have been in a long-term sexual relationship. Only with such follow-up can physicians undertake the public-health measures, and patients undertake the personal measures, needed to prevent the spread of the disease.

Our report here is less optimistic than many people would wish. Yet we are not discouraged, nor should they be. HIV infection may seem in 1988 to be insurmountable, but it is important to put the current situation in perspective. When the father of one of us (Redfield) was a physician, there was no effective therapy for bacterial diseases. Young children were almost certain to die when they developed rather common bacterial infections such as periorbital cellulitis, which affects the skin and soft tissue around the eyes. He had to have the courage to tell the parents of those children that, although he would do his best, in the end their seemingly healthy child would almost certainly die. This was so in the late 1930's; it was so in the early 1940's. Yet by the late 1940's his practice required a little less courage. With the advent of penicillin, he had a new and important tool for treating bacterial infections. Today most young children with periorbital cellulitis survive.

We do not pretend that HIV will be defeated easily, but doctors and patients should keep in sight the day when medical science will reduce HIV infection to a curable disease. We have no doubt that day will come. In the study of new diseases there must first be a time when physicians can only describe symptoms and treat patients with whatever seems to work best. Then comes an understanding of causation and of the disease's natural course, which enables physicians to provide patients with an early diagnosis and accurate clinical assessment. Next comes the development of effective treatments based on the new knowledge, and then refinement of treatments until a cure is found.

Investigators are completing the descriptive phase and are fully immersed in understanding the hows and whys of the virus. If we persist and are methodical, we shall unquestionably succeed in curing HIV infection.

FURTHER READING

THE WALTER REED STAGING CLASSIFICATION FOR HTLV-III/LAV INFECTION. Robert R. Redfield, D. Craig Wright and Edmund C. Tramont in *The New England Journal of Medicine,* Vol. 314, No. 2, pages 131–132; January 9, 1986.

SHADOW ON THE LAND: HIV INFECTION. Robert R. Redfield and Donald S. Burke in *Viral Immunology,* Vol. 1, No. 1, pages 69–81; Spring, 1987.

THE BRAIN IN AIDS: CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM HIV-1 INFECTION AND AIDS DEMENTIA COMPLEX. Richard W. Price, Bruce Brew, John Sidtis, Marc Rosenblum, Adrienne C. Scheck and Paul Cleary in *Science,* Vol. 239, No. 4840, pages 586–592; February 5, 1988.

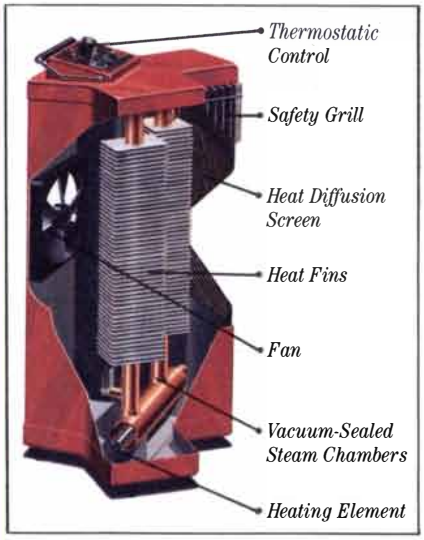
TREATMENT OF INFECTIONS ASSOCIATED WITH HUMAN IMMUNODEFICIENCY VIRUS. Aaron E. Glatt, Keith Chirgwin and Sheldon H. Landesman in *The New England Journal of Medicine,* Vol. 318, No. 22, pages 1439–1448; June 2, 1988.

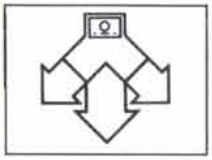
THE ROOM HEATER THAT BEATS OTHERS COLD!

VACUUM TECHNOLOGY TAKES AIR OUT OF OTHER HEATER CLAIMS

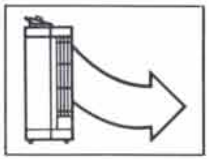
THE TECHNOLOGY: The story begins in the Arctic. A small Colorado company had an order from the U.S. Government to manufacture a vacuum insulated stainless steel canteen that would stand up to hard use and keep liquids from freezing in the torturous Arctic cold. It took the company a great deal of time to perfect the process of "pulling a vacuum" in a sealed metal system so that it stood up to hard use, yet could be manufactured economically. Now, after seven years of additional research and over twenty worldwide patents they have used that original technology to produce a room heating unit that leaps a generation beyond every other heater on the market. At the heart of the Heatech™ heater is the vacuum technology developed to preserve warmth in the Arctic. Here the vacuum is used to cause water to boil almost instantly at approximately 130° instead of the usual 212°. Water inside the sealed Heatech system turns to steam and rises in vertical tubes. There the heat is transferred to fins which in turn heat the cold room air that is then blown through a diffusion screen to bring you warmth where you need it.

THE PERFORMANCE: The system is super fast and effective. Comparison tests show the Heatech doing in 15 minutes what other heaters take up to an hour to do. Inside, as the heat transfer cools the steam, it condenses back into water droplets and the cycle starts again. The vacuum sealed system does not need replenishing and does not require service. The Heatech's unusual patented cabinet design provides greater air flow and more even heat distribution. While warm air from most other heaters simply rises wastefully to the ceiling, Heatech provides a multi-directional heat flow that warms your room more uniformly from the floor up.





Multi-directional heat flow



Heats room from floor up

THE SAFETY FACTOR: The 1500 watt Heatech also sets a new standard in safety. It is one of the few electric heaters on the market not required to carry the UL fire hazard warning sticker on the heater. Recent independent laboratory tests show Heatech's hottest surface temperature is up to 205° lower than other types of heaters tested - making it exceptionally safe for use around children or pets. To further protect against accidents, the Heatech has three separate safety devices — a tipover switch, thermal sensing switch and pressure relief valve.

THE BOTTOM LINE: In recent independent laboratory tests against 4 top competing heaters, Heatech achieved higher, more uniform temperatures faster than any of the other heaters including the best selling ceramic disc heater. No other portable room heater we know of combines the safety, quick heating ability and superior heat distribution of Heatech. That's what we mean by beating the others cold! At 12.5 lbs. and 21"x10"x9", the Heatech is portable and compact, it requires only one square foot of floor space and uses standard 110 volts AC. Its handsome high-tech look comes in a choice of baked enamel finishes - Red, White or Black. Made with American pride, it is backed with a manufacturer's 5-year limited warranty and is UL listed. You can see why the Heatech was named winner of the 1988 Innovator Award at the National Home Center Show! Thanks to an exclusive arrangement with Heatech, you can now obtain this state of the art heater direct from *The Lifestyle Resource*. See for yourself how the Heatech can chase your chills away with portable heat that sets a new generation of standards for performance and safety. Order now while our supply is assured. Available in three colors for **$199.95** #2220 (White); #2230 (Black); #2240 (Red).

FOR THE FASTEST SERVICE ON CREDIT

800-872-5200

CARD ORDERS CALL TOLL-FREE

If you prefer, mail check or credit card number with expiration date and authorized signature. Include $12.95 with each order for UPS and Insurance, along with each item number. Mail to:

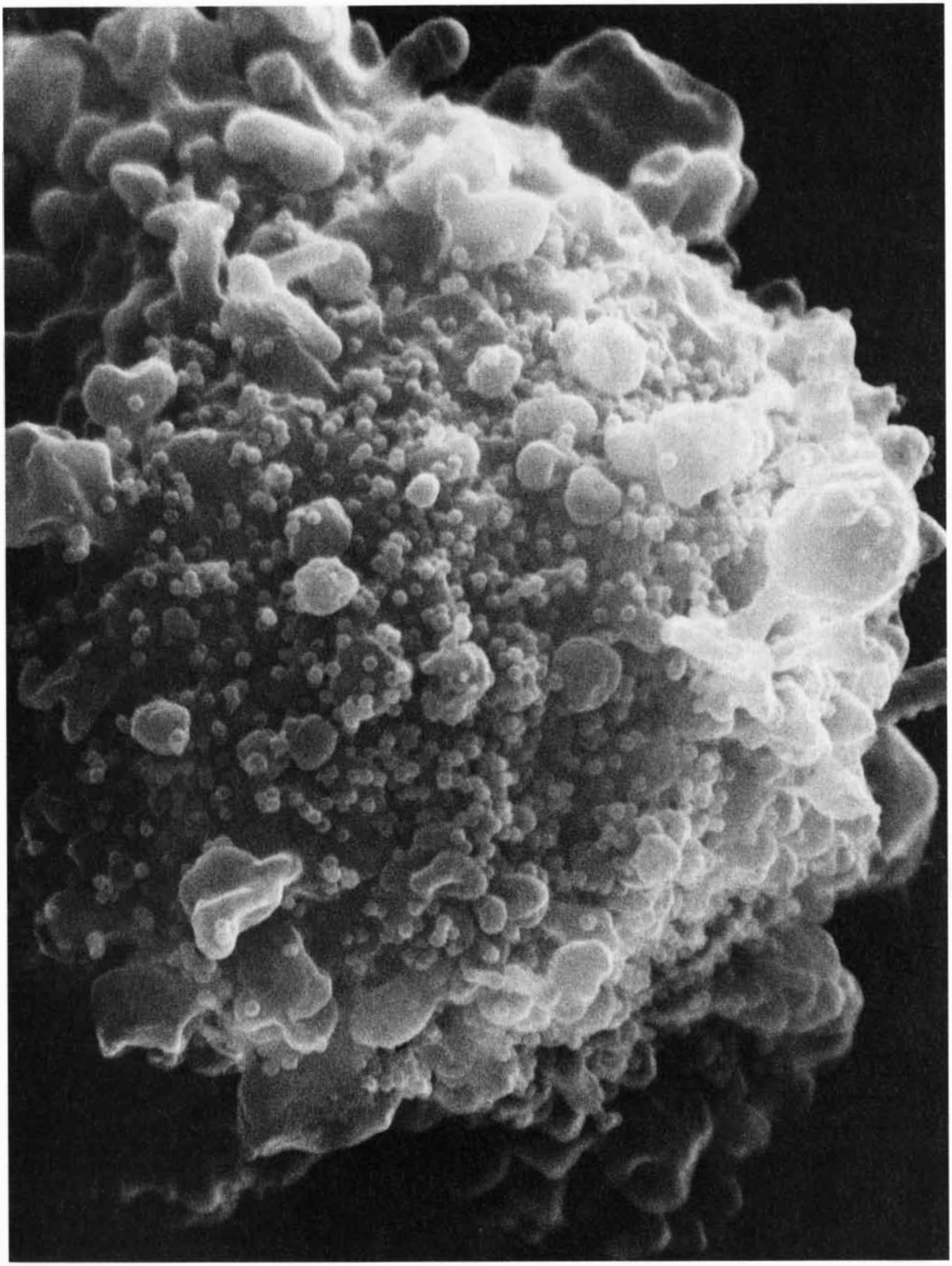
THE LIFESTYLE RESOURCE
DEPT. SFAK18;
921 EASTWIND DR., SUITE 114,
WESTERVILLE, OH 43081

White . . . . . #2220 **$199.95**
Black . . . . . #2230 **$199.95**
Red . . . . . #2240 **$199.95**

NO RISK 30-DAY RETURN PRIVILEGE

THE MEDIA DEVELOPMENT GROUP

©1988 C76 ADVERTISEMENT



INFECTED *T* CELL (a cell of the immune system) produces particles (*small spheres*) of the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) in this image, made by David Hockley of the National Institute for Biological Standards and Control in England. The scanning electron micrograph shows part of the infected cell's convoluted surface, magnified about 20,000 diameters.

HIV Infection: The Cellular Picture

A key finding of AIDS research is that infection begins when HIV binds to a molecule called CD4 on the target cell. Knowledge of that interaction may help in developing therapies or vaccines

by Jonathan N. Weber and Robin A. Weiss

Like all viruses, the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) is an intracellular parasite: the virus particle itself is inert and cannot propagate or do any damage until it enters a host cell. How does the virus actually enter the cell? The answer will help investigators to understand the clinical course of AIDS, the disease caused by the virus. More than that, an understanding of how HIV enters cells may eventually make it possible to develop vaccines or protective medications that can block the action of HIV at the earliest possible stage: before it infects its first host cells.

The first step in any viral infection is the binding of the virus particle to a component of the host cell's membrane. In the case of HIV, workers have found that the virus binds to the molecule known as the CD4 antigen. (An antigen is a molecule that can be recognized by an antibody.) Hence the distribution of CD4 in the body reflects the tropism of HIV: the kinds of cells and tissues the virus infects and destroys. The CD4 antigen is found primarily on cells of the immune system called helper *T* cells (although other kinds of cells also carry it); HIV infection is characterized by the loss of these cells, which causes a deterioration of the immune system.

For some time it has been known that the binding takes place when CD4 interacts with an "envelope" protein of the virus called gp120 (because it is a glycoprotein—a protein containing sugar complexes—with a molecular weight of 120 kilodaltons) that is distributed on the outside of the viral membrane. Investigators are now identifying the specific portions of the CD4 and gp120 molecules that take part in the binding interaction. Such knowledge makes it possible to envisage a two-pronged attack on HIV: denying access to the cellular CD4 receptor, both by covering up the viral gp120 protein and by blocking the receptor.

The chain of experiments that eventually identified CD4 as the molecule to which HIV binds began in June, 1984, when samples of the virus became generally available for research. In one of the earliest experiments, Mika Popovic of the National Institutes of Health studied the growth of HIV in fresh peripheral-blood lymphocytes (white blood cells freshly separated from the bloodstream) and in lines of tumor cells that are able to grow perpetually in culture. He found that HIV grew best in a line of leukemic *T* cells. (The *T* cells, a major class of cells in the immune system, include the helper *T* cells and cells called cytotoxic, or killer, *T* cells.)

At about the same time, David Klatzmann of the Salpêtrière Hospital in Paris noted that in fresh peripheral-blood lymphocytes infected in culture with HIV there was a decrease in the number of cells bearing the CD4 antigen; the decrease was paralleled by an increase in the HIV replication rate. Klatzmann then divided the *T* cells from a sample of peripheral-blood lymphocytes into *T*-helper and *T*-cytotoxic subsets. He found that only helper *T* cells—the cells that bear the CD4 antigen—supported the replication of HIV. Klatzmann's findings dovetailed well with an observation made in 1981 in the first published clinical description of AIDS patients. In that report Michael S. Gottleib of the University of California at Los Angeles School of Medicine had noted that lymphocytes bearing CD4 were reduced in number or absent entirely from the blood of AIDS patients.

Simultaneously in London, Angus G. Dalgleish and Paul R. Clapham in our laboratory at the Institute of Cancer Research tackled the question of the tropism of HIV from another direction. We tested antibodies to various cell-surface antigens to see which of them would block molecules crucial to the binding of the virus. In these experiments we first exposed susceptible *T* cells to the antibodies and then to virus particles. Next we applied various assays to determine how the antibodies had affected HIV's ability to infect the cells. These experiments revealed that monoclonal antibodies (antibodies that bind only to a single, specific molecular target) to the CD4 antigen, but not those to other cell-surface antigens, could block the infectivity of HIV. Klatzmann, using different assays, got similar results.

Another kind of assay took advan-

JONATHAN N. WEBER and ROBIN A. WEISS have been working together since 1985, when Weber joined Weiss's laboratory to get training in virology. Weber is a senior lecturer in infectious disease at the Royal Postgraduate Medical School at Hammersmith Hospital in London. He took his undergraduate degree in archaeology and anthropology at the University of Cambridge and his M.D. at St. Bartholomew's Hospital Medical College in London. He is coeditor of *International AIDS Journal*. Weiss is director of the Institute for Cancer Research in London. He studied at the University of London, where he was awarded a Ph.D. in zoology in 1969. He has been interested in retroviruses since the beginning of his research career; his early work concerned the transmission of retroviruses in chickens, including the Mendelian inheritance of viral genes. In recent years Weiss has concentrated on the retroviruses that cause leukemia and AIDS, with particular attention to their cellular receptors.

tage of a sign of HIV infection we had noted in cell cultures: the formation of "multinucleated syncytia." These are giant cells consisting of several nuclei contained within a single membrane; they form when HIV-infected cells fuse with healthy cells bearing the receptor molecules. We found that antibodies to CD4 could indeed block the formation of syncytia.

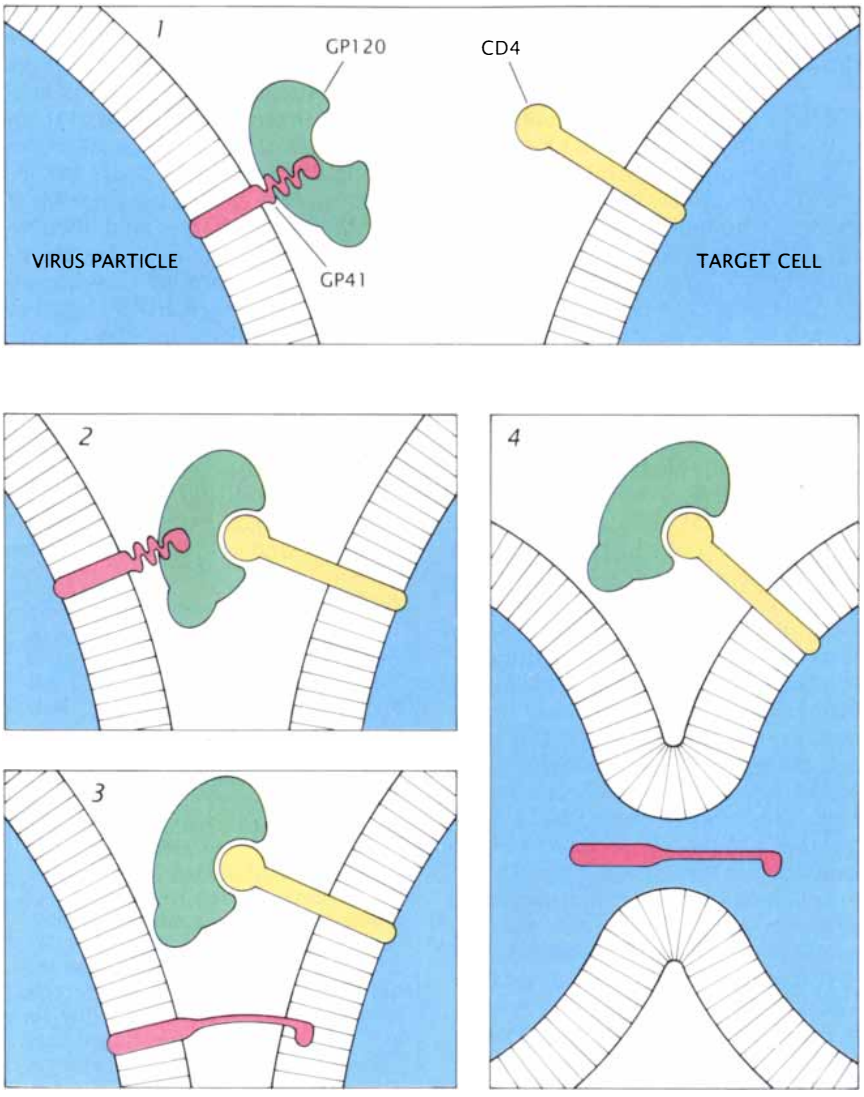
Still another assay for receptors, first developed for work on animal retroviruses by Jan Zavada of the Institute of Virology in Bratislava, is known as a pseudotype assay. This method involves exposing cells that have already been infected with HIV to a second, unrelated virus called vesicular stomatitis virus (VSV). VSV is a plaque-forming virus: it causes the formation of visible plaques made up of dead cells. When HIV-infected cells are "superinfected" with VSV, they produce a number of virus particles that have the envelope proteins of HIV but the genetic material and plaque-forming properties of VSV. These "transvestite" particles are called VSV-(HIV) pseudotypes. Because the pseudotypes have the same envelope characteristics as HIV, they recognize the same receptors and enter the target cell in the same way; their ability to infect particular cells should therefore parallel that of HIV. After they enter the cell, however, they replicate as VSV and form plaques. Hence the appearance of plaques in various kinds of cells indicates the presence on the surface of those cells of the receptor for HIV.

Dalgleish and his colleagues noted that VSV(HIV) pseudotypes would form plaques only among cells bearing the CD4 antigen. Furthermore, the antibodies to CD4 that blocked the formation of syncytia also prevented the formation of plaques.

Subsequently J. Steven McDougal of the Centers for Disease Control in Atlanta (CDC) devised a physical assay for determining whether HIV particles had attached to cells; he found that HIV would bind only to cells bearing the CD4 antigen and, once again, that binding could be inhibited by anti-CD4 monoclonal antibodies. McDougal also showed that gp120 molecules attached to antibodies could draw CD4 molecules from a preparation of cell-membrane material. All these experiments suggested that the CD4 antigen—the disappearance of which had been part of the clinical definition of AIDS from the disease's earliest days—is itself the receptor for HIV.

The strongest evidence that CD4 is the receptor for HIV came in 1986 from Paul Maddon and Richard Axel of the Columbia University College of Physicians and Surgeons. They transferred the gene that encodes the CD4 molecule into HeLa cells, a line of cervical-cancer cells that do not make CD4 and cannot ordinarily be infected with HIV. Maddon and Axel found that the altered, CD4-bearing HeLa cells could now be infected with HIV; when they were infected, they rapidly fused into giant syncytia. Expression of the CD4 gene was enough to confer susceptibility to HIV.

This experiment led to one unexpected result, which has not yet been explained fully. Maddon, working in collaboration with Clapham and Dalgleish in London and McDougal at the CDC, transfected the human CD4 gene into mouse *T* cells; the cells then produced human CD4. HIV particles bound to these altered cells, but there was no evidence that the cells actually became infected: no syncytia were formed and no infectious virus was produced. This was surprising, because mouse cells can indeed produce HIV under certain conditions; for example, Jay A. Levy of the University of California at San Francisco School of Medicine and other investigators successfully transfected the entire HIV genome into mouse cells, which then produced infectious virus. Apparently, however, mouse cells cannot be infected by free HIV particles, even in the



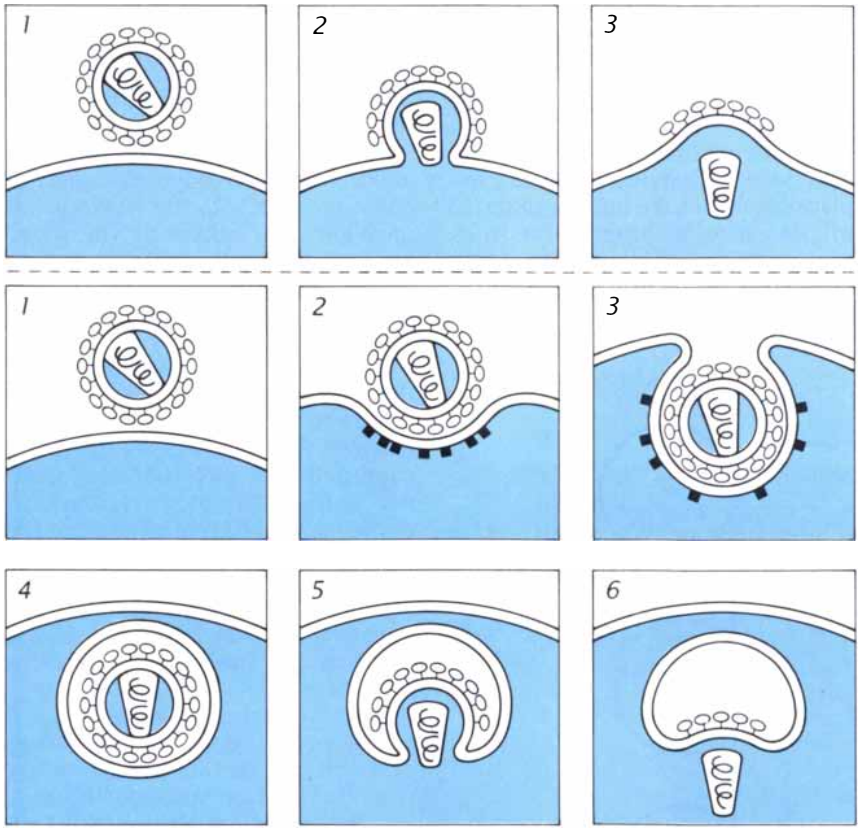
BINDING of a virus particle to a target cell depends on an interaction between a molecule on the surface of the virus and a molecule on the membrane of the target cell. As the virus approaches the cell (*1*), a viral protein designated gp120 binds to a cell-surface molecule known as CD4 (*2*). That interaction uncovers another protein called gp41. One end of the gp41 molecule embeds itself in the cell membrane (*3*), leading to the eventual fusion of the viral membrane and the cell membrane (*4*).

presence of the HIV receptor. Even VSV(HIV) pseudotypes were unable to infect them, although VSV, once it enters mouse cells, can usually replicate perfectly well. These results suggest another component of the cell surface is required for the virus to achieve full entry after it has bound to the cell membrane. The nature of this second factor is not known.

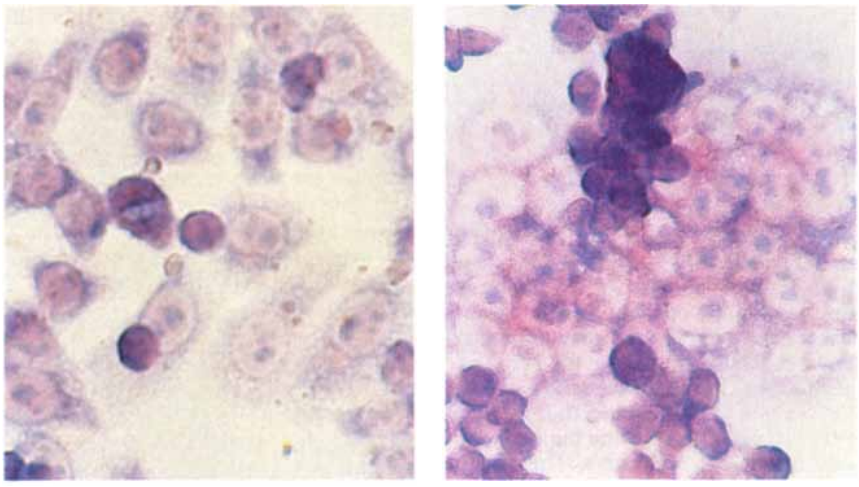
The binding of viral gp120 to cellular CD4 is only the first step of viral entry into the cell. The later steps have been less thoroughly elucidated. For example, how does the virus's genetic material enter the cell? The simplest and likeliest possibility is that the viral membrane simply fuses with the cell membrane, injecting the core of the virus (including its genetic material) into the cell. Another possibility is that the cell membrane forms a small pocket that later becomes an enclosed sac called an endocytic vesicle. The vesicle completely surrounds the virus particle and carries it into the cell. Then a reaction within the cell acidifies the membrane of which the vesicle (now called an endosome) is made. When the endosome is acidified, it undergoes a conformational change and fuses with the viral membrane, releasing the viral core into the cell's interior.

Recent evidence casts doubt on the relevance of this mechanism, which is known as receptor-mediated endocytosis. Barry S. Stein of the Stanford University School of Medicine and Myra O. McClure of our laboratory have shown independently that the entry of HIV into the cell is independent of acidity: drugs that block the acidification of endosomes do not prevent HIV infection. In addition, Dan R. Littman of San Francisco and Maddon have shown that mutations in the "tail" of the CD4 antigen (the part within the cell) that prevent the antigen's incorporation into endosomes do not inhibit HIV infection. It is likely, then, that HIV enters the cell by fusing directly with the cell membrane.

The direct-fusion mechanism would also help to explain the cell-to-cell fusion that leads to the formation of syncytia. Syncytia form because HIV-infected cells manufacture gp120 and carry it on their cell membrane. When an infected cell meets a healthy cell that bears the CD4 antigen, the gp120 of the infected cell can bind to the CD4 of the healthy cell. Then the two cells join, probably by direct fusion. The resulting syncytium continues to carry gp120 on its cell membrane, and so it can continue to fuse with healthy



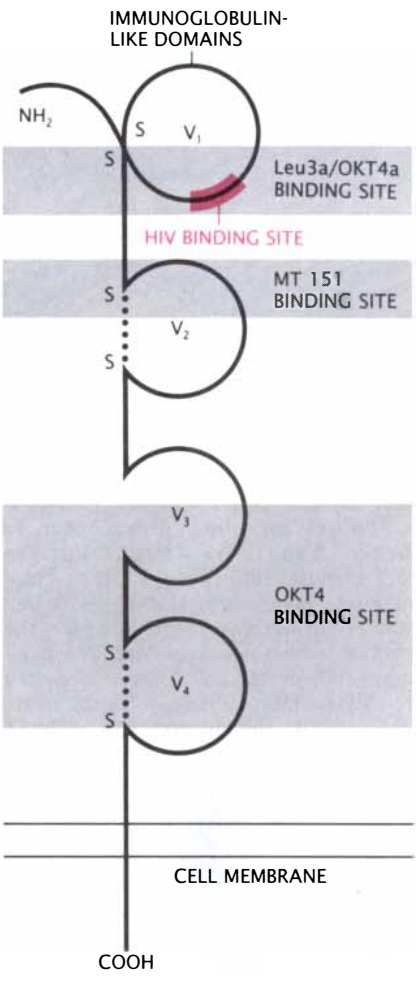
ENTRY of the virus's core, including its genetic material, into the target cell probably takes place by one of two mechanisms. The likeliest (*top*) is direct fusion. In this mechanism the virus particle binds to the cell (*1*) and the viral membrane fuses with the cell membrane (*2*), ejecting the core material into the cell (*3*). The other mechanism (*bottom*), called receptor-mediated endocytosis, also begins when the virus particle binds to the cell membrane (*1*). In the next stage, however, the cell membrane buckles inward to form a pocket (*2*) known as a coated pit. The membrane encloses the virus particle (*3*) and detaches from the cell surface to form a body called an endosome (*4*). Eventually the viral membrane fuses with the membrane of the endosome (*5*), releasing the viral core into the interior of the cell (*6*).



MULTINUCLEATED SYNCYTIA, clusters of many nuclei within a single cell membrane, are a sign of HIV infection in cell cultures. They form when infected cells, which make gp120 and carry it on their surface, fuse with healthy cells bearing the CD4 molecule. The photograph at the left shows HeLa cells, a line of cervical-cancer cells that do not make the CD4 molecule and cannot be infected with HIV. They have been exposed to HIV, but no syncytia have formed. The photograph at the right shows HeLa cells that have been genetically altered so that they make the CD4 molecule. These cells, on being exposed to HIV, have become infected and have formed syncytia.

cells. One infected cell may eventually bring together as many as 50 cells.

In any case, whether direct fusion or receptor-mediated endocytosis is the correct model, the viral membrane must fuse with a membrane of the cell. How does that happen? According to a plausible model, the binding of gp120 to CD4 causes a change in the shape of the gp120 protein, revealing a part of another envelope protein, known as gp41, that is normally hidden under the gp120 molecule. This region of gp41 is hydrophobic: it will embed itself in a cell membrane rather than remaining exposed to the aqueous solution surrounding the cell. Once it is uncovered, the hydrophobic region of gp41 interacts with the adjacent cell membrane and induces the viral membrane and the cell membrane to fuse together. It is not clear whether some receptor on the cell surface other than the CD4 antigen binds to gp41 or whether gp41 embeds itself directly in the cell membrane.



CD4 MOLECULE cannot yet be depicted in detail, but some features of its structure are known. Most of the molecule lies outside the cell, but a segment of it passes through the cell membrane and ends in a short tail inside the cell. Four sections of the molecule, designated V1, V2, V3 and V4, resemble the so-called variable domains of some immunoglobulin (antibody) molecules. The site to which the HIV gp120 molecule binds (*color*) lies in the outermost section. Shaded regions indicate areas in which binding sites of certain monoclonal antibodies (antibodies that recognize specific molecular configurations) lie. The so-called Leu3a/OKT4a group of monoclonal antibodies binds at the same site as HIV and can block infection by HIV.

After HIV enters the cell, its genetic material, which is encoded in RNA, is converted into DNA. The DNA "provirus" is then integrated into the DNA of the target cell. This means that the infection is persistent for the cell's lifetime and that of its progeny if it multiplies. The integrated virus may remain completely "silent," or else it may manifest itself in any one of at least three ways.

First, the viral genome may cause a persistent infection, in which some new virus particles are created but few cells are killed. Second, infection may lead to the creation of syncytia, which die soon after forming. Syncytia are a dominant effect of HIV infection in cell culture. In human beings they are sometimes seen (particularly in the brain) during later stages of infection, but it is not clear whether they play a role in the early pathogenesis of AIDS.

A third possible result of HIV infection is the rapid death of cells without the formation of syncytia. It is not yet known how HIV kills cells. Perhaps some product encoded by the HIV genes is directly toxic. Alternatively, perhaps the gp120 that is made and embedded in cell membranes as a result of infection binds to CD4 that is already there; such binding could damage the cell's membrane systems. The host's immune response also shapes the fate of infected cells, since the immune system can recognize viral proteins on the surface of infected cells and destroy them.

The distribution of HIV-infected cells in the body is determined primarily by the distribution of cells bearing CD4. The CD4 antigen was first identified by its presence on certain *T* cells, and indeed much of its normal function seems to involve assisting the complex network of communication among immune cells.

T cells bearing CD4 interact with cells known as antigen-presenting cells, which locate foreign antigens and display them on their own cell membrane, together with molecules known as Class II Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC) glycoproteins. When helper *T* cells recognize this combination of an antigen and a Class II MHC glycoprotein, they initiate an immune response against other cells bearing the antigen, such as foreign or infected cells. It is thought that an interaction between CD4 antigens on the *T* cells and Class II MHC glycoproteins on the antigen-presenting cells is a crucial part of the encounter between the cells.

It is now known that *T* cells are not the only cells that have the CD4 antigen embedded in their membrane. As many as 40 percent of the peripheral-blood monocytes (cells that mature to become the scavenger cells known as macrophages), as well as certain antigen-presenting cells in the lymph nodes, skin and other organs, also express CD4 and can be infected by HIV. About 5 percent of the body's *B* cells (cells responsible for the production of antibodies) may also express CD4 and be susceptible to infection by HIV. In all these cells the presence of CD4 can be shown relatively easily.

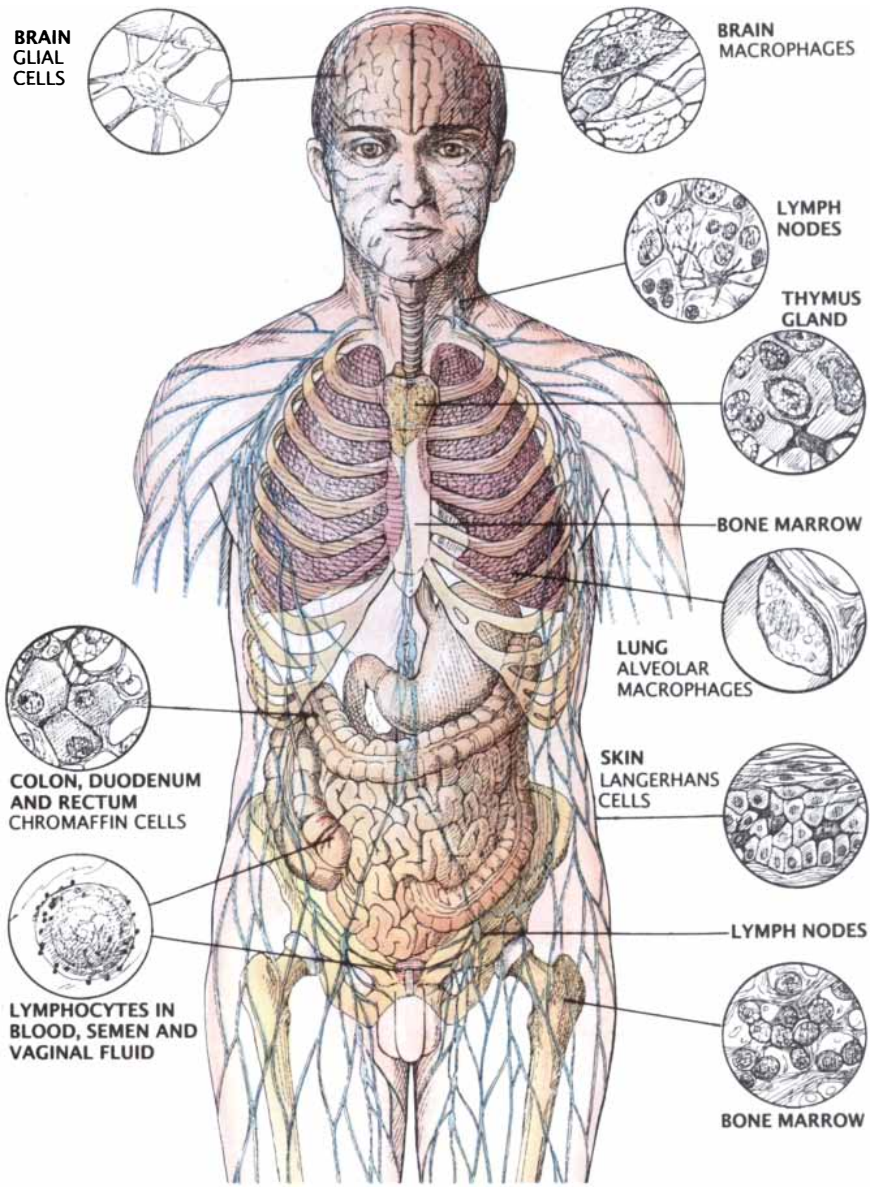
On the other hand, in some other kinds of cells that can be infected by HIV in culture it is not possible to detect CD4 directly. These include certain cells of the brain known as glial cells, a range of malignant brain-tumor cells and some cell lines derived from cancers of the bowel. Nevertheless, although these cells do not produce detectable amounts of CD4, they do contain low levels of messenger RNA encoding the CD4 protein, indicating that they produce some CD4. Apparently the expression of only a very small amount of CD4 is sufficient for infection by HIV.

Cells of the gut also do not produce appreciable amounts of CD4, but Cecilia Cheng-Mayer and Levy at San Francisco have recently shown that the gut cells known as chromaffin cells do sometimes appear to be infected with HIV in vivo. They suggest that such a gut infection may be what leads to the AIDS-associated weight loss and emaciation known in Africa as Slim Disease. The role of CD4 in infections of brain cells and gut cells in vivo cannot be determined without further research. It is possible that in these cases the HIV particle binds to an alternative receptor molecule.

A number of workers have recently determined precisely which part of the CD4 molecule is the binding site for HIV. Most of the molecule lies outside the cell, but a small

segment passes through the cell membrane and ends in a short intracellular "tail." The extracellular region consists of four domains that are similar in some ways to the "variable domains" of antibody molecules.

One way to determine the precise location of the binding site is to expose CD4 molecules to monoclonal antibodies that recognize various epitopes, or molecular shapes, on the CD4 molecule and note which antibodies block the binding of HIV to CD4. One group of antibodies, represented by the antibodies designated Leu3a and OKT4a, is particularly efficient at blocking the binding of HIV. Quentin J. Sattentau and Peter C. L. Beverley of University College London have used large panels of anti-CD4 monoclonal antibodies to draw a "map" of the HIV binding site (that is, to determine which regions of the CD4 molecule are most important in binding HIV). They have found that the Leu3a antibody blocks not only HIV-1 and HIV-2 but also many strains of the simian immunodeficiency virus (SIV) [see "The Origins of the AIDS Virus," by Max Essex and Phyllis J. Kanki, page 64]. One implication of this finding is that the region of gp120 that is most important in binding to the cell is highly conserved, even among strains of virus whose envelope proteins are otherwise very different, having fewer than 40 percent of their amino acids (the basic building blocks of protein) in common. In another study, McClure and Sattentau have examined how well various epitopes of CD4 have been conserved during the course of evolution. They have demonstrated that the Leu3a monoclonal antibody reacts with all primate lymphocytes, including those of human beings, the great apes and African, Asian and New World monkeys, and prevents them from being infected in vitro with HIV. (In vivo most monkeys are not susceptible to HIV infection.) The implication is that the relevant parts of CD4 have been preserved even as the ancestors of these species diverged in other ways.



DISTRIBUTION OF TISSUES in the body that can be infected with HIV is closely linked to the distribution of cells bearing the CD4 molecule. With the possible exceptions of glial cells in the brain and chromaffin cells in the colon, duodenum and rectum, every cell that can be infected with HIV carries the CD4 molecule on its surface.

A further way to determine which parts of the CD4 and gp120 molecules are crucial for binding is to introduce deliberate mutations in the genes that encode the molecules. For example, an investigator might simply delete the genetic sequence that encodes a region of the CD4 molecule and test the resulting mutant's ability to bind HIV.

Early experiments, in which large sections of the CD4 molecule were deleted, indicated that the amino-terminal domain of the molecule (the section farthest from the cell membrane) is essential for the binding of gp120. Ned Landau and Littman at San Francisco have confirmed these results in experiments in which segments of mouse CD4 were combined with segments of human CD4. Mouse CD4 is broadly similar to the human molecule, but it is not recognized by gp120 or by the monoclonal antibodies that are specific to human CD4. The "chimeric" molecules do bind gp120 very well if the first 100 amino acids at the amino-terminal end of the molecule are human, even if the rest of the molecule is derived from the mouse. (The CD4 molecule as a whole consists of 433 amino acids.)

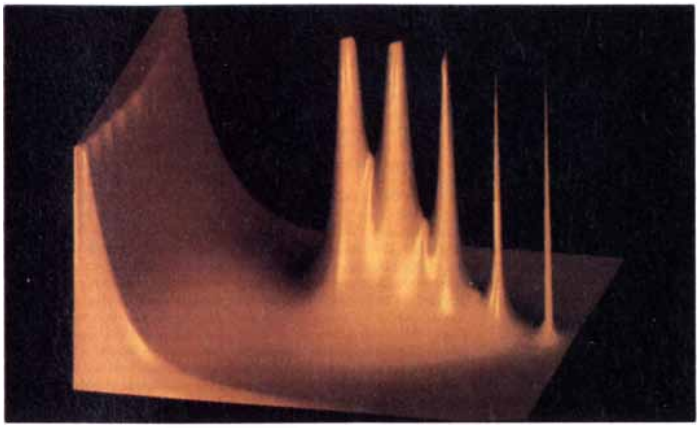
In experiments that were even more specific, Andrew Peterson and Brian Seed of the Harvard Medical School made hundreds of tiny "point mutations" in the human CD4 gene. They found that about seven amino acids residing near the middle of the initial 100-amino-acid segment are crucial for recognition by gp120 and by such monoclonal antibodies as Leu3a and OKT4a, which can block the binding of gp120. The major site on CD4 that is recognized by gp120, then, is a small region in the outermost part of the CD4 molecule.

The parts of gp120 that are essential for binding have also been analyzed by mutagenesis. William A. Haseltine's

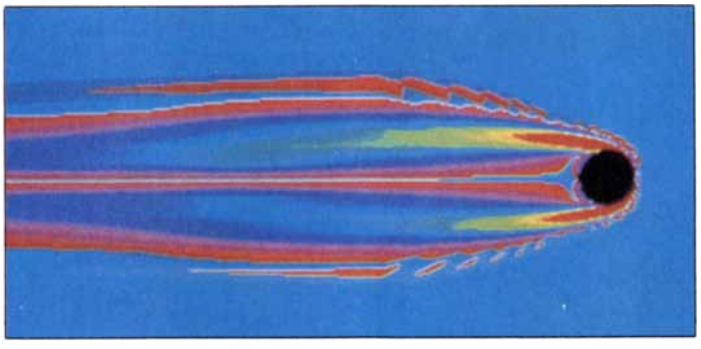
EXAMINE A FREE COPY

The publishers of *Supercomputing Review* invite you to examine their premier issue without cost or obligation *(see offer below). Supercomputing Review* is a brand new monthly magazine for science and business which brings you important new information on a broad range of high performance computing topics. • Make no mistake, high performance computing has come of age. Prices are falling and the field is growing at an astounding 40% annual rate. Tomorrow, next week, next month or next year, there *will be* an important development in high performance computing that will have a direct effect on your career. You'll read about it in *Supercomputing Review.*

Human imagination teamed with a minisupercomputer to create the humanoids shown above. Increasingly, as prices for high performance systems drop, they are being utilized for high quality animation and visualization. *(Photo courtesy of Convex Computer and Sogitec.)*



Above: This dramatic visualization of the Janke-Emde function, a complex gamma function, was made with a super graphics workstation. *(Photo courtesy of Ardent Computer Corp.)* **Below:** This simulation of turbulent flow around a dowel was created by a supercomputer and shows changes in vorticity. High performance computing systems have many applications including finite element analysis, electronics design, economics, biomedicine, physics, chemistry and materials science. *(Photo courtesy of T. Tezduyar and the Minnesota Supercomputer Insitute.)*



OUR OFFER AND GUARANTEE

Send or call for your free examination copy of the premier issue of *Supercomputing Review.* We will enter your charter subscription for $48 (11 more issues). As a charter subscriber you will always be entitled to our lowest prevailing subscription rate.

You must be 100% satisfied.

If for any reason you do not wish to continue with your subscription, simply write "cancel" across our invoice when it arrives and return it to us. That ends the matter. No questions asked. The premier issue is yours to keep.

SEND NO MONEY

FOR FASTER SERVICE
CALL TOLL FREE 24 HOURS
1-800-443-0100 Ext. 241

SEND FOR YOUR FREE COPY TODAY!

MAIL TO: SCR, 8445 Camino Santa Fe, San Diego, CA 92121

YES send me a free examination copy of the premier issue of *Supercomputing Review* and enter my one year charter subscription for $48 (11 more issues). I understand I must be 100% satisfied or I will simply write "cancel" across your invoice and return it to you. The premier issue is mine to keep in any event.

NAME _____

ORGANIZATION _____

ADDRESS _____

ZIP _____

MAIL: *Supercomputing Review,* 8445 Camino Santa Fe, San Diego, CA 92121
or
FAX: High speed facsimile number - (619) 452-4224

group at the Dana-Farber Cancer Institute and Larry Lasky's group at Genentech Inc. have shown that three distinct regions of gp120 are essential for the recognition and binding of CD4. Probably these regions come together to form a pocket that fits the binding site on CD4 when the gp120 molecule folds into its normal three-dimensional configuration.

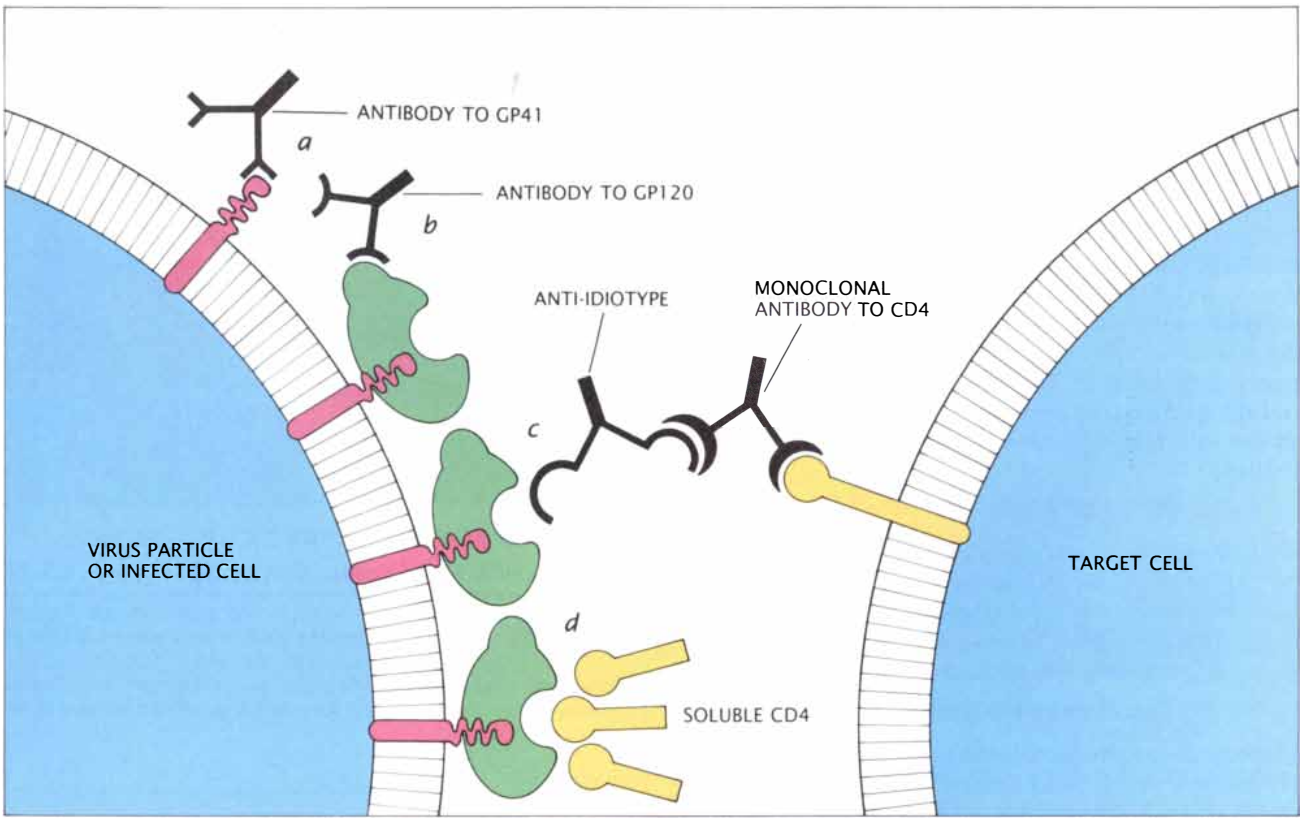
Knowledge of the interactions through which HIV binds to target cells suggests several possible ways of blocking HIV infection. One method would be to inject subjects with so-called soluble CD4 molecules, which consist of segments of the portion of CD4 that normally lies outside the cell membrane. Soluble CD4 has been produced through recombinant-DNA technology by a number of laboratories and biotechnology companies. The molecules bind tightly to gp120; when they saturate all the gp120 on the virus's envelope, they neutralize its infectivity. Because the CD4-binding site on gp120 is essentially the same in all strains of HIV and SIV, soluble CD4 can neutralize any strain of the virus, making it an attractive candidate for treatment.

Soluble CD4 would have some disadvantages as an AIDS therapy, however. First of all, it would have to be injected repeatedly in large doses. In addition, soluble CD4 might bind to Class II MHC glycoproteins, interfering with their normal function. That would exacerbate the immune deficiency of AIDS rather than curing it. The problem could be surmounted, however, if gp120 and the Class II MHC glycoproteins recognize different sites on CD4. It might then be possible to make smaller segments of the CD4 molecule that correspond just to the site recognized by gp120.

Another way to exploit our knowledge of the CD4 molecule involves molecules known as anti-idiotype antibodies [see "Anti-idiotypes and Immunity," by Ronald C. Kennedy, Joseph L. Melnick and Gordon R. Dreesman; SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, July, 1986]. A number of investigators, led by Ronald C. Kennedy and Gordon R. Dreesman of the Southwest Foundation for Biomedical Research in San Antonio, have inoculated mice with monoclonal antibodies that recognize the part of CD4 that is the binding site for gp120. These monoclonal antibodies are, in a sense, "negative images" of the binding site: they fit around the binding site on CD4 as a mitten fits a hand. In response to such an inoculation, the mouse immune system generates antibodies that bind to the monoclonal antibody. Some of these new antibodies, the so-called anti-idiotypes, fit precisely into the monoclonal antibody's CD4-binding site; they are new hands that fit inside the mitten.

In some cases the anti-idiotype has a shape very similar to that of the site on CD4 that is recognized by gp120. In a sense, then, these anti-idiotypes resemble CD4; like soluble CD4, they can bind to viral gp120 and should therefore be able to neutralize the infectivity of HIV.

Thus it may be possible to use anti-CD4 monoclonal antibodies as a kind of vaccine in human beings. In response to an injection of anti-CD4 monoclonal antibodies, the immune



POTENTIAL AIDS THERAPIES might block the binding of the virus particle or an infected cell to a target cell. Among the simplest therapies are antibodies that bind to gp41 (*a*) or to gp120 (*b*). In another approach (*c*) the subject would be inoculated with monoclonal antibodies that bind to the CD4 molecule. The presence of these antibodies might stimulate the patient's immune system to produce "anti-idiotypes": a second set of antibodies, which would bear some resemblance to the CD4 molecule. The anti-idiotypes might bind to gp120 molecules, blocking them off and preventing them from binding to CD4 on target cells. Still another approach (*d*) would be to inject the subject with "soluble CD4" molecules (which consist of the portion of CD4 that normally lies outside the cell membrane). Soluble CD4 would bind tightly to gp120, blocking infection.

system might produce anti-idiotypes that bind to the virus and neutralize it. These anti-idiotypes would protect against all strains of the virus, because all strains of HIV recognize the same site on the CD4 molecule.

The actual neutralizing effect of such anti-idiotypes has been investigated independently by Dalgleish and by Sattentau and Beverley. They find that anti-idiotype antibodies do indeed neutralize HIV, but only very weakly. There are several possible explanations for such weak neutralization. First, it may be that the anti-idiotype antibody does not fit the gp120 protein very well. Second, the part of the gp120 molecule that recognizes CD4 probably resides in a pocket or crevice within the molecule, so that the relatively large antibodies cannot gain access to it easily. Third, the anti-idiotypes may not actually neutralize HIV at all; instead they may stimulate the immune system to produce another set of antibodies that have the opposite affinity: anti-anti-idiotypes, which might block the CD4 receptor just as the original antibody does.

People who are infected with HIV generate an impressive immune response to the virus. They produce antibodies to all the viral proteins, and their immune systems activate the various types of killer and scavenger cells that are part of any normal immune response. Yet once infection has occurred, these responses do not appear to halt the progress of the disease. Perhaps our increasing knowledge of the viral envelope and the cellular protein to which it binds will provide new approaches to defeating the virus.

FURTHER READING

THE CD4 (T4) ANTIGEN IS AN ESSENTIAL COMPONENT OF THE RECEPTOR FOR THE AIDS RETROVIRUS. Angus G. Dalgleish, Peter C. L. Beverley, Paul R. Clapham, Dorothy H. Crawford, Melvyn F. Greaves and Robin A. Weiss in *Nature,* Vol. 312, No. 5996, pages 763–767; December 20–27, 1984.

THE T4 GENE ENCODES THE AIDS VIRUS RECEPTOR AND IS EXPRESSED IN THE IMMUNE SYSTEM AND THE BRAIN. Paul Jay Maddon, Angus G. Dalgleish, J. Steven McDougal, Paul R. Clapham, Robin A. Weiss and Richard Axel in *Cell,* Vol. 47, No. 3, pages 333–348; November 7, 1986.

GENETIC ANALYSIS OF MONOCLONAL ANTIBODY AND HIV BINDING SITES ON THE HUMAN LYMPHOCYTE ANTIGEN CD4. Andrew Peterson and Brian Seed in *Cell,* Vol. 54, No. 1, pages 65–72; July 1, 1988.

AIDS Therapies

One drug—AZT—is already in clinical use. New knowledge of HIV makes it possible to design drugs that interrupt specific phases of the viral life cycle. More effective therapies are on the way

by Robert Yarchoan, Hiroaki Mitsuya and Samuel Broder

Back in 1984, when AIDS was conclusively shown to be caused by the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), many investigators and clinicians doubted that a drug capable of attacking the virus directly would ever be found. Their fears were understandable: past efforts to find antiviral drugs had turned up only a handful of effective agents. Moreover, retroviruses such as HIV present a particularly elusive target: they can integrate into the genome of body cells, where they can lie dormant and go undetected for long periods of time.

In the case of HIV, the problem is exacerbated by the virus's ability to infect a variety of tissues and cells in the body. In particular, the virus can hide in cells of the central nervous system, where it is protected by the blood-brain barrier, which many drugs cannot pierce. Even if certain drugs could cross the barrier, brain cells already damaged by the virus may never heal. Also, secondary diseases associated with AIDS, such as Kaposi's sarcoma, aggressive lymphomas and certain opportunistic infections, can lead to complications that may be difficult to eradicate in their own right. The complexity of HIV, combined with the devastating nature of the disease itself, led many to regard AIDS as a uniquely challenging and perhaps insurmountable problem.

That grim prognosis, however, has improved in a remarkably short time. A survey of off-the-shelf antiviral substances, initiated in our laboratory at the National Cancer Institute (NCI), turned up one, azidothymidine (AZT), that has already been shown to prolong the lives of certain AIDS patients. In the past four years investigators have come to understand the life cycle of the AIDS virus better than that of perhaps any other virus, and with that understanding we have begun to be able to rationally design drug therapies aimed at specific stages during which the virus might be vulnerable. We expect such drugs to have a major impact on this disease in the future.

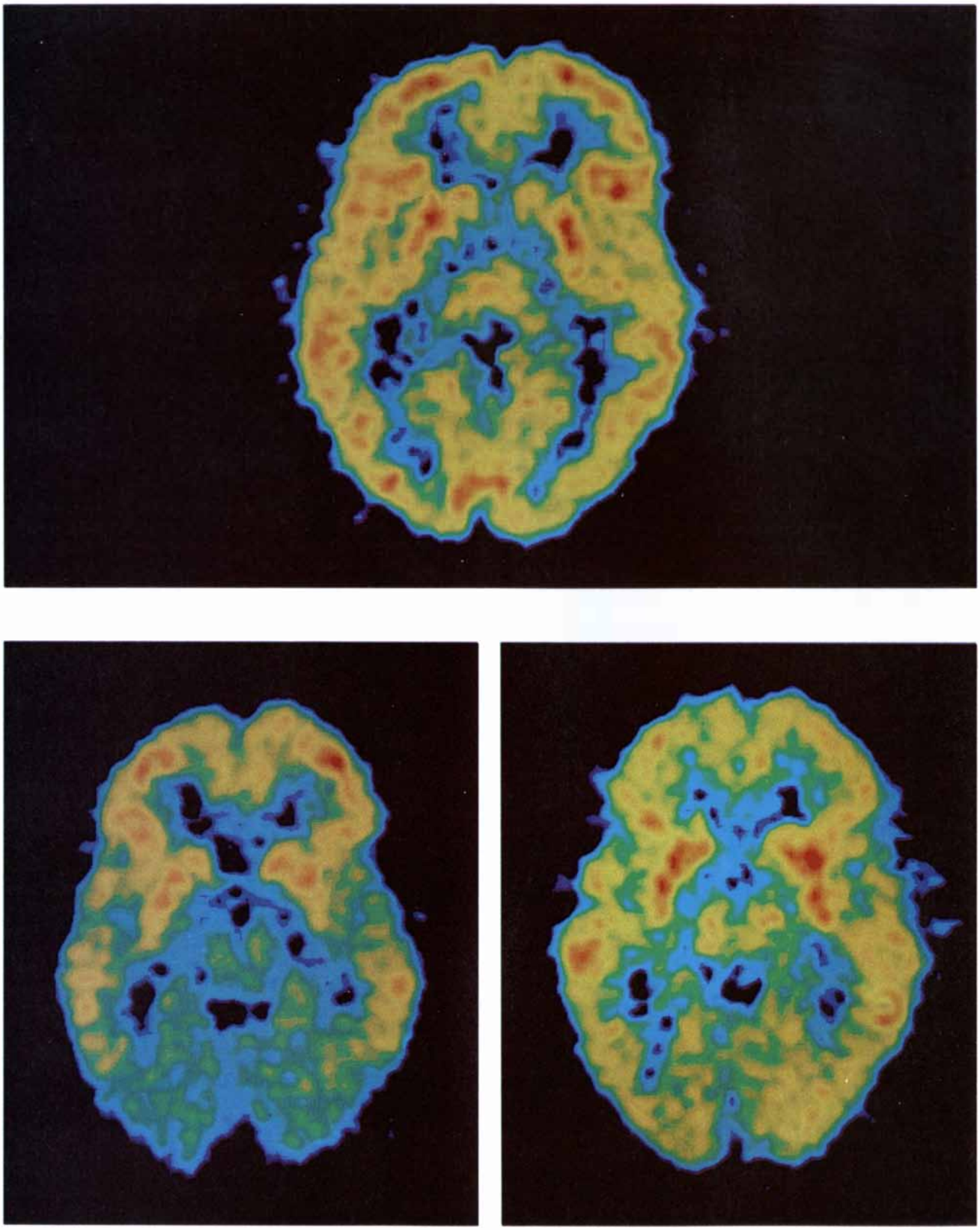
Any therapeutic agent against an infection caused by a pathogen, whether it is a virus, bacteria, fungus or protozoan, must either kill the pathogen or stop it from multiplying. This it must do without harming the infected host significantly. Generally such drugs accomplish their task by attacking a biochemical pathway unique to the pathogen. In the case of bacteria this is relatively easy to do, because there are many differences between the structure and metabolism of bacterial cells and those of mammalian cells. Penicillin, for example, interferes with the synthesis of bacterial cell walls; mammalian cells, because they lack these cell walls, are not affected by the drug.

Viruses present a more formidable problem. Viruses are simply packets of genetic material (RNA in the case of the AIDS virus) cloaked in glycoproteins and lipids. They cannot replicate on their own. Instead they infect cells of another organism and commandeer the cells' genetic machinery in order to reproduce. When viruses are actively replicating, it is often difficult to distinguish between viral proteins that interact with the cell and host-cell proteins themselves. The host cells' intimate involvement in many stages of the life cycle of the virus makes it difficult to find agents that selectively inhibit viral replication while damaging the host as little as possible.

Moreover, virtually no drug—not even penicillin—is completely devoid of side effects and toxicity. One must therefore always consider the balance between harm to the pathogen and harm to the host. An essential aspect of any potential drug is its "therapeutic index": the ratio of the toxic dose to the effective dose. Drugs to treat a minor illness must have a high therapeutic index. For a life-threatening illness such as AIDS, one may have to accept drugs with a lower therapeutic index, at least in the beginning.

Against this background one can begin to appreciate some of the considerations surrounding the search for AIDS therapies. In the summer of 1984 two of us (Mitsuya and Broder) obtained the AIDS virus from Robert C. Gallo's group and began testing a number of substances for activity against HIV. Many of these had previously been shown to be active against mouse retroviruses by a number of investigators, including Wolfram Ostertag of the Max Planck Institute for Experimental Medicine in Göttingen, Philip Furmanski of the Michigan Cancer Foundation, Joel A. Huberman of the Roswell Park Memorial Institution and Eric De Clercq of the Rega Institute in Leuven, Belgium. Their work had languished in relative obscurity for years because no pathogenic human retroviruses had yet been identified—and in any case many people assumed that retroviral infections were by their very nature untreatable. The urgent search for a drug against AIDS revived our interest in this earlier work. By the

ROBERT YARCHOAN, HIROAKI MITSUYA and SAMUEL BRODER are in the Clinical Oncology Program of the National Cancer Institute (NCI). In 1984 they began searching for antiretroviral AIDS therapies. Yarchoan, a senior investigator, earned his M.D. from the University of Pennsylvania in 1975. He joined the NCI in 1978, where he specialized in viral immunology and later focused on AIDS. Mitsuya received an M.D. in 1975 and a Doctor of Medical Science degree in 1982 from the Kumamoto University Medical School in Japan. He joined the NCI in 1982, where he developed the assay system used to find the anti-HIV activity of dideoxynucleosides. Broder, who is head of the program, received his M.D. in 1970 from the University of Michigan. He joined the NCI in 1972. He was among the first to identify antiviral drugs that could be moved quickly from the test tube into AIDS patients.



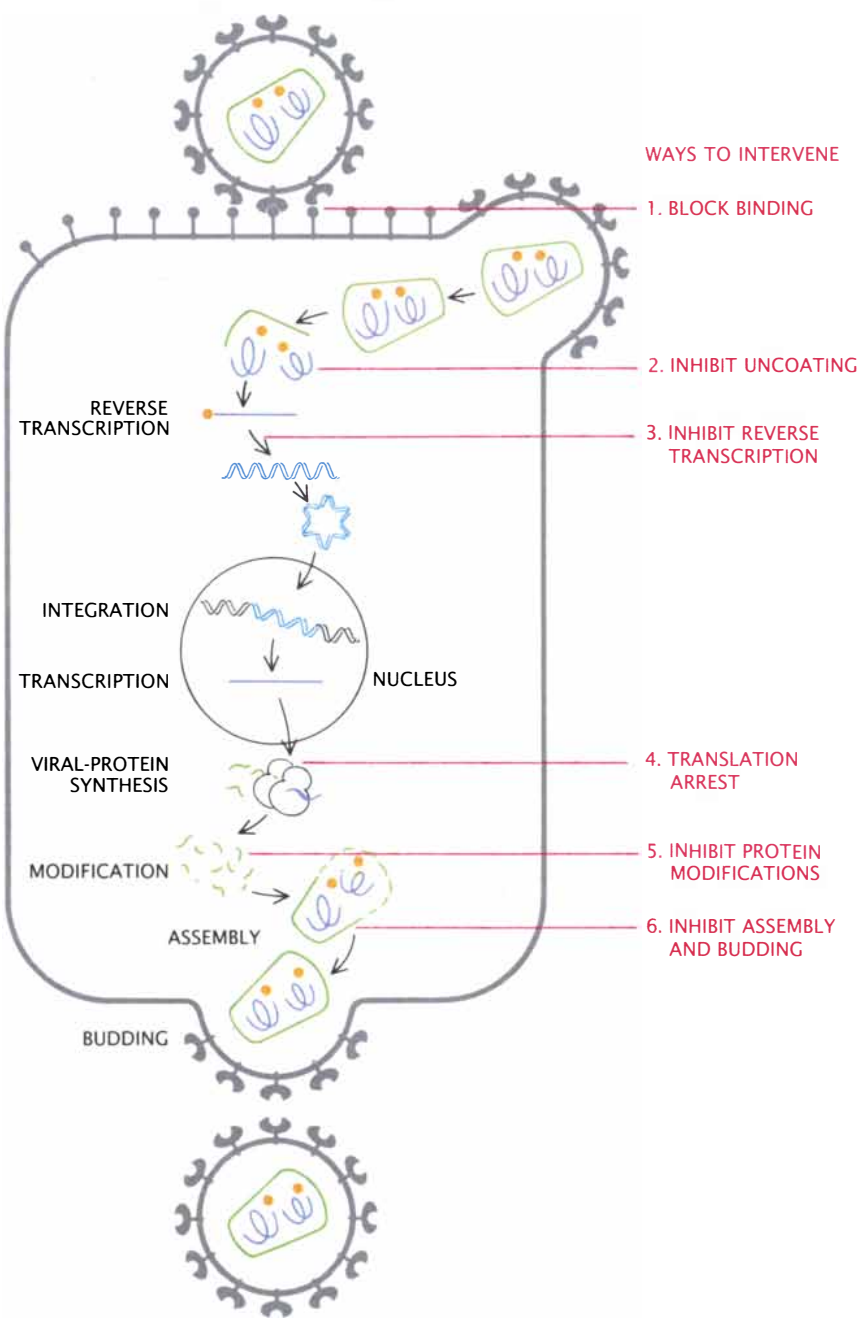
THREE BRAIN SCANS reveal that HIV-induced dementia can be relieved by treatment with azidothymidine (AZT). The scans were made by the technique called positron-emission tomography. Red and yellow regions correspond to areas of high metabolic activity. The scan at the top is that of a healthy individual. The one at the bottom left is from a patient with dementia caused by HIV infection; it shows relatively reduced activity in several brain regions. The scan at the bottom right is from the same patient after treatment with AZT. Metabolic activity became closer to normal. The patient's intellectual function also improved. The scans were made by Steven M. Larson, Gary Berg and Arturo Brunetti of the Clinical Center of the National Institutes of Health. The Wellcome Research Laboratories supplied the AZT used in all our studies.

late spring of 1985, 15 of the 300 drugs tested had been found to stop HIV replication in the test tube.

One of these was 3′-azido-2′,3′-dideoxythymidine, or AZT (also called azidothymidine or zidovudine). We began an intensive effort to develop AZT as a drug suitable for the therapy of AIDS. We gave the drug to the first patient on July 3, 1985. By the end of that year our group, in collaboration with workers at Duke University and the Wellcome Research Laboratories in Durham, N.C., could infer that AZT was active in some HIV-infected patients. By September, 1986, clinical studies at 12 U.S. medical centers demonstrated that AZT can improve both the survival period and the quality of life for patients with AIDS. For the first time, a drug was shown to exert a positive effect against a pathogenic retroviral infection. An intensive global effort is now under way to find other agents for the treatment of AIDS.

To understand how these agents might work, one must consider the structure and replicative cycle of the AIDS virus. In HIV and other retroviruses, genetic information flows in a backward, or "retro," direction: from RNA to DNA, whereas the usual direction for other organisms is from DNA to RNA. Retroviruses achieve this feat by means of a special enzyme, reverse transcriptase, which can take RNA and exploit it as a template for assembling a corresponding strand of DNA.

Replication in HIV is a complicated affair involving a large number of steps. The virus's outer coat of glycoprotein binds and fuses to the membrane of a host cell, enabling the viral RNA, along with reverse transcriptase, to invade the cell's cytoplasm. There the reverse transcriptase synthesizes DNA from the viral RNA; the DNA then inserts itself into the host's chromosomes. Later this "proviral" DNA may be transcribed back to RNA, which the cell's protein-production machinery translates into viral proteins. These proteins reassemble into complete virus particles, which emerge from the host cell and can infect new cells. It is clear that HIV's complex life cycle helps the virus to infect—and evade—cells of the immune system. From the therapist's standpoint this complexity may prove to be as much a boon as it is a curse: it provides many targets for antiviral agents to attack during the life cycle of HIV.



HIV LIFE CYCLE is subject to attack by drugs at several stages. Certain antibodies could block the binding of the viral envelope glycoprotein, gp120, to CD4 receptors on the surface of helper *T* cells (*1*). Other agents might keep viral RNA and reverse transcriptase from escaping their protein coat (*2*). Drugs such as AZT and other dideoxynucleosides prevent the reverse transcription of viral RNA into viral DNA (*3*). Later on, antisense oligonucleotides could block the translation of mRNA into viral proteins (*4*). Before they can be assembled, viral proteins must be modified; certain compounds could interfere with such processes as the cleavage of proteins or the addition of sugar groups (*5*). Finally, such antiviral substances as interferons could keep the virus particle from assembling itself and budding out of the cell (*6*).

The first stage at which an anti-HIV agent might intervene is during the binding of the virus to a cell. HIV has an envelope glycoprotein called gp120, which forms a strong bond with a glycoprotein called CD4 (or *T4*), found on the surface of certain cells in the body. CD4 is particularly abundant on the surface of a class of white blood cells called helper *T* cells, which are therefore a prime target for HIV infection. Indeed, a gradual depletion of such cells is a hallmark of AIDS. Normally helper *T* cells are crucial regulators of immune defense systems. Without enough functioning helper *T* cells, infected individuals become subject to oppor-

tunistic infections and malignancies.

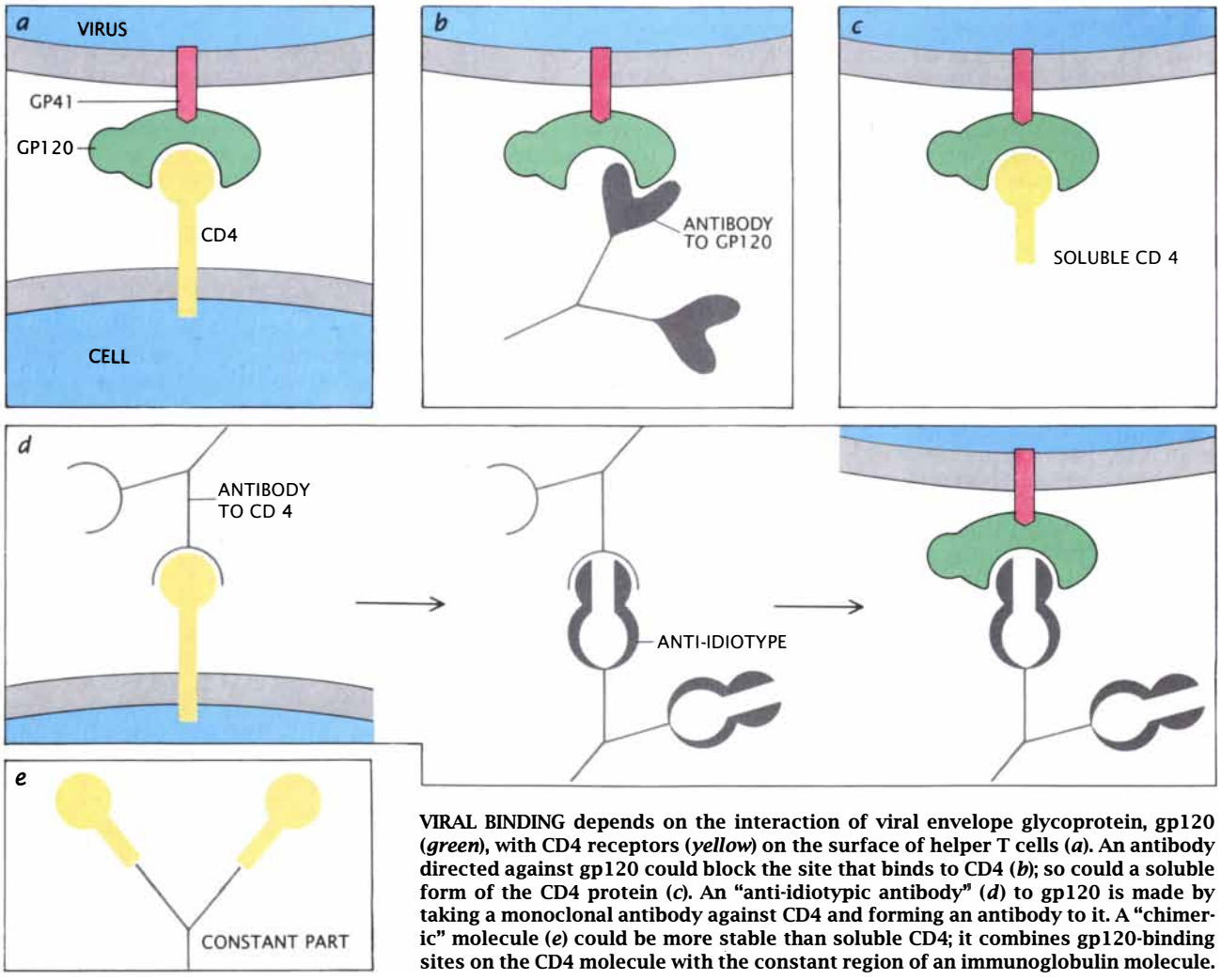
HIV-infected helper *T* cells do not work as well as they should, and they can be killed outright by the virus. In addition, studies in test tubes have shown that a few infected cells can kill large numbers of uninfected cells through a process called syncytium formation: the fusion of an infected cell with healthy cells. Jeffrey D. Lifson and Edgar G. Engleman of Stanford University, William A. Haseltine of the Dana-Farber Cancer Institute and their colleagues showed that syncytia are initiated when the gp120 on virus particles at the surface of infected cells binds to CD4 on the surface of healthy cells. A drug that interferes with viral binding therefore may not only interrupt the viral life cycle but also block the formation of syncytia.

There are several approaches to inhibiting the initial binding of HIV to a cell. One approach is to develop an antibody that binds to a critical part of the viral envelope, thereby neutralizing the gp120's ability to bind to CD4. Such an antibody could be linked to a toxin; it could then bind to and destroy infected cells, such as macrophages, that harbor the virus and produce HIV proteins. One might also develop antibodies to CD4, but such an approach is potentially hazardous, because the antibodies would attack the body's healthy immune cells. Most research, therefore, has focused on antibodies to gp120.

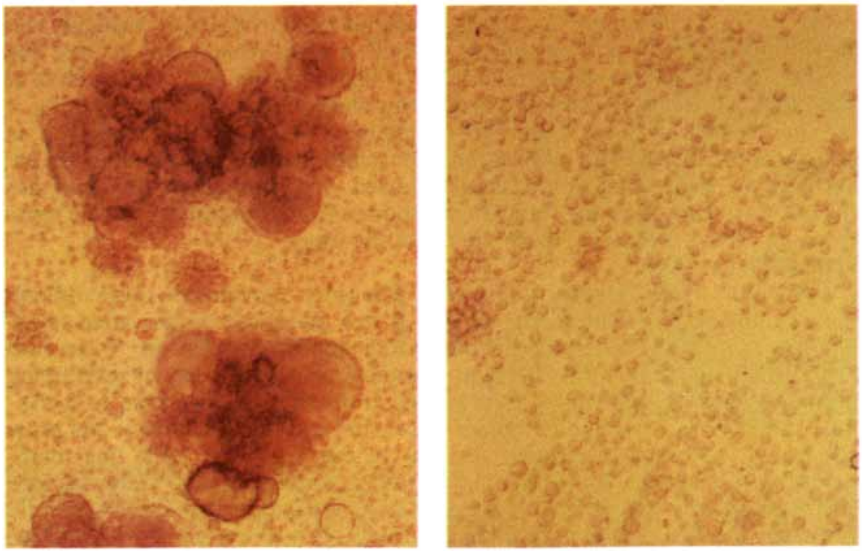
There are inherent difficulties in creating an effective neutralizing antibody to gp120. Not all antibodies to gp120 will block the critical CD4-binding site. Moreover, patients who produce neutralizing antibodies (generally only in low concentrations) as a natural response to HIV infection may still develop AIDS. Why is that? No one is certain, but one reason may be that HIV has a high rate of mutation. Some variants may have an altered envelope glycoprotein that cannot be neutralized by the antibodies. A second reason may be that sugar chains on the envelope glycoprotein are similar to those on the surface of human cells, so that the envelope lacks enough unique sites to which an antibody can bind. A third reason may be that the CD4-binding site is in a deep cleft in the envelope glycoprotein, making it relatively inaccessible. Finally, it is possible that the crucial sites are exposed only during binding and are hidden from the immune system most of the time.

In order to overcome these difficulties, investigators have tried several approaches. One is to develop a monoclonal antibody by identifying an antibody that does bind to a critical site, and then to clone it and grow it in the test tube. With this method, Shuzo Matsushita of Kumamoto University and his colleagues recently produced a neutralizing antibody to gp120 that they call 0.5-β. This antibody neutralizes some, but not all, strains of HIV. A similar approach may in the future produce antibodies to a broader range of HIV strains.

A second approach is to make an "anti-idiotypic antibody": an antibody to an antibody against CD4. The idea



VIRAL BINDING depends on the interaction of viral envelope glycoprotein, gp120 (*green*), with CD4 receptors (*yellow*) on the surface of helper T cells (*a*). An antibody directed against gp120 could block the site that binds to CD4 (*b*); so could a soluble form of the CD4 protein (*c*). An "anti-idiotypic antibody" (*d*) to gp120 is made by taking a monoclonal antibody against CD4 and forming an antibody to it. A "chimeric" molecule (*e*) could be more stable than soluble CD4; it combines gp120-binding sites on the CD4 molecule with the constant region of an immunoglobulin molecule.



SYNCYTIA are giant, multinucleated structures that form when HIV-infected cells fuse with uninfected cells, as is seen in this phase-contrast micrograph (*left*). They occur because viral envelope glycoprotein on the surface of infected cells binds to CD4 molecules on other cells. Dextran sulfate, which may inhibit viral binding, prevents syncytium formation in a mixed culture of infected and uninfected cells (*right*).

is that a monoclonal antibody against CD4 might resemble the CD4-binding site on gp120, and therefore an antibody (the anti-idiotype) made against this anti-CD4 antibody (the idiotype) might in turn bind to gp120. The concept is somewhat analogous to making a negative from a photographic negative to produce a positive. To investigate this possibility, two groups, one led by Ronald C. Kennedy of the Southwest Foundation for Biomedical Research and the other by Peter C. L. Beverley of University College London, took several CD4 antibodies known to inhibit HIV binding and produced several monoclonal antibodies to them. Both groups found that some of these anti-idiotypic antibodies bound to and neutralized HIV in vitro.

Another approach is to create a free-floating, or soluble, form of CD4 that can bind to HIV, monopolizing its CD4-binding sites and thus keeping it from binding to the CD4 on a helper *T* cell. Soluble CD4 was recently produced with recombinant-DNA methods by five groups, including researchers at Genentech Inc., Biogen N.V., Columbia University, the Smith Kline & French Laboratories, the Dana-Farber Cancer Institute and the Basel Institute for Immunology. These molecules did indeed adhere to the CD4-binding sites on the HIV envelope and inhibit the virus from infecting *T* cells. It will probably be difficult for the virus to mutate in such a way that it loses its affinity for the CD4 molecule while retaining its ability to infect *T* cells. We plan to begin testing the substance (called rCD4) in AIDS patients in the very near future.

In the future it may be possible to create "chimeric" molecules by taking the sites on CD4 that bind to HIV and splicing them onto the constant part of a human immunoglobulin (antibody) molecule. There are several possible advantages to such "customized antibodies." We think certain parts of the so-called heavy chain of the immunoglobulin molecule may be able to activate other parts of the immune system into destroying the virus. The chimeric molecule would act like a bloodhound-and-policeman team: the CD4 sniffs out the virus, and the immunoglobulin radios for the troops. What is more, the chimeric molecule may stay in circulation for a longer time than soluble CD4 alone, because certain immunoglobulins have a long half-life in the bloodstream. Such an approach has never been tried in human beings, but structural similarities between CD4 and immunoglobulins (CD4 belongs to the immunoglobulin "supergene" family) give us hope that such chimeras will retain functional properties of both molecules.

The approaches described above involve complex biological molecules that bind to HIV envelope glycoprotein. Other molecules, however, may also do the trick. Several large, sulfated, negatively charged molecules have been shown to inhibit HIV replication. One prototype is dextran sulfate. Molecules weighing between 7,000 and 8,000 daltons inhibit HIV replication in vitro, as recently shown by Ryuji Ueno and Sachiko Kuno of Ueno Fine Chemicals Industry, Ltd., in Osaka, Japan, Masahiko Ito of Fukushima Medical College and two of us (Mitsuya and Broder) at the NCI. Our group found that one way this compound may have its effect is by inhibiting viral binding. Dextran sulfate has also been shown to inhibit syncytia formation in vitro, as one would expect from a molecule that blocks viral binding.

Dextran sulfates have been administered for some time as plasma expanders, anticoagulants and cholesterol-lowering drugs. This clinical history suggests (but by no means proves) that the anti-HIV form of dextran sulfate may be relatively nontoxic. It remains to be seen, however, whether doses sufficient to inhibit HIV can be achieved by giving the drug orally, or indeed whether it will be effective at all against AIDS. Also, we do not yet know whether the drug will interact with other drugs in patients. Donald I. Abrams is studying dextran sulfate in patients at the San Francisco General Hospital.

After HIV has bound to a cell, it fuses with the cell membrane, releasing its contents into the cytoplasm. There the inner protein coat is partially removed to expose the viral RNA. Antibodies could neutralize gp41, the envelope glycoprotein that mediates fusion, and so prevent fusion from occurring. Antiviral drugs may be able to interfere with the uncoating process.

The target that has received perhaps more attention than any other, however, is the next stage of viral replication: the synthesis of viral DNA by the enzyme reverse transcriptase. This strategy is attractive because it attacks a step that is unique to retroviruses. Early in our own efforts to find an antiretroviral agent, we made this our prime target. In particular we focused on compounds belonging to a family of reverse-transcriptase inhibitors called dideoxynucleosides. These are nucleoside analogues, molecules that closely resemble the nucleotides that serve as building blocks in DNA and RNA: the pyrimidines (thymidine, uridine and cytidine) and the purines (adenosine and guanosine).

One such compound is 3′-azido-2′,3′-dideoxythymidine, the AZT we mentioned above. AZT was originally synthesized in 1964 by Jerome P. Horwitz of the Michigan Cancer Foundation as a potential anticancer drug . (It failed, but Burroughs Wellcome con-

tinued to make it). In February, 1985, our laboratory found it to be a potent inhibitor of HIV in *T*-cell cultures at concentrations of between one and five micromolar (or between about .25 and 1.25 micrograms per milliliter). Moreover, the compound was not significantly toxic to *T* cells below concentrations of from 20 to 50 micromolar. Soon after this work, AZT proved to be effective in AIDS patients at concentrations of between one and five micromolar, the amount initially predicted by our *T*-cell assay system.

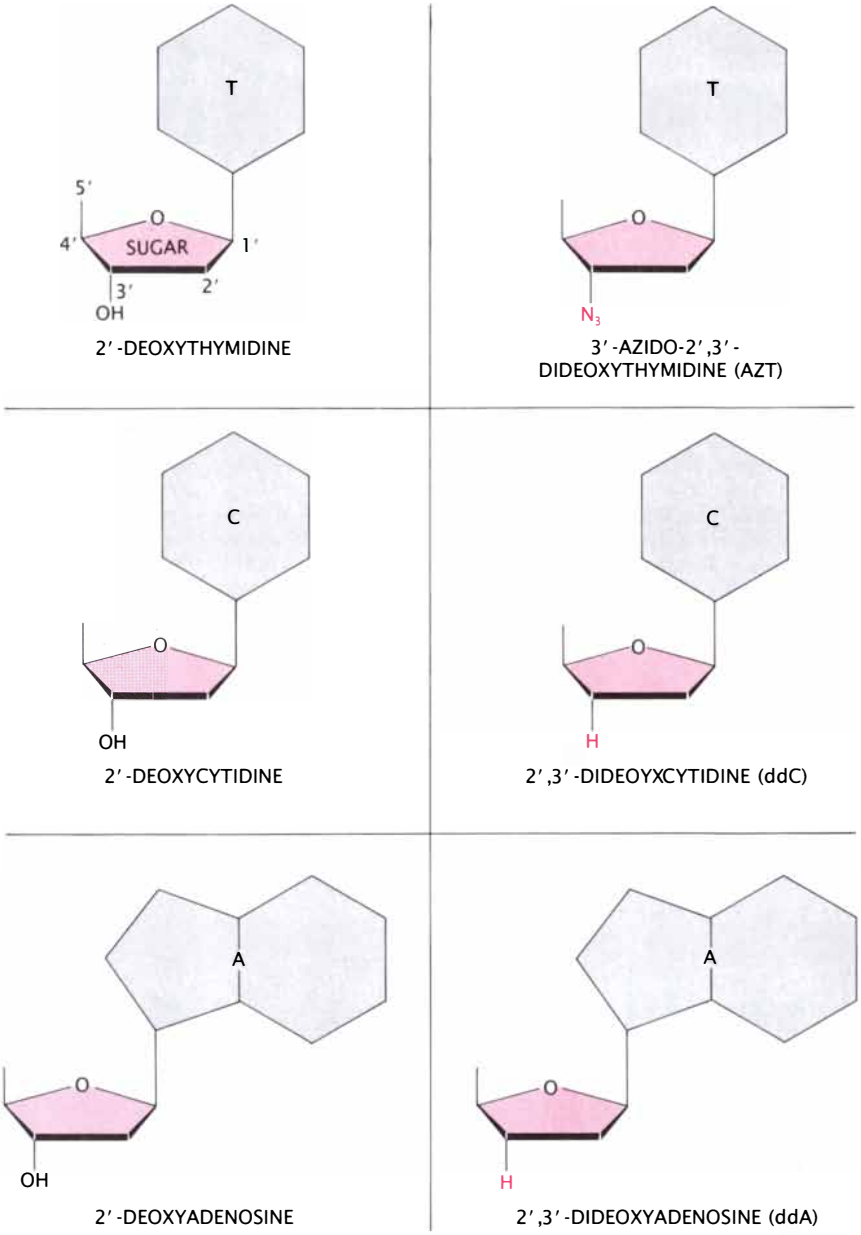
How does AZT protect *T* cells against HIV? The key lies in its resemblance to the nucleoside thymidine. In the cell, enzymes add phosphate groups (in a process called phosphorylation) to convert AZT into AZT triphosphate, the active form of the drug. (AZT triphosphate cannot be given directly because cells cannot absorb it.) AZT triphosphate is an analogue of thymidine triphosphate, one of the building blocks of DNA, and it appears to inhibit the production of viral DNA by at least two mechanisms: competitive inhibition and chain termination.

In competitive inhibition, AZT triphosphate binds to reverse transcriptase at a site that ordinarily binds to physiological nucleoside triphosphates. In chain termination, reverse transcriptase is fooled into incorporating AZT triphosphate in a growing chain of viral DNA in place of the normal thymidine triphosphate. When it tries to add the next link, it is thwarted because AZT triphosphate lacks the hydroxyl (OH) group that is needed to forge the chemical bond to the next link. The virus cannot repair this mistake, and the viral DNA synthesis comes grinding to a halt.

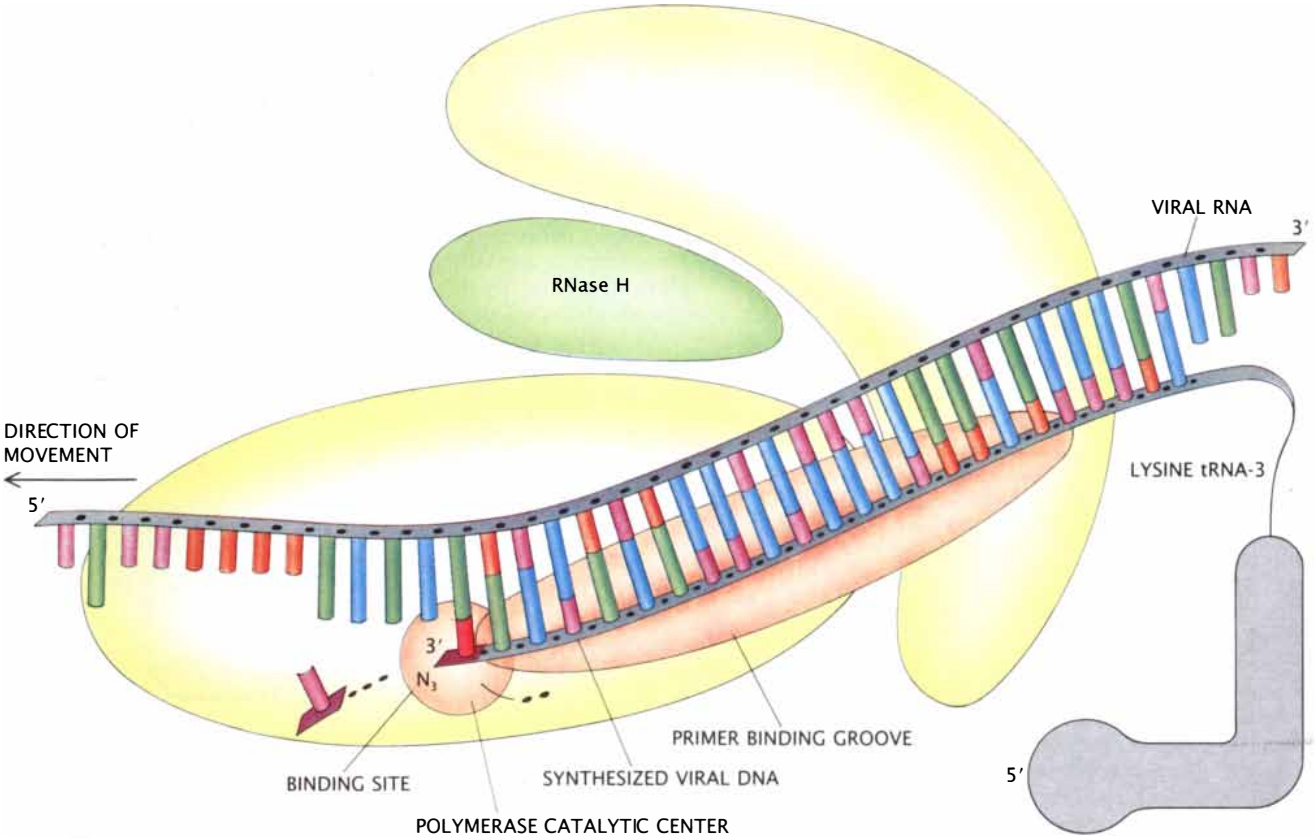
Other dideoxynucleosides that are active against HIV also appear to work by these mechanisms. All these compounds appear to be effective against a number of retroviruses (indeed, against every one tested so far), but only when they are in the triphosphate form. Their therapeutic effectiveness, then, depends in part on how easily they enter cells and undergo phosphorylation by cellular enzymes called kinases. This process is in fact more efficient for some compounds than it is for others. For example, 2′,3′-dideoxythymidine—which is AZT with a hydrogen atom in place of the azido (N_3) group—is poorly phosphorylated in human cells and so is less potent than AZT against HIV. In addition, the way these compounds are phosphorylated varies greatly among different species. Animal models, therefore, may not accurately predict whether a particular dideoxynucleoside will be effective in human beings.

Another question is whether mutation might alter the viral reverse transcriptase so that it is no longer inhibited by AZT. This is not idle speculation: it happens that AZT works because the virus's reverse transcriptase actually prefers AZT triphosphate, and tends to bind and incorporate it rather than thymidine triphosphate. The DNA polymerases in mammalian cells, however, do not prefer AZT triphosphate, and so the host cell can continue to function. Reverse transcriptase might be altered in such a way that it too will not prefer AZT triphosphate.

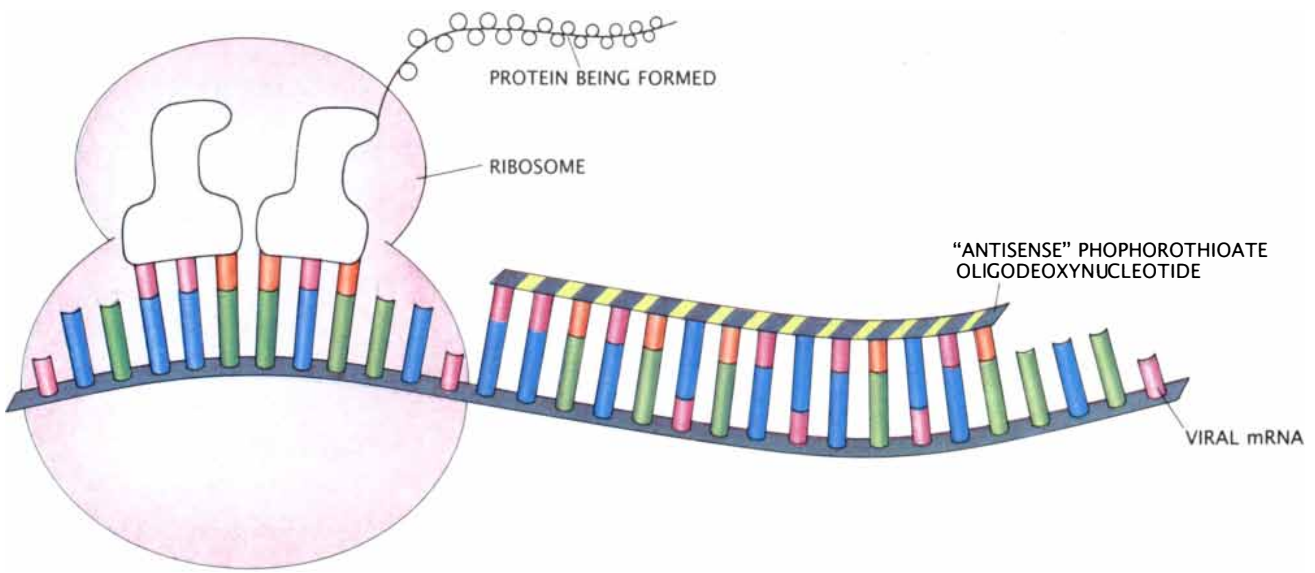
In an attempt to study this point, Brendan A. Larder, Graham K. Darby and their colleagues at the Wellcome Research Laboratories in the U.K. mutated HIV reverse transcriptase in specific ways. They found that some of the altered reverse transcriptases were more resistant to inhibition by AZT triphosphate. These agents were, however, impaired in their normal activity. No one knows whether viruses



DIDEOXYNUCLEOSIDE ANALOGUES (*right column*) could prove to be potent drugs against HIV because of their resemblance to deoxynucleosides (*left column*), the building blocks of DNA. Both types of molecules consist of a base—here thymine (*T*), cytosine (*C*) or adenine (*A*)—joined to a sugar ring. A hydroxyl group (OH) on the sugar ring forms a bond that links one nucleotide to another in a DNA chain. In the analogues the hydroxyl group is replaced by a group that is unable to form the link.



AZT TRIPHOSPHATE (*red*) can halt the synthesis of viral DNA, as shown in this drawing. Reverse transcriptase (*yellow*) binds to viral RNA and to a lysine tRNA-3, which provides the starting point for the DNA. The growing strand sits in the primer binding groove. (After the DNA strand is completed, RNase H removes the RNA so that a second DNA strand can form in its place. Cellular enzymes add three phosphates (*black dots*) to nucleosides such as thymidine, as well as to analogues such as AZT. Normally, the reverse transcriptase then cleaves off two of the phosphates, and the remaining phosphate forms a phosphodiester linkage to the hydroxyl group at the end of the chain. But if AZT triphosphate is added instead, no further nucleotides can be added because the azido (N_3) group of AZT cannot form the linkage, and so viral DNA synthesis stops.



ANTISENSE OLIGONUCLEOTIDES are segments of DNA that are complementary to a portion of HIV mRNA. They are thought to bind to the viral mRNA and so prevent ribosomes from translating the mRNA into viral proteins. Oligonucleotides, however, are rapidly degraded by cellular enzymes. To make them resistant to the enzymes, one can substitute a sulfur atom (*yellow*) for an oxygen on the phosphate links between the nucleotides. The resulting compound, which is called a phosphorothioate, is resistant to degradation and has been shown to inhibit the expression of HIV in vitro.

with such mutations would be infectious or cause disease; specifically, no one is sure whether AZT-resistant mutants can arise in patients.

Another point to consider with dideoxynucleosides is that because they resemble important cellular chemicals, they may interact with a variety of enzymes in the body. For example, 2′,3′-dideoxyadenosine (ddA) in triphosphate form is a potent HIV inhibitor in vitro, but in the body ddA is more likely to be converted by the ubiquitous enzyme adenosine deaminase into 2′,3′-dideoxyinosine (ddI), which in its phosphorylated form is only weakly active against HIV. Yet ddI is effective against HIV in culture because it is itself metabolized to ddA triphosphate in cells. In fact this may be the dominant pathway by which ddA is phosphorylated in the body. We may not be as lucky with other compounds, however, which might simply be converted into useless metabolites before they can reach target cells.

After a strand of DNA has been copied from the viral RNA, the reverse transcription proceeds to a second stage: the synthesis of a second DNA copy of the first DNA strand. This stage is also subject to attack. One could, for example, try to interfere with the viral enzyme RNase H, which chops up viral RNA in an orderly fashion after the first DNA copy of it has been made, thus making room for the second DNA strand. It may also be possible to block another enzyme, viral integrase, which is thought to serve as a chemical sewing kit that cuts the DNA of the host cell before stitching viral DNA into the site of the cut.

The next target for therapy presents itself some time later in the cycle of HIV, when the host cell is activated. The cell may begin to produce new proteins or receptors, and it may divide. The same process that activates the cell may also trigger the transcription and translation of viral DNA into viral proteins. We and others are investigating whether this process can be interrupted by the use of "antisense oligonucleotides," an approach first suggested more than 15 years ago by Paul C. Zamecnik of the Worcester Foundation for Experimental Biology . The idea is to create short nucleotide sequences, or oligonucleotides, that are complementary to a part of the viral mRNA. (The mRNA is in the "sense" mode, that is, it directly codes for proteins; these oligonucleotides are "antisense," that is, complementary to the mRNA.) These antisense constructs can bind to viral mRNA sequences in a process called hybridization, possibly obstructing the cell's ribosomes from moving along the RNA and thereby halting the translation of RNA into viral protein. This is called translation arrest or ribosomal-hybridization arrest.

One disadvantage with oligonucleotides is that many of them can be degraded by enzymes in the host cells. They can, however, be made resistant by modifying certain phosphate links between the nucleotides. For example, one can substitute a sulfur atom for one of the oxygen atoms to form a phosphorothioate. Makoto Matsukura in our group, working with Gerald Zon of Applied Biosystems, Inc., and Jack C. Cohen and Cy A. Stein of the NCI, recently found that such antisense phosphorothioates can indeed inhibit HIV production in cells chronically infected by HIV.

It may also be possible to stop viral production by blocking viral genes or proteins that regulate this process. The translation of viral RNA into protein is tightly controlled by the virus. Regulatory sequences, called long terminal repeats, at each end of the viral genome may directly control viral protein synthesis. Several viral proteins regulate this process as well. These regions might provide targets for selectively inhibiting HIV replication.

In addition, HIV replication can be influenced by proteins made by the host cell or even by other viruses that happen to also infect the cell. Gary J. Nabel and David Baltimore of the Whitehead Institute for Biomedical Research have recently shown that the cellular protein NF-κB, which acts as an intracellular activation signal in certain lymphocytes, may turn on HIV replication. Certain herpes viruses produce a protein called ICPO that can also trigger HIV replication. In patients infected with both a herpes virus and HIV, it may therefore be possible to delay the progress of AIDS by controlling the herpes infection, for example with the drug acyclovir.

After the viral proteins are produced, they undergo a series of modifications that result in a complete, functional virus. In one of these steps a viral enzyme cleaves the viral proteins. Because this enzyme is unique to HIV, several laboratories are now searching for agents that specifically inhibit it. In another step viral proteins gain carbohydrates in a process called glycosylation, in which enzymes add sugars and then other enzymes called trimming glycosidases trim off some of the terminal sugar groups. Two teams, one led by Joseph G. Sodroski and Haseltine and the other led by Robert Gruter of the Netherlands Red Cross Transfusion Service, recently showed that when HIV is produced in the presence of castanospermine, a plant alkaloid that inhibits a trimming glycosidase, it is less able to form syncytia or to infect cells. Castanospermine analogues, designed to be more potent and yet less toxic than castanospermine itself, might provide a treatment for HIV infection.

Finally, the viral proteins and RNA are transported to the cell membrane and there assembled into virus particles, which escape by budding out of the cell surface. The budding may be stopped by interferons, antiviral substances that are produced naturally in cells. Interferons are thought to act at other steps in the HIV life cycle as well. Certain substances that can induce a cell to produce interferon have also been found to inhibit HIV replication in vitro. Indeed, interferons have a wide range of effects and therefore may benefit AIDS patients in several ways. For example, alpha-interferon helps to suppress Kaposi's sarcoma, and so it might benefit certain AIDS patients by acting as both an antiretroviral and an antitumor agent.

Of all the substances that show activity against HIV, AZT has undergone the most extensive clinical study. Five months after our laboratory showed in February of 1985 that AZT inhibits HIV replication, we administered the drug to the first patient in the Clinical Center at the National Institutes of Health (NIH). This patient had AIDS and had recently recovered from *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia. His immune functions were severely suppressed and his helper *T* cells were markedly depleted. When we exposed his skin to common antigens (in a test analogous to a tuberculosis test), he failed to produce the reddish swelling that signals a normal immune reaction. After taking AZT for several weeks, he gained weight and had an increased number of helper *T* cells. He also reacted to the skin test, indicating that the overall function of his *T*-cell immune system had improved.

Other patients at the NIH and at the Duke University Medical Center who received AZT in this first trial also had improved clinical symptoms and immunological function, which we attributed to the drug's antiviral effect. We also found that AZT could reduce the amount of HIV present in patients. In many cases, however, these im-

provements were only temporary, and, given the side effects that occurred in some patients, some investigators questioned whether the benefits were sufficient to have a substantial impact on the course of the disease.

To find out, the Wellcome group organized a randomized, placebo-controlled trial of AZT in 12 major medical centers around the U.S. Margaret A. Fischl of the University of Miami, Douglas D. Richman of the University of California at San Diego and their colleagues studied some 280 patients. These patients had either recovered from *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia or had severe AIDS-related complex. They were randomly chosen to receive either AZT or a placebo. Neither doctor nor patient knew whether the patient was receiving AZT or the placebo. Patients were not given any prophylaxis for the pneumonia, nor were they given any other AIDS therapy.

DRUG	MECHANISM OF ACTION	COMMENTS
DEXTRAN SULFATE	Probably inhibits viral binding	Used orally outside the U.S. to reduce cholesterol levels; prototype for polyanionic polysaccharides that have anti-HIV activity; Phase II clinical trials begun at San Francisco General Hospital.
SOLUBLE CD4 (ALSO CALLED rCD4)	Inhibits viral binding	Genetically engineered form of CD4; Phase I trials under way.
AZT (AZIDOTHYMIDINE OR ZIDOVUDINE)	Reverse-transcriptase inhibitor, chain terminator	Prescription drug; increases survival time and reduces opportunistic infections; can ameliorate HIV-induced dementia; toxic to bone marrow.
ddC	Reverse-transcriptase inhibitor, chain terminator	Antiviral effect even at very low dose; toxic effects on peripheral nerves can be reduced by taking alternately with AZT; Phase II trials under way both alone and in combination with AZT.
ddA and ddI	Reverse-transcriptase inhibitor, chain terminator	Relatively little bone-marrow toxicity in vitro; Phase I trials under way.
PHOSPHONOFORMATE	Reverse-transcriptase inhibitor	Also active against cytomegalovirus; Phase II trials show evidence of some activity against HIV.
RIFABUTIN	Possible reverse-transcriptase inhibitor	Also active in vitro against certain mycobacteria that can infect AIDS patients; Phase I trial being completed.
RIBAVIRAN	Mechanism unknown	Only partial anti-HIV effect; antagonizes activity of AZT in laboratory; clinical trials have so far not shown that it reduces HIV antigen in serum of patients.
PHOSPHOROTHIOATE OLIGODEOXYNUCLEOTIDES	Probably several mechanisms, including arrest of viral protein synthesis	May have sequence-specific and nonspecific activity; still in very early development.
CASTANOSPERMINE	Inhibits enzymes that trim sugar groups from viral proteins	Reduces syncytium formation and infectivity of virus; still in very early development.
ALPHA INTERFERON	May reduce viral budding; probably has other mechanisms as well	Also has direct antitumor activity against Kaposi's sarcoma; Phase II trials under way, both alone and in combination with AZT.
AMPLIGEN	Interferon inducer; may work by other mechanisms as well	Little toxicity observed in patients; large-scale Phase II and Phase III trials under way.

AIDS THERAPIES at various stages of testing are shown in this chart. All of the substances on the list have shown some activity against HIV in the test tube. Many of them are now in various stages of clinical trials. Phase I trials usually involve a small number of patients and are designed to establish toxicity, maximum tolerated dose and the drug's mechanism of action in the body. Phase II and Phase III trials involve larger numbers of people and are designed to assess the effectiveness of the drug.

Six months into the trial, 19 patients in the placebo group had died, whereas only one patient in the group receiving AZT had died. Also, patients receiving AZT had fewer complications of the disease. At this point the trial was halted and all the patients were offered AZT. It now appears that AZT can increase the median survival time of patients with advanced AIDS by about a year. (The median survival time is the time at which 50 percent of the patients have died.) This evidence prompted the Food and Drug Administration, in March of 1987, to approve AZT as a prescription drug for severe HIV infection.

AZT may have an even greater effect if it is given earlier in the course of HIV infection. In fact, it is possible that it may actually prevent the progress of AIDS in at least some individuals, perhaps both by its direct antiviral effect and by partially restoring immune function. Gene M. Shearer of the NCI and Robert T. Schooley and Martin S. Hirsch of the Massachusetts General Hospital have shown that *T* cells from patients given AZT may be better able to kill HIV-infected cells. Clinical trials are now under way to test this idea. We wish to stress that until these trials are concluded, it will not be possible to draw valid inferences about the role of AZT in the early stages of HIV infection. Moreover, the long-term toxicity of AZT is not yet known.

Our early work with AZT showed it could penetrate into the fluid surrounding the brain, and so we wondered if it could treat the devastating dementia that sometimes develops in patients infected with HIV. When we gave AZT to afflicted patients, in most cases in which careful tests of intellectual function were done we found at least temporary improvement. This was apparent within the first few weeks of therapy. In addition, Philip A. Pizzo of the Pediatric Branch of the NCI has given continuous infusions of AZT to a number of children with AIDS, whose intelligence quotient (IQ) had fallen as a result of the disease. In some cases he found that the IQ returned to normal levels during treatment.

We do not understand all the mechanisms that lead to AIDS dementia, and so the beneficial mechanisms of AZT are also unclear. It is of course possible that the improvements directly result from controlling HIV infection in the brain. Carlo-Federico Perno in our group has shown that cells of the monocyte-macrophage lineage, prime targets for HIV infec-

tion in the nervous system, can be protected against HIV replication even by low concentrations of AZT and other dideoxynucleosides. Whether this accounts for the clinical improvement in these patients, or whether another mechanism is involved, is a matter for further research.

Because of the rapid development of AZT, there remain many unanswered questions regarding its effects and the best method of administration. We do not know if it is better to keep AZT circulating at as constant a level as possible or to allow it to fluctuate. AZT levels decline by about 50 percent over the course of one hour, and the present schedule of one dose every four hours is designed to keep circulating levels fairly constant. In the case of dideoxynucleosides, one must also consider the metabolism of the phosphorylated products. For example, David G. Johns of the NCI has found that the intracellular half-life of ddA triphosphate, a metabolite of both ddA and its alter ego ddI, may be as high as 24 hours. It may therefore be possible to give ddA to patients just once or twice a day.

In spite of its beneficial effects, AZT is not a final answer. The drug can be toxic, particularly to bone marrow, so that patients on AZT often develop anemia (a decrease in red blood cells) and in some instances low numbers of white blood cells and platelets as well. Indeed, this often limits the amount of AZT that can be administered, particularly in patients with established AIDS, and bone-marrow suppression is a major reason for failure of the drug. The mechanism of toxicity remains unclear at present, but there is some evidence that it may not necessarily occur with other dideoxynucleosides.

Ultimately, the only way to tell whether other dideoxynucleosides that display anti-HIV activity in tissue culture will be more beneficial than AZT is to test them in patients. To this end, our group at the NCI and a multicenter group headed by Thomas C. Merigan, Jr., of the Stanford University School of Medicine recently conducted clinical trials of 2′,3′-dideoxycytidine (ddC) in patients suffering from severe HIV infection. These studies showed that ddC can markedly reduce the amount of HIV replication and can also induce some improvements in immune function. Unfortunately patients who took continuous high doses of ddC for more than from eight to 12 weeks developed a painful peripheral neuropathy (a disorder of peripheral sensory and motor nerves), primarily in the feet. This neuropathy gradually subsided after patients stopped taking the drug.

Because the toxicity of ddC is different from that of AZT, we wondered whether we could obtain a better result if the two drugs were alternated. Such a regimen might allow vulnerable tissues to recover from the toxic effects of each drug; similar strategies have been successful in treating and even curing certain cancers. Some patients are now on an alternating regimen of ddC and AZT. Preliminary results show that some patients can tolerate such a treatment for more than a year without developing either neuropathy or suppressed bone marrow.

The dideoxynucleoside ddA and its metabolite ddI also strongly inhibit HIV in culture. These drugs appear to be less toxic in cultures of helper *T* cells than either AZT or ddC. In addition they are less toxic to bone marrow in culture. We are now carrying out trials to determine the toxicity and effective dose of ddA and ddI in patients. The preliminary results are encouraging.

The question posed at the beginning of this article has been answered in the affirmative. An antiretroviral drug, AZT, has been found that can reduce the severity of illness and prolong the survival of AIDS patients. AZT represents only a beginning, however, and it is certainly not a cure. Indeed, over time the true value of AZT may prove to be its validation of the key assumptions that underlie antiviral strategies for intervening in this illness.

In the future, as we learn more about how to attack HIV at different points in its life cycle, it may be possible to model AIDS therapies on successful therapies for cancers such as certain childhood leukemias. For example, as researchers develop agents that have different modes of activity against HIV, it may be possible to design multiple-drug therapies that will achieve better results than any one drug alone. In fact, investigators have already found that each of several drugs, including acyclovir (an antiherpes drug), ampligen, alpha-interferon and dextran sulfate, appears to have more than an additive effect when it is tested in vitro with AZT.

As with the treatment of childhood leukemia, it may be necessary to employ several phases of therapy. For example, one might first have to administer relatively toxic drugs that would halt viral replication and perhaps also destroy infected cells. One might then follow up with treatments that are capable of seeking out and suppressing hidden pockets of infection. Finally, the patient might be maintained on a low-dose regimen to suppress any recurrences. The drugs, the dosage and the dispensing schedule may differ from one phase to another. For example, a potent drug that might play a crucial role in the initial phase could be too toxic for long-term maintenance. It seldom makes sense to draw conclusions about the safety and efficacy of any given drug without considering in detail both the dosage and the schedule of administration.

At this time investigators must not pin their hopes on any single drug or approach but instead should strive to develop a variety of agents to attack HIV at different points. In bringing these drugs to a stage where they can benefit patients, there is a lesson to be drawn from the experience with AZT. Little more than two years elapsed from the time we first observed the drug's anti-HIV effect in our laboratory until the time AZT was approved as a prescription drug. We attribute this rapid development to the careful, scientifically controlled process by which the clinical trials were conducted. We cannot emphasize enough the importance of the controlled-trial method to the success of future therapies—and to much of what must be learned if AIDS is to be conquered.

FURTHER READING

AIDS: MODERN CONCEPTS AND THERAPEUTIC CHALLENGES. Edited by Samuel Broder. Marcel Dekker, Inc., 1987.

DEVELOPMENT OF ANTIRETROVIRAL THERAPY FOR THE ACQUIRED IMMUNODEFICIENCY SYNDROME AND RELATED DISORDERS: A PROGRESS REPORT. Robert Yarchoan and Samuel Broder in *The New England Journal of Medicine,* Vol. 316, No. 9, pages 557–564; February 26, 1987.

STRATEGIES FOR ANTIVIRAL THERAPY IN AIDS. Hiroaki Mitsuya and Samuel Broder in *Nature,* Vol. 325, No. 6107, pages 773–778; February 26, 1987.

THE EFFICACY OF AZIDOTHYMIDINE (AZT) IN THE TREATMENT OF PATIENTS WITH AIDS AND AIDS-RELATED COMPLEX: A DOUBLE-BLIND, PLACEBO-CONTROLLED TRIAL. Margaret A. Fischl et al. in *The New England Journal of Medicine,* Vol. 317, No. 4, pages 185–191; July 23, 1987.

BLOCKING OF HIV-1 INFECTIVITY BY A SOLUBLE, SECRETED FORM OF THE CD4 ANTIGEN. Douglas H. Smith, Randal A. Byrn, Scot A. Marsters, Timothy Gregory, Jerome E. Groopman and Daniel J. Capon in *Science,* Vol. 238, No. 4834, pages 1704–1707; December 18, 1987.

AIDS Vaccines

Several candidates are being tested and more are on the way, but success is far from assured. The life cycle of the virus and the logistics of AIDS vaccine testing make HIV a foe without precedent

by Thomas J. Matthews and Dani P. Bolognesi

The best way to combat any disease is to prevent it. Vaccination is the simplest, safest and most effective form of prevention, and vaccines have achieved legendary success against viruses. Because of vaccines the campaigns against smallpox and polio are resounding triumphs; the decline of yellow fever, measles, mumps and rubella is also due largely to vaccination. Against this backdrop of successes the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) looms large. A vaccine against AIDS is perhaps the most formidable and urgent challenge facing virologists today.

Vaccine development has been a top priority of AIDS research since HIV was conclusively shown to be the cause of the disease in 1984. Yet in spite of the millions of dollars and hundreds of scientists devoted to vaccine research, Surgeon General C. Everett Koop has warned the public not to expect a vaccine before the end of the century. Why not?

Researchers are daunted by three particulars: the devious nature of the virus itself, which can "hide" in cells, change the composition of its coat and install its own genes within the genes of its host; the lack of a good animal model for the disease, which slows investigations of vaccine strategies to combat these ploys, and the difficulties expected with clinical trials, which face scientific uncertainty, ethical concerns and possibly a shortage of volunteers.

THOMAS J. MATTHEWS and DANI P. BOLOGNESI work together in the surgical virology laboratory at the Duke University Medical Center, where they have been researching AIDS vaccines for the past four years. Matthews got his Ph.D. from the University of Missouri in 1967 and held a postdoctoral appointment at the University of Wisconsin at Madison before going to Duke in 1977. Matthews is a member of the National Cancer Institute's AIDS Vaccine Task Force. Bolognesi got his Ph.D. from Duke in 1967 and has been on the faculty there since 1971. He is a consultant for the National Institutes of Health AIDS Executive Committee and a member of the scientific advisory committee of the American Foundation for AIDS Research.

Several vaccines are currently being tested in humans. It is much too early to pronounce on their performance, but most investigators are not optimistic. Yet no one is entertaining the idea of failure. A vaccine offers the best hope of stemming the AIDS crisis. A great deal has been learned about the virus since the first AIDS vaccines were designed, and we hope that tomorrow's vaccine candidates will have a better chance of defeating HIV if the current ones fail. Otherwise this decade in the shadow of AIDS will have been just a foretaste of the virus's ultimate impact on public health, behavior and economy across the globe.

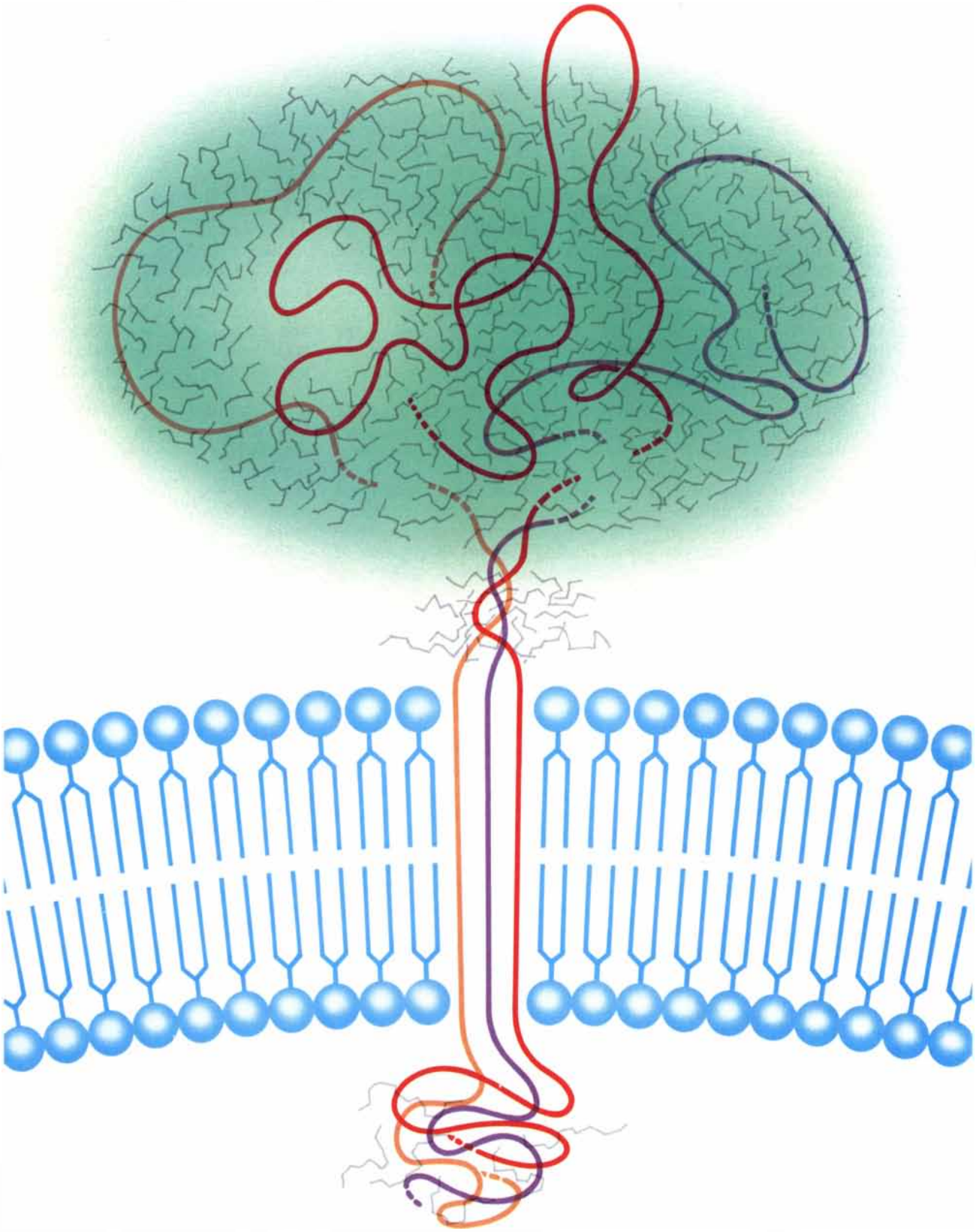
A rich tradition of vaccine research guides the effort to develop an AIDS vaccine. Hundreds of years ago controlled inoculations of the pus from smallpox victims was used to immunize healthy individuals in the Far East and Middle East. Then in 1796 Edward Jenner found that cowpox virus could serve as a smallpox vaccine. His discovery led to the realization that the pathogenic organism itself need not be present to rally the immune system's defenses; only certain characteristic parts of an organism trigger an immune response. These parts (often proteins or protein fragments) are known as antigens.

Vaccines exploit the body's ability to "remember" an antigen. The first time the immune system encounters a given antigen in the course of infection it is caught unawares, but as a result of the encounter cells are generated that retain an immunological memory of the antigen for the lifetime of an individual. Consequently subsequent responses to the same invader are swifter and more potent. A vaccine introduces the antigen in a harmless form called an immunogen, so that the body becomes primed to fight off the infectious agent without risk of contracting the disease itself [*see illustration on page 123*].

If the immune system is to defeat a pathogen, it must be able to attack the invader free in the blood as well as in association with cells. The immune response has two interrelated arms that combat infection on both fronts: a "humoral" response and a "cell-mediated" response. In the humoral response blood cells called *B* lymphocytes generate exquisitely specific antibody molecules that circulate in the blood and bind to antigens, thus nullifying the pathogen. The cell-mediated response involves "killer" *T*8 cells (also known as cytotoxic lymphocytes) that attack and destroy infected cells.

Central to both responses is another group of *T* cells, the *T*4 or "helper" cells. Helper cells send out chemical signals called lymphokines, which help to activate *T*- and *B*-cell populations and cause them to proliferate. The lymphokines from *T*4 cells also prompt the generation of antigen-specific "memory" cells for the *T*- and *B*-cell populations; it is these cells that are responsible for hastening and amplifying the immune response in subsequent encounters with the antigen.

B cells and *T* cells interact with an antigen differently. *B* cells have receptors akin to antibodies that can recognize free antigen particles, but in order for a *T* cell to "see" an antigen the antigen must be presented on the surface of another cell. When a pathogen first invades the body, blood cells known as macrophages endocytose, or "swallow," the invader, process it and display its antigenic portions on their surface. *T*-cell receptors can bind to the processed antigens, and *T* cells thereby learn to identify infected cells, which bear the same processed antigens on their surface. Owing to these different modes of interaction, *B* cells



ENVELOPE PROTEIN is found on the surface of HIV and the cells it infects. The protein is thought to be a trimer of three virtually identical molecules, shown here in red, orange and purple. Much of the protein backbone is buried in a cloud of sugar molecules (*gray-green*). There is reason to believe a vaccine that mimics certain antigenic parts of the protein would induce a potent immune response. The immune system of people infected with HIV attacks the envelope protein, but the assault does not prevent disease. It may be that the sugar cloud protects vulnerable areas of the backbone, such as the pit (*left*) where the virus binds to its receptor, while less critical parts such as the loop (*right*) are exposed, perhaps as decoys.

usually recognize external antigens of a pathogen, whereas *T* cells can respond to both external antigens and internal components that become exposed during cellular processing. If a vaccine is to elicit humoral and cell-mediated immunity, it must contain immunogens that both arms of the immune system would see in the course of an ordinary infection.

Vaccine development is a greater challenge with HIV because the virus infects some of the same cells the vaccine needs to activate. While there is evidence that HIV can invade the central nervous system, the primary targets of infection are macrophages and *T*4 cells. Indeed, the macrophages, which can survive HIV infection, may serve as shuttles that carry HIV to *T*4 cells during the routine interactions of the two cell types. The *T*4 cells usually do not survive HIV infection. Because these cells play a critical role in the immune defense, on which any vaccine would rely, an AIDS vaccine would have to prevent the virus from becoming entrenched in *T*-cell and macrophage populations in the first place.

The vaccine would also have to halt the virus before it invades the central nervous system, where pathogens become invulnerable to immune attack. Furthermore, a vaccine must ensure that the immune system will recognize any and all of the innumerable HIV variants, and that protection will extend to all vaccine recipients regardless of age, gender and extent of exposure. And the vaccine must carry no risk of itself causing AIDS. Unless an immunogen has been shown to meet all these criteria, it cannot be called an AIDS vaccine per se; it is more correct to refer to it as a vaccine candidate.

In devising vaccine candidates, it is important to recognize that the way an immunogen is presented can have some bearing on its efficacy. Today vaccine researchers have a variety of options for presentation. Traditional vaccines are made of the virus itself, either killed or attenuated to render it harmless. These have been quite successful, presumably because whole virus is a potent immunogen. Vaccines against measles, mumps and rubella all contain live, attenuated virus, whereas rabies vaccines are made from killed virus. There are both attenuated- and killed-virus polio vaccines.

Exposing people to whole virus is not entirely without risk: in the U.S., for example, a handful of children every year get polio from attenuated polio vaccines. In most cases vaccines using antigenic subunits rather than the pathogen itself would be preferable because they eliminate the threat of inadvertent infection. The technology for producing such vaccines has evolved only recently, and a subunit vaccine against hepatitis B, made by Merck Sharp & Dohme, has already been approved in the U.S.

Subunit vaccines have several drawbacks of their own. Subunits by themselves can be invisible to the immune system and must often be combined with some kind of vehicle to improve their immunogenicity. For example, the subunit may be complexed with a so-called adjuvant, which attracts the immune system's attention by causing inflammation or by acting as an antigen in its own right. In addition the subunit used in a vaccine must be carefully chosen, because not all components of a pathogen represent beneficial immunological targets. Some may even induce inappropriate responses that preempt protective ones.

In the case of AIDS there is no precedent lending support to any one of these approaches. Hence workers are pursuing a number of strategies in designing their AIDS vaccines.

Indeed, lack of a precedent plagues quite a few aspects of AIDS vaccine research. HIV belongs to a class of viruses, called retroviruses, with which the research community has had limited experience. Human retroviruses were discovered less than a decade ago and animal retroviruses have never been deemed significant enough to provide a practical incentive for vaccine development. The only real field trials of a retroviral vaccine were done in cats, with a vaccine against feline leukemia. In these trials a subunit vaccine provided partial protection; experimental vaccines using attenuated virus or better-defined subunits with improved adjuvants have shown greater promise. But now that the search for an AIDS vaccine has taken center stage, it has become painfully clear how difficult the development of vaccines against retroviruses can be.

Retroviruses, like a few other types of virus, can insert their own genes into the genes of the cells they infect, thereby establishing a permanent infection. Even if a cell is not actively producing virus particles, it may still harbor "dormant" retroviral genes. Such a cell might remain invisible to the immune system because no viral antigens would be displayed on its surface. Hence eradicating a retroviral infection could prove to be impossible, although a vaccine might still be able to stimulate the immune system enough to keep the virus from causing disease. For example, in studies of mouse leukemia, a retroviral disease, Werner Schäfer and his colleagues at the Max Planck Institute for Virus Research in Tübingen found that an experimental vaccine could protect the animals from disease, but the virus reappeared late in life, when the animals' immune systems began to falter.

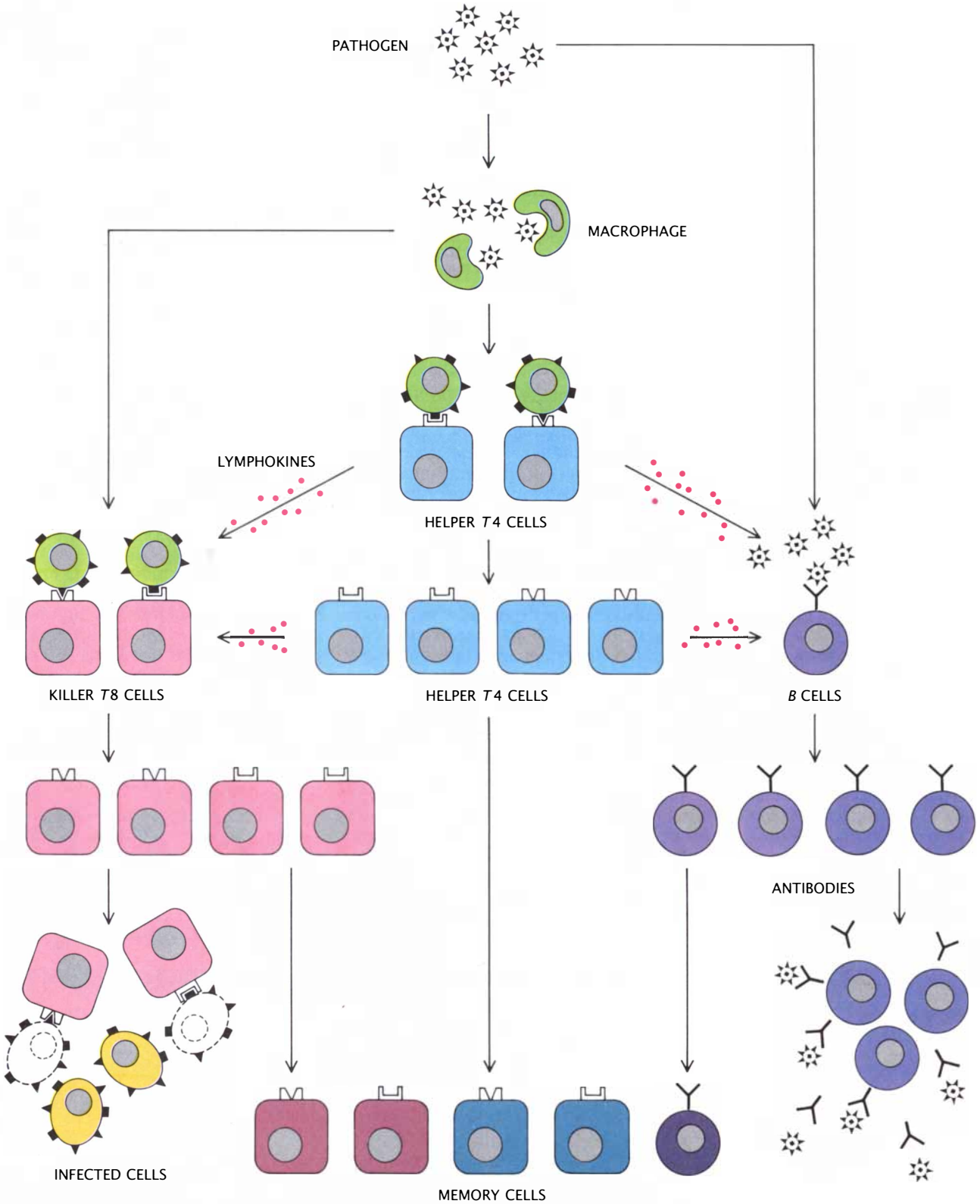
The virus did not cause leukemia when it reemerged, and so it seems that a total blockade of infection may not be necessary for long-term protection against a retroviral disease. Indeed, most successful vaccines protect against disease rather than infection. There is one way, however, in which a retroviral infection differs from most other viral infections for which vaccines exist: retroviral genes contain regulatory elements that can disrupt a cell's normal growth patterns. In other words, the genes can cause cancer.

Thus the mere presence of retroviral genes in the body is a real cause for concern. This raises the daunting possibility that an AIDS vaccine may have to achieve a complete blockade of infection. It is not practical to expect such a blockade from any vaccine, and so vaccine developers hope that some degree of infection can be tolerated. In any case, the option of an attenuated whole-virus vaccine has been all but eliminated, since disabled retroviral genetic material could induce malignancy even if it could not orchestrate the production of virus particles.

Unfortunately the problems surrounding vaccination against HIV are not limited to those associated with its being a retrovirus. HIV has several features of its own that make it a singular opponent.

Perhaps the most infamous characteristic of the virus is its propensity to mutate. This tendency is particularly pronounced in the gene that codes for its envelope protein, gp120. Vaccine developers have focused a great deal of attention on gp120 because it is displayed on the surface of both the virus and infected cells, which makes it a likely target for an immune response. The virus probably confounds the immune system by continually varying the sequence of amino acids that make up this outermost protein. If a vaccine is to exploit the immunogenicity of the gp120 molecule, more will have to be learned about the diversity of gp120 variants.

Another troublesome aspect of HIV



IMMUNE ATTACK on a pathogen involves both humoral (*B* cell) and the cell-mediated (*T* cell) responses. Scavenging cells called macrophages engulf the invader and display its internal (*square*) and external (*triangular*) antigenic components to receptors on *T* cells. The "helper" *T*4 cells multiply and produce lymphokines (*red*), chemical signals that regulate *B* cells and *T* cells. Interaction with macrophages and *T*4 cells causes "killer" *T*8 cells to mature and roam the bloodstream, destroying infected cells. Meanwhile external antigens on the pathogen interact with receptors on *B* cells. If the *B* cells receive lymphokine signals, they proliferate and secrete antibodies that bind to the antigens and neutralize them. Antigen-specific "memory" cells are also generated; these enable the immune system to combat the same invader more effectively in future encounters. Vaccines work by prompting the generation of memory cells without posing any threat of disease.

infection has been brought to light by recent evidence that virus particles can be trapped in vesicles—enclosed pockets in the cell cytoplasm—without betraying their presence through viral proteins on the cell surface. Without surface antigens the cell-mediated arm of the immune system cannot detect the infection and will not attack the cell. Ashley T. Haase of the University of Minnesota Medical School applied the term "Trojan horse" to describe such evasive behavior in animal retroviruses; if a virus adopts this strategy, the immune system never gets a glimpse of it. Thus the virus might be passed between cells in an individual or even transmitted from one person to another while remaining hidden.

In addition the virus has a remarkable affinity for the cell-surface protein, known as CD4, to which it binds [see "HIV Infection: The Cellular Picture," by Jonathan N. Weber and Robin A. Weiss,page 100].Antibodiesinduced by a vaccine will have to overcome this powerful affinity if they are to impede binding. Antibodies to the part of the virus that binds to the CD4 receptor could mechanically obstruct the binding process, but that approach has its own hazards. In particular, antibodies to the virus's combining site actually resemble the CD4 receptor, and if, as often happens, a second round of antibodies is produced against the first, they would in turn mimic the binding site on the virus. Consequently the second round of antibodies could attack CD4, incapacitating or destroying the very cells that are already under siege from the virus.

Recent evidence that people infected with HIV make antibodies to CD4 lends credibility to this scenario. Such a phenomenon, which is known as an autoimmune reaction, could occur with any vaccine, but in existing vaccines the combining site of the virus need not be the primary antigenic constituent. Furthermore, there is reason to believe that vaccines representing other sites on the HIV envelope protein might also trigger an autoimmune response, because some parts of the envelope are known to mimic normal cell-surface markers.

The fact that HIV attacks the cells that are responsible for defeating infection adds its own twist to vaccine development. In particular, some investigators are concerned that a vaccine could actually enhance the infectivity of the virus. Certain cells of the immune system have receptors that bind to antibodies opposite the antigen-binding region. Macrophages are among these cells, and macrophages are a target of HIV infection. Antibodies attached to free virus could therefore be attracted to macrophages, increasing the chances that a macrophage will become infected. Hence raising antibodies to HIV by means of a vaccine could conceivably facilitate rather than deter the spread of the virus. It is still not clear that this effect actually potentiates infection during natural exposure to the virus.

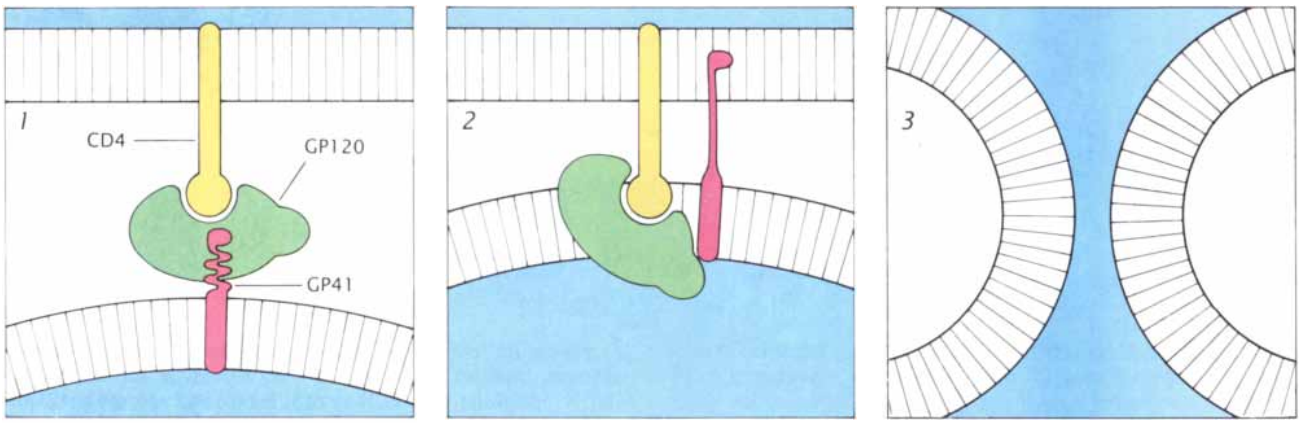
Does such a recalcitrant virus have an Achilles' heel? Even though examples of successful vaccines against retroviruses are lacking, vaccine developers have challenged other formidable viruses and won. The virus that causes hepatitis B, for instance, also has sophisticated strategies for escaping immune destruction and can establish persistent latent and chronic infections. Likewise, HIV is probably not invulnerable.

Components of the immune system have proved able to neutralize the virus in the test tube, and people who are infected with HIV initially launch strong humoral and cellular assaults. They make antibodies against components of the viral envelope, and their killer *T* cells recognize internal components of the virus as well as parts of the envelope. These defenses may hold the virus in check for several years [see "HIV Infection: The Clinical Picture," by Robert R. Redfield and Donald S. Burke, page 90]. Yet these people eventually develop AIDS anyway. The immune system fights back; it just does not fight hard enough.

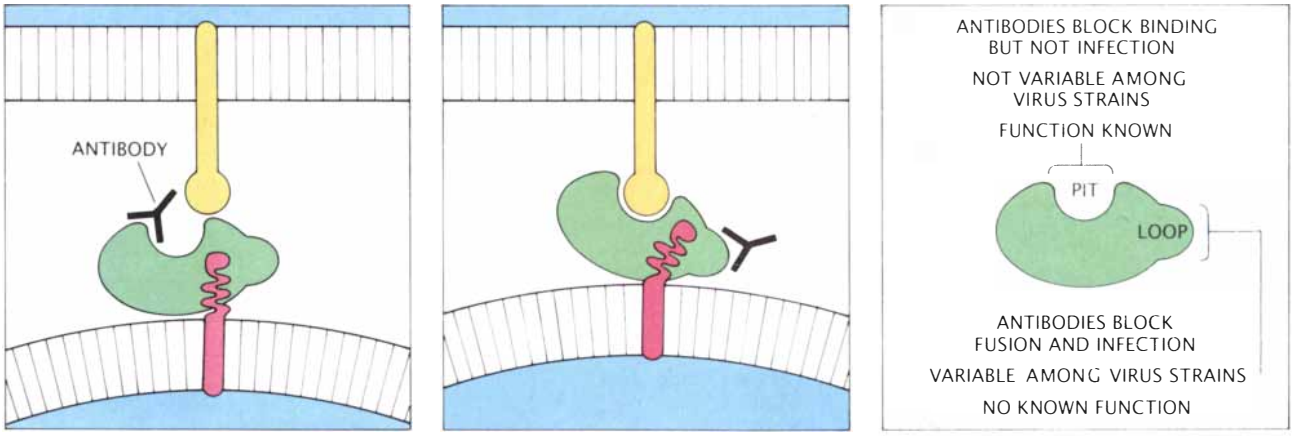
The trick is to discover which part of HIV elicits the most powerful natural immune response and amplify that response enough to overcome the virus. It might even be possible to teach the immune system to recognize antigenic sites that are ordinarily hidden by the virus. At present there is no reason to narrow the scope of investigation to any particular piece of the virus, but most studies focus on the gp120 envelope protein.

The *gp* stands for "glycoprotein"; in its natural state the protein is wrapped on itself like string and covered with a cloud of sugar (glyco-) molecules. It is anchored to the surface of the virus or an infected cell by a protein called gp41, which penetrates the surface membrane. The glycoproteins are derived from a precursor called gp160.

Most of gp120 is obscured from immunological sight by the cloud of sugar; the sugar molecules are poorly antigenic at best, because they are made by the host cell. The topography of the molecule, as far as it is known, is



STEPS IN HIV INFECTION include binding, anchorage and fusion, which are mediated by envelope components of the virus. Initially the virus associates with a receptor called CD4 on an uninfected cell. The pit of gp120 binds to CD4 (*1*); then gp41 becomes anchored in the cell membrane (*2*), holding the membranes in proximity so that they can fuse (*3*). Infected cells fuse with uninfected cells in much the same way. The loop probably has a role in the process, but it has not been identified.



ANTIBODIES BLOCK STEPS IN INFECTION if they bind to the pit or the loop of the gp120 protein. Antibodies against the pit block binding (*box at left*), and antibodies against the loop block fusion (*middle box*). The two sites have distinctly different characteristics that affect their suitability as immunogens, or substances that provoke an immune response (*box at right*).

distinguished by two features: a pit or cleft where the protein binds to CD4, and a loop that protrudes from the sugar cloud. What is known about these two features has largely been inferred from observations of their immunogenic properties. For example, it is difficult to raise antibodies against the CD4 binding site in the laboratory, and so it has been assumed that the site is recessed within the molecule and probably shrouded with sugar. The loop, on the other hand, is highly immunogenic and is therefore thought to be exposed.

Antibodies against both regions have been successful in blocking early steps in viral infection. A common sequence of events characterizes the initial encounter. First gp120 binds to the CD4 receptor on an uninfected cell; then gp41 becomes anchored in the adjoining membrane; next the two membranes begin to fuse, and the virus spills its contents into the cell. An immune reaction that interferes with any of these steps—binding, anchorage or fusion—could prevent infection.

In some ways the CD4 binding site of gp120 would seem to be the ideal immunogen. Although, as mentioned above, it could provoke an autoimmune response, it is integral to the virus's function and is highly conserved; that is, it does not vary much from strain to strain. The process by which the immune system gets at the CD4 site is probably complex, requiring prolonged exposure to the virus, since people who are infected with HIV do not start making antibodies that interfere with CD4 binding until about a year after they become infected. A vaccine making the CD4 site conspicuous might expedite the immune reaction. There is a problem, however, in that the antibodies that block binding do not block infection as well as one would expect.

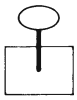
On the other hand, antibodies that interfere with postbinding steps are very good at blocking infection. Scott D. Putney, James R. Rusche and Kashi Javaherian at the Repligen Corporation, Flossie Wong-Staal and Robert C. Gallo at the National Cancer Institute and our group at the Duke University Medical Center with our colleagues Thomas J. Palker and Barton F. Haynes have demonstrated that such antibodies bind to the loop portion of the envelope protein. Indeed, the loop seems to be easily and rapidly recognized by the immune system and is therefore called the immunodominant site on gp120. People infected with HIV produce antibodies against the loop in the earlier stages of the infection; these antibodies might be responsible for controlling the spread of the virus during the disease's latent period.

Interestingly, the loop is also one of the most variable regions of the protein, and no one has been able to ascertain its function. Might the loop be a decoy? Its prominence could divert the immune system's attention from less accessible and more essential sites, while its hypervariability would enable it to dodge the immune response it draws (a single change in the loop's amino acid sequence creates a different antibody specificity). It might be possible to overcome the variability with a vaccine that would anticipate all mutated forms—the equivalent of a "universal loop."

Even as investigators puzzle out strategies for new vaccine candidates, the first crop of AIDS vaccines is being tested in human subjects. So far too little has been learned from the clinical trials to guide current research or hint at the superiority of one approach over the other. Most workers, however, are employing the subunit approach, and most are using whole envelope proteins as the subunit.

At least two modes of presentation are being considered to ensure that the immune system does not overlook the envelope antigen. The subunit can be complexed with an adjuvant, or the gene for the subunit can be inserted into an attenuated virus that will express the HIV protein in its own envelope. The first AIDS vaccine candidate to enter clinical trials in the U.S. is a gp160 subunit combined with the simple household chemical alum as an adjuvant. The vaccine, which is made by MicroGeneSys, Inc., in West Haven, Conn., entered trials in October, 1987, at the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID). Results gathered so far are ambiguous, but investigators think increasing dose levels may improve the candidate vaccine's performance. In Switzerland a gp120-adjuvant vaccine made by the Chiron Corporation of Emeryville, Calif., and the Swiss pharmaceutical company Ciba-Geigy AG has been approved for human trials. The trials will include about two dozen volunteers.

For subunit-adjuvant vaccines the type of adjuvant employed is often critical to the vaccine's performance. Immune recognition might well be improved by complexing the subunit with more sophisticated adjuvants, such as artificial membranes called liposomes or so-called immune-stimulating complexes. Work by Bror Morein of the University of Uppsala has demonstrated the efficacy of this approach with other immunogens, and

TYPE OF VACCINE	RESEARCH GROUP	TYPE OF IMMUNOGEN	IMMUNOGENS TESTED IN PEOPLE
 KILLED VIRUS	Salk Institute for Biological Studies University of California at Davis	Whole or disrupted inactivated HIV with genetic material removed	Whole inactivated HIV in infected people
 HIV SUBUNIT WITH ADJUVANT	Genentech Inc. MicroGeneSys, Inc. Immuno AG National Cancer Institute Repligen Corporation/Merck Sharp & Dohme Duke University Medical Center Ciba-Geigy AG/Chiron Corporation Smith Kline & French Laboratories Merieux Institute/ Cambridge Bioscience Corporation Viral Technologies, Inc. University of Uppsala Wistar Institute of Anatomy and Biology University of Paris Southwest Foundation for Biomedical Research	HIV envelope, pieces of envelope proteins or other structural antigens made by genetically engineered cells or synthesized in the laboratory	gp160, gp120 and synthetic fragment of p17
 HIV SUBUNIT IN VIRUS VECTOR	University of Paris Bristol-Myers, Co. Merieux Institute/Transgene S. A. Wyeth Laboratories National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases National Cancer Institute	Gene for HIV envelope protein inserted in vaccinia virus or adenovirus, or cells infected with HIV/ vaccinia recombinant	Vaccinia/HIV recombinant and cells infected with recombinant
 ANTI-IDIOTYPE	Clinical Research Center/Southwest Foundation for Biomedical Research/ Becton Dickinson Monoclonal Center, Inc./ Imperial Cancer Research Fund/ University College London	Antibody against CD4	Antibody against CD4

VACCINE RESEARCH encompasses several different strategies, in various phases of testing. Subunit vaccines are by far the most popular; they are made by combining a piece of HIV with an adjuvant or by inserting a gene for an HIV protein among the genes of a harmless virus "vector." Anti-idiotype vaccines consist of antibodies carrying an internal image of the CD4 receptor, meant to evoke another set of antibodies that look like CD4 and compete with it for binding to HIV. Killed HIV vaccines, which immunize with whole or disrupted virus, have been deemed too risky for inoculating people who have not already been exposed to HIV. This partial list is by no means exhaustive; the field is growing rapidly, and many of the groups are exploring more than one approach and collaborating with one another as well as with groups that are not listed.

its extension to experimental AIDS vaccines has already shown promise.

The most impressive results to date, however, have been obtained from trials of a subunit vaccine candidate using an attenuated vaccinia (cowpox) virus vector. These trials were conducted in Zaire, where the virus is endemic. They were the first test of an AIDS vaccine in humans; it took many by surprise when the head of the research group, Daniel Zagury of the University of Paris, announced that he had inoculated himself along with the first volunteers in November, 1986.

Zagury and his colleagues utilize a vaccinia technology pioneered by Bernard Moss of the NIAID to create the vector for the initial inoculation. They follow the inoculation with boosters consisting of purified gp160 and a special preparation of *T* cells: cells that were taken previously from the same individual, infected with the HIV-vaccinia vector and then killed before reinjection.

This protocol produces potent humoral and cellular anti-HIV activity of long duration. It is too complicated to be feasible as a vaccine strategy, but it demonstrates that immunity to HIV can be achieved in human beings. Zagury is looking for a simpler way to elicit the same response. Meanwhile results are just beginning to come in from U.S. trials of another gp160-vaccinia vaccine made by Oncogen, a Seattle, Wash., subsidiary of the Bristol-Myers Co.

Allan L. Goldstein and his colleagues at the George Washington University School of Medicine and Health Sciences were among the first investigators to design a subunit vaccine based on an internal component of the virus rather than an envelope antigen. Their vaccine candidate, called HGP-30, is made by Viral Technologies, Inc., in Washington, D.C. It is undergoing clinical trials in London and awaiting approval for trials in the U.S. HGP-30 mimics a part of the protein p17, which lines the inside of HIV's envelope. The protein is probably exposed to immune attack during processing by macrophages and infected cells: people who are infected with HIV produce antibodies against p17, and their infected cells often display the protein on their surface.

A somewhat more esoteric approach is under investigation in England by Angus G. Dalgleish of the Clinical Research Centre in Harrow and Ronald C. Kennedy of the Southwest Foundation for Biomedical Research in San Antonio, Tex. The two are part of an international consortium including the Imperial Cancer Research Fund, University College London and the Becton Dickinson Monoclonal Center, Inc. Their approach assumes that antibodies that mimic the receptor for the pathogen—in this case CD4—will compete very well with the receptor in binding the pathogen. Such antibodies can be generated with an immunogen that represents the "internal image" of the receptor the way a key represents the internal image of a lock. Hence inoculations of antibodies against CD4 should raise a population of antibodies, known as anti-idiotype antibodies, that resemble CD4. These could tie up free virus

in the blood. Indeed, CD4 made by genetic engineering is known to inhibit HIV infection in vitro, and the substance itself has been slated for clinical trials. In London two individuals have already received anti-idiotype inoculations; preliminary results have not been reported.

An experimental vaccine made from killed HIV has been prepared by Jonas Salk and his colleagues at the Salk Institute for Biological Studies. Because of the risks of inoculation with whole HIV, the vaccine would be appropriate only for boosting the immune reaction of people who are already infected with the virus. Such so-called postexposure vaccines have been somewhat effective in rabies-virus infections, but their efficacy has not been demonstrated for retroviral infections. Salk has administered his vaccine to roughly a dozen individuals with early symptoms of AIDS. So far he reports no pronounced benefits.

Although encouraging results are in short supply, it is remarkable in itself that so many candidate HIV vaccines have reached the human testing phase just four years after the cause of AIDS was discovered. This progress attests to the arduous efforts of vaccine researchers here and in other countries, faced with one of the most intractable viral diseases in medical history. Yet AIDS vaccine researchers are still working in the dark compared with their predecessors in at least one respect: they have no good animal model for the disease.

Other human viral diseases have analogues in laboratory animals, but most animals do not get AIDS from HIV. No one knows why. Considerable effort is being spent to find out, because the answer would probably reveal how human beings could defend themselves against the virus. Chimpanzees can be infected with the virus, but chimps infected years ago still show no signs of illness.

Several advances announced earlier this year offer hope of an alternative. Macaque monkeys infected with HIV-2—a variant of HIV found predominantly in West Africa—contracted AIDS and thus became the first subhuman animal ever to get a disease from a human retrovirus. The finding has excited the research community because it demonstrates that animals can get AIDS, and macaques are much easier to work with than chimps. It is not clear, however, to what extent the lessons learned from HIV-2 can be applied to its commoner and possibly more pathogenic relative, HIV-1. There is also evidence that rabbits infected with HIV display some signs of disease.

Other retroviruses may serve as HIV analogues. Simian immunodeficiency virus (SIV), for example, causes a disease much like AIDS in monkeys. Unfortunately the first test of an SIV vaccine, at the New England Regional Primate Center in Southboro, Mass., failed. Retroviruses that cause immunodeficiency syndromes in cows and cats are also being investigated.

In the meantime there is no way to establish criteria for the efficacy of AIDS vaccines before injecting them in humans. When other vaccines were about to enter clinical trials, investigators had a good idea of what kind of immune response was necessary to fend off the disease. But no one knows what constitutes protective immunity against AIDS. Is it a certain titer of antibodies, a particular level of killer-*T*-cell activity, or some synergistic interaction between the two?

And when can a given immunization be judged a success? Ethical obligations require that clinicians counsel their volunteers to avoid behavior that could lead to HIV infection, and so a low incidence of AIDS in these people could reflect "safe sex" practices rather than the action of an experimental vaccine. How can anyone be sure a vaccine has warded off disease short of injecting the vaccine recipient with HIV and observing the consequences? Given that the disease's latency period can last for five years, how long should doctors wait before concluding that protection has been achieved?

Clinicians also expect to be confronted with a shortage of trial volunteers, first because healthy people may be understandably reluctant to try a vaccine that has no demonstrated efficacy, and second because there simply may not be enough people in high-risk categories to provide statistically significant results. (People in low-risk groups have such a slim chance of encountering the virus that it would be virtually impossible to demonstrate efficacy in a reasonable period of time.)

The recruitment problem will get worse, not better, as more vaccines are developed. Each vaccine candidate requires from 50 to 100 high-risk volunteers for the first phase of trials, and the final phase of testing could involve thousands of people. Each volunteer can take part in only one trial. Massive testing is theoretically feasible in areas of the Third World where the virus is endemic, but such a program would be complicated by political, social and logistical considerations. Should a limit be placed on the number of vaccines that can win approval for human testing?

Finally, the liability issues surrounding the testing of an AIDS vaccine remain unresolved. Leaders of corporate research, such as Maurice R. Hilleman of the Merck Institute for Therapeutic Research, have warned that the uncertainty surrounding the risks of vaccine-related injuries and compensation for them could ultimately hinder development. Some framework must be drawn up that will allow companies to proceed with vaccine development and testing without courting litigious disaster.

In surveying all the difficulties bearing on the development of an AIDS vaccine, it would be easy enough to lose heart. But at one time the situation must have appeared just as hopeless to Jenner. A vaccine against HIV is the highest aspiration of AIDS research and would represent a triumph for virology as well.

Small wonder that scientists from all over the world have become engaged in this effort. Many of them participate in Gallo's international HIVAC (HIV vaccine) group, which brings together workers from 10 different countries. Major vaccine research programs have also been established in Great Britain, France, Sweden, Germany and Japan. In the U.S. the Public Health Service has drawn up a plan for vaccine development and evaluation that includes National Cooperative Vaccine Development Groups, which will coordinate collaboration between government, industry and academic efforts. Many other investigators are independently pooling their expertise in a multitude of virus types, in the mechanisms of gene regulation and in the workings of the immune system. We believe HIV cannot outwit such a combination.

FURTHER READING

PLAGUES AND PEOPLES. William H. McNeill. Doubleday & Co., 1976.

WHITHER IMMUNIZATION AGAINST VIRAL INFECTIONS? Maurice R. Hilleman in *Annals of Internal Medicine,* Vol. 101, No. 6, pages 852–858; December, 1984.

PROSPECTS FOR A VACCINE TO PROTECT AGAINST AIDS. Maurice R. Hilleman in *Viral Hepatitis and AIDS,* edited by Victor M. Villarejos. Editorial Trejos Hermanos (San José, Costa Rica), 1987.

NATURAL IMMUNITY TO HIV AND ITS POSSIBLE RELATIONSHIP TO VACCINE STRATEGIES. Dani P. Bolognesi in *Microbiological Sciences,* Vol. 5, No. 8, pages 236–241; August, 1988.

The Social Dimensions of AIDS

AIDS exposes the hidden weaknesses in human society; how the epidemic is dealt with will have a profound effect on society's future. A crucial issue is protection from discrimination

by Harvey V. Fineberg

The AIDS epidemic exposes hidden vulnerabilities in the human condition that are both biological and social. AIDS prompts courageous and generous acts, and it provokes mean-spirited and irrational responses. AIDS throws new light on traditional questions of value, compels a fresh look at the performance of the institutions we depend on and brings society to a crossroads for collective action that may, with the passage of years, mark a key measure of our time.

In the seven years since AIDS was recognized, the epidemic has touched on almost all aspects of society. Its reach extends to every social institution, from families, schools and communities to businesses, courts of law, the military and Federal, state and local governments. It has also had a profound impact on the way science, medicine and public health are practiced in the world.

Through its association with sex, blood, drugs and death, AIDS evokes basic human fears and inhibitions. In her book *Illness as Metaphor* Susan Sontag writes: "Although the way in which disease mystifies is set against a backdrop of new expectations, the disease itself ... arouses thoroughly old-fashioned kinds of dread. Any disease that is treated as a mystery and acutely enough feared will be felt morally, if not literally, contagious.... Contact with someone afflicted with a disease regarded as a mysterious malevolency inevitably feels like a trespass; worse, like the violation of a taboo."

HARVEY V. FINEBERG is dean of the Harvard School of Public Health. He is interested in medical and governmental decision making and has helped to set Government policy with respect to the AIDS epidemic. He was a member of the National Academy of Sciences/Institute of Medicine committee that published the 1986 report *Confronting AIDS*. Fineberg is a three-time Harvard University alumnus, having received his B.A., M.D. and Ph.D. degrees there.

Although she was reflecting on cancer, Sontag's words are even more appropriate for AIDS, a condition that is literally as well as morally contagious. The contagion is compounded by the stigma attached to the behaviors most prominently associated with HIV infection in the U.S.: homosexual intercourse and intravenous drug use. Knowledge of HIV and its mode of spread, convincing as it is to scientists and epidemiologists, is not powerful enough to fully dissolve the public sense of mystery and old-fashioned dread. The protective garb needlessly donned by workers transporting a person with AIDS is reminiscent of the costume worn by physicians treating plague victims in 18th-century France. People known to be infected with HIV have lost jobs, homes and friends. Children with AIDS have been denied access to public schools and in 1987 a major air carrier temporarily refused to transport patients with AIDS. People with AIDS have even been denied transportation to the grave, as some funeral directors have refused to handle their corpses.

AIDS is a modern affliction. The AIDS epidemic was fomented by changes in social mores and lifestyle that are unique to the latter part of the 20th century: urbanization in Africa, gay consciousness and liberation in the U.S., development of technologies for the preservation and shipment of blood-clotting factors for hemophiliacs, and modern air travel. Unlike some other infectious diseases, the AIDS virus is carried and transmitted by the human host; there is no apparent insect or other animal vector and the virus has no special climatic requirements. Because AIDS spreads directly from one person to another, the disease is—at least potentially—a universal problem. It is the one contemporary disease that is keenly felt as an urgent problem in both industrialized and less developed countries.

HIV is insidious. It corrupts vital body fluids, turning blood and semen from sources of life into instruments of death. The virus insinuates itself into the genetic material of selected cells, where it may remain quiescent for prolonged periods of time. When it is active, the virus gradually undermines the body's immune system, eventually rendering it vulnerable to opportunistic infections. During the latency period, which may average eight years or longer, the patient feels perfectly well yet is capable of transmitting the virus to others. HIV infection remains at the present time incurable, a pointed reminder of humanity's thrall to the tyranny of nature.

Because of its association with sex and its long latency period, AIDS has altered our thinking and prompted much discussion about human relations, love and sexuality. The AIDS epidemic has heightened awareness of homosexuality in our society, promoting understanding and tolerance in some and reinforcing aversion in others. The ease and readiness with which many now speak in public about homosexuality, sexual practices, the use of condoms and similar matters could hardly have been foreseen 10 years ago. The willingness of so many to see formerly taboo subjects presented in the media testifies to the extent to which AIDS has affected the standards of public discourse. The National AIDS Awareness Test presented on U.S. television in September, 1987, was introduced with the warning that some viewers might be offended; viewers were assured that nearly all those surveyed during the program's preparation believed the subject should be aired. Soon such reassurances about the need to discuss AIDS candidly will seem superfluous, because it will be obvious that we can no longer afford to live according to old inhibitions in

discussing sexual practices and other risk factors that relate to this disease.

The HIV epidemic is marked by sharp variation in geographic, racial and gender composition. Globally three disparate patterns in the distribution of AIDS have been discerned. In the U.S. and other industrialized countries with large numbers of cases, the predominant modes of spread have been through homosexual activities and intravenous drug use, and the ratio of male to female cases is approximately 10 to one. In central, eastern and southern Africa and in parts of the Caribbean, heterosexual spread predominates, with a male to female ratio of about one to one. In these economically disadvantaged parts of the world perinatal transmission is high and blood-borne spread continues to be a significant problem because of inadequate or absent screening procedures. In some parts of the world, such as eastern Europe, the Middle East and Asia, very few cases have been reported. Officials in these countries tend to ascribe most of their cases to travel, or to contacts with travelers from endemic areas, much as cases of heterosexual transmission in the U.S. are mainly attributed to contact with individuals who are bisexual or intravenous drug users. In neither setting should the current pattern offer much reassurance about the future.

Within the U.S. the geographic distribution of AIDS is highly uneven, minorities are disproportionately represented and intravenous drug use plays an increasing role in transmission. By mid-1988 the U.S. had counted 65,000 cases. More than half the states have reported fewer than 400 cases each, with a range of from fewer than 10 in each of the Dakotas to more than 16,000 in New York. The distribution is expected to be lopsided for some time, but the rest of the country is tending to catch up with the epicenters of the epidemic in New York City and San Francisco. In 1984 these cities had half of all the AIDS cases in the U.S.; in 1987 they had only 25 percent of new cases.

In San Francisco 85 percent of all reported cases of AIDS are among homosexual men who deny use of intravenous drugs; in contrast, 36 percent of cases in New York City are related to intravenous drug use. The majority of infected women in the U.S., who constituted more than 10 percent of the new cases of AIDS in the first half of 1988, are exposed by intravenous drug use, and an estimated 70 percent of HIV infection in newborns is related to intravenous drugs. The epidemic has hit minority communities particularly hard. Blacks and Hispanics constitute about 20 percent of the U.S. population yet make up 40 percent of AIDS cases.

NEW YORK MEMORIAL QUILT is a reminder of lives lost to AIDS. Each panel represents a resident of the New York area who died of the disease. The quilt, shown here in Central Park, will be incorporated in the national Names Project AIDS quilt.

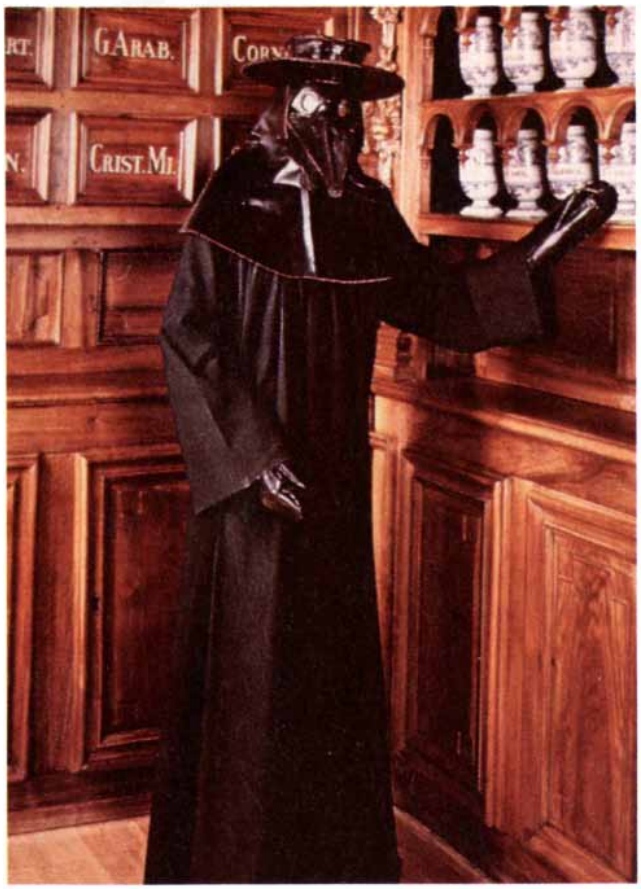
The principal means by which the spread of HIV infection can be stemmed—education and altered behavior patterns—are at once clear and elusive. Behavior related to sex and drugs is biologically based, socially conditioned and resistant to change. In some of the homosexual communities most severely affected by AIDS, particularly those in San Francisco, sustained and intensive educational efforts have been rewarded by striking changes in behavior and arrested transmission of the HIV.

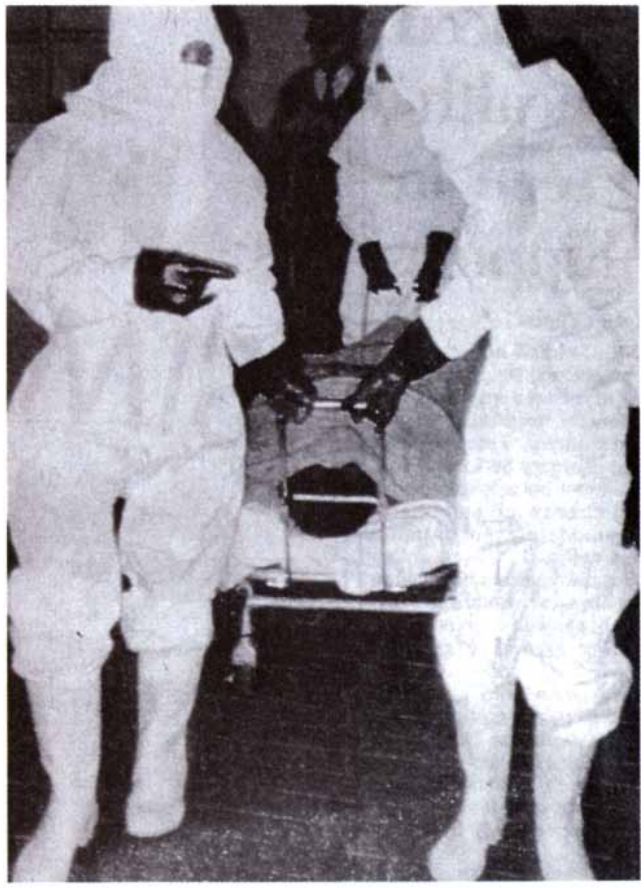
Yet the gap between knowledge and personal action remains wide. In a national poll conducted in August, 1987, more than 90 percent of Americans knew they could contract AIDS from having sex or sharing needles with an infected person. Yet when they were asked about the possibility of contracting AIDS themselves, 90 percent of all respondents said they viewed their own risk as low or nonexistent. Surveys taken after a 1987 New York City advertising campaign for AIDS prevention showed that 80 percent of the respondents agreed that sexually active people should carry condoms and women should tell their sexual partner to use a condom. Yet the reported numbers and frequency of sexual contacts in the preceding month had not changed and more than 60 percent of those surveyed said they had failed to use a condom more than just some of the time. If the effectiveness of education is to be measured by behavioral change, success will not come easily.

Health officials are particularly concerned about the increase in HIV infection among intravenous drug users. In 1987 they represented 16 percent of new AIDS cases; in the first half of 1988 that number had grown to 21 percent. Serum surveys reveal that 50 percent or more of the intravenous drug users in New York City have antibodies to HIV. Of the more than 1.2 million intravenous drug users in the U.S., fewer than 250,000 are estimated to be in treatment at any one time. In some cities the waiting period for those who seek treatment is longer than six months.

Such bleak statistics led the President's Commission on the Human Immunodeficiency Virus Epidemic to call for 2,500 new treatment sites and an additional annual investment of $1.5 billion in drug-control programs. At the community level, street workers in a number of cities are attempting to protect drug users from HIV by showing them how to clean their needles and syringes with dilute bleach solution. Following the lead of European cities, Portland, Ore., recently undertook a trial program of providing drug users with sterile needles in exchange for dirty ones. Similar proposals have been made in Boston and New York, where they have met with considerable controversy. Critics oppose any appearance of state-sanctioned drug use and doubt the efficacy of exchange programs; advocates hold the preservation of life as a higher value and argue in favor of trial programs.

Another controversial proposal to stem the spread of AIDS, considered by legislatures in more than 30 states, is mandatory premarital screening for antibodies to HIV. Public-health officials and others have argued strenuously against such measures, saying that universal premarital screening





FEAR OF CONTAGION was a legitimate concern during the plague outbreak of 1720, when French physicians wore special garments to avoid infection from respiratory droplets and fleas (*left*). Such fear is unjustified in the case of AIDS, but it remains widespread. Two ambulance workers in Hong Kong (*right*) donned protective suits to transport an AIDS patient.

would be counterproductive at this time. They point out that such tests would yield few truly positive results in a low-risk population, yet would overwhelm test sites, produce needless anxiety among those tested and waste resources. For the most part the arguments against screening have been convincing, although several states, including Illinois, adopted such legislation last year. Early experience in Illinois, however, bears out the predictions of public-health officials, suggesting that there are many problems and few benefits associated with universal premarital screening.

As with many other public-health measures, decisions about HIV screening tests should be reexamined in light of the changing dynamics of the AIDS epidemic. As the prevalence of the disease increases, the ratio of false-positive results to true positives will decrease. (The reasons for the decrease are technical and somewhat beyond the scope of this article, but basically they stem from the increase of the fraction of the population that is infected.) Technical advances in testing and improvements in the quality assurance of laboratories where the tests are conducted will also enhance performance. If there are advances in therapy, such as development of an effective and safe treatment for the asymptomatic HIV carrier, then increased emphasis on screening would be more desirable.

Containing the spread of HIV infection in the U.S. today requires special attention to minority communities. Some black leaders have been understandably reluctant to add the stigma of AIDS to the burden of racism. An increasing number of them, however, are now prepared to take up the challenge of stopping the spread of HIV. The singer Dionne Warwick, for example, who was appointed Ambassador of Health by the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services in 1987, has made AIDS one of her highest priorities. She has focused her efforts on the minority community, enlisting the support of other celebrities to raise money for education, research and patient services. In fiscal 1988 the U.S. Centers for Disease Control spent $10 million on state programs to combat HIV in minority communities, with $3 million earmarked for community organizations. Some private foundations are also giving special attention to community-based programs. With the support of the Kaiser Family Foundation in Menlo Park, Calif., the School of Medicine at Morehouse College in Atlanta is managing a health-promotion program that includes AIDS education for minority communities in 15 eastern states.

SPECIAL-PRECAUTION SIGNS identify hospital rooms of HIV-positive patients (here children) and remind staff to follow special procedures for handling blood or other fluids. Recently the Centers for Disease Control have recommended that hospitals adopt universal precautions and treat all patients' secretions as if they contained HIV.

Intravenous drug use flourishes in areas that are burdened by unemployment, homelessness, welfare dependency, prostitution, crime, school dropout and teen-age pregnancy. These conditions are so intertwined that no one of them can be solved in the long term without providing the fundamental infrastructure—jobs, schools and housing—needed by any community. Such an infrastructure would go a long way toward creating the individual self-respect, dignity and hope for the future that can forestall the turning to drugs in the first place.

Perhaps the specter of AIDS will arouse the nation's determination to face up to those realities. The darker possibility is that racial discrimination will become camouflaged under the delusion that AIDS is a problem for poor blacks and Hispanics and need not concern white, middle-class America. It is as dangerous and shortsighted for whites to view AIDS as a minority disease as it has been for blacks and Hispanics to view AIDS as a white homosexual disease. Anyone who engages in risky activities, including heterosexual sex outside of a monogamous relationship, stands a chance of becoming infected. The risk in some geographic areas and some population groups is now exceedingly low, but no one can foresee with confidence the course of the HIV epidemic over the next 25 years.

The advent of AIDS has indelibly marked the practice of medicine in the U.S. The adoption of universal precautions by many hospitals means that the blood and certain body fluids of all patients are to be regarded as potentially infectious to health-care workers. Some hospitals in cities with large numbers of AIDS patients have established dedicated clinical units to care for hospitalized AIDS patients. At the other extreme, a private pediatric hospital recently announced that it was not going to admit HIV-infected children. If an admitted child is found to harbor the AIDS virus, then the child will be transferred to another hospital. The same hospital also began a systematic testing program for its employees to ensure that the entire institution would remain free of HIV infection. Many hospitals frankly do not want AIDS to drive away their "real" patients: those who can most easily pay.

The stress of AIDS on health-care workers can be tremendous. Doctors and nurses face young and desperately ill patients suffering from a disease for which there is at present no cure. The medical and insurance systems around them resist the kind of counseling, home treatment and hospice care that the patient may need most. The doctor may be caught in conflicts between patients, lovers, family and friends; other AIDS patients may have no evident social support at all.

What is more, health-care workers

have legitimate concerns about occupational exposure to HIV, although that risk is low. (Available data suggest that the risk of transmission from a single needle stick is less than half of 1 percent.) Some may harbor prejudice or moral judgments about the behavior of their patients. Fewer physicians today are choosing to pursue careers in internal medicine, and it may be that AIDS is part of the reason. No other disease in modern times has engendered such frustration, resentment and anxiety or demanded more compassion, intelligence, selflessness and integrity on the part of health professionals.

A disease such as AIDS drains an economy in many ways. AIDS imposes an economic toll on every business, school, public agency, church congregation and community group responsive to the epidemic. In direct costs (those covering medical, scientific and other social expenditures) AIDS will cost the American public tens of billions of dollars over the next decade; indirect costs (such as lost wages from premature death and disability) will add several hundred billion more.

U.S. Public Health Service expenditures on AIDS have grown from approximately $60 million in fiscal 1984 to more than $900 million in fiscal 1988. The budget request for 1989 exceeds $1.2 billion, including $400 million for the Centers for Disease Control and $600 million for the National Institutes of Health. These sums cover scientific research, disease surveillance, prevention and control efforts. Total Federal expenditures for AIDS in fiscal 1989 are projected to exceed $2 billion, including $600 million for the Federal share of patient care through Medicaid.

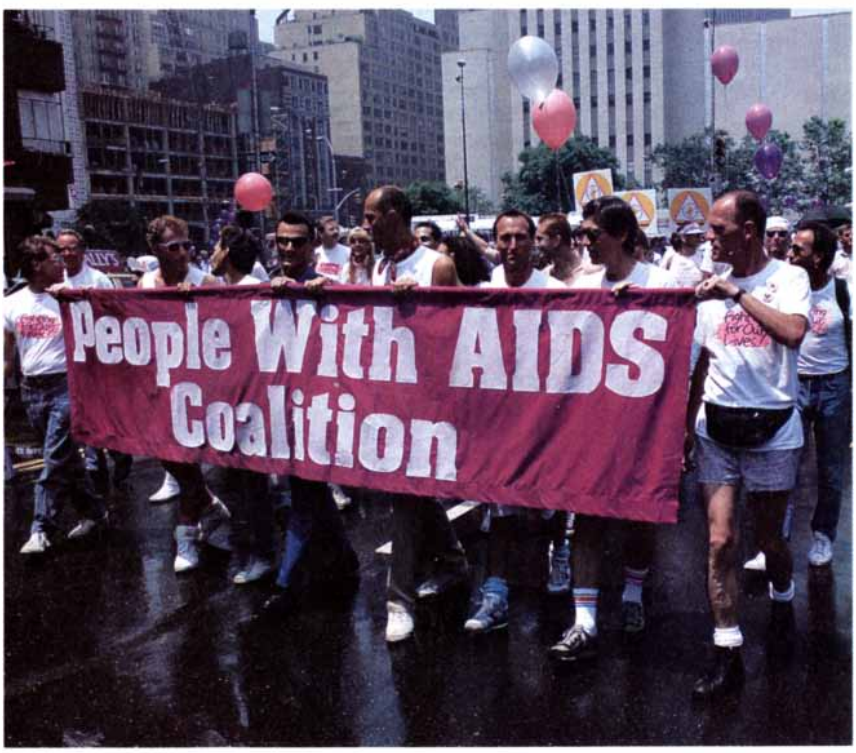
At the state level, expenditures on AIDS have also risen dramatically, from less than $10 million in 1984 to more than $150 million in 1988. Much of that is spent by California and New York; in fiscal 1988 the two states accounted for 46 percent of all AIDS cases and more than 60 percent of state expenditures. On the level of the cities, expenditures are also great: New York City spent more than $130 million on AIDS in 1988 and has budgeted $170 million for the fiscal year 1989, mainly because most of the city's AIDS patients are cared for in public hospitals.

One of the most remarkable and heartening by-products of the HIV epidemic in the U.S. has been the development of grass-roots organizations dedicated to serving the needs of people with AIDS. An early and sustained commitment to building these organizations has come from the homosexual community. Groups such as the Shanti Project in San Francisco, the Gay Men's Health Crisis, Inc., in New York City and the AIDS Action Committee in Boston were begun in an effort to reach out and relieve the suffering of patients the world seemed to have turned against. As nonprofit, community-based organizations, they have provided a way for thousands of volunteers to give countless hours of assistance and comfort to patients, their loved ones and families. These organizations developed AIDS telephone hotlines and created specific educational materials for various cultural groups at high risk of HIV infection. They have also been outspoken and effective advocates for all those touched by the epidemic. In a larger social sense, these groups have served as bridges between the gay and lesbian and the straight communities, bringing together individuals who share a commitment to humanitarian goals and a refusal to give in to a lethal enemy.

AIDS has attracted the support of celebrities, business leaders and private foundations. Following the death of her friend Rock Hudson, Elizabeth Taylor became the National Chair of the American Foundation for AIDS Research (AmFAR), the only national foundation dedicated solely to combating AIDS. AmFAR has raised and devoted millions of dollars to scientific research and has recently broadened its agenda to include innovative educational and community-based service programs.

In 1986 the Robert Wood Johnson Foundation of Princeton, N.J., committed more than $20 million to projects for developing comprehensive and coordinated care for patients with AIDS. More recently the Johnson Foundation has invited applications for support of community-based prevention and service programs. In 1987 the Ford Foundation announced a collaborative, $4.5-million AIDS prevention and service program. By mid-1987 more than 150 foundations were providing support to AIDS-related projects.

Several major insurance companies have spent millions of dollars sponsoring AIDS education programs. Metropolitan Life underwrote the 1987 broadcast of the National AIDS Awareness Test on U.S. television. The New York Life Insurance Co. provided support for the New York City Department of Health's initial advertising campaign to prevent AIDS, a campaign that was developed pro bono by the adver-



GAY COMMUNITY has fought for increased awareness of AIDS and for greater funding of AIDS-related projects. About 100,000 people marched in New York's Gay Liberation Day parade earlier this year, including the People With AIDS Coalition.

tising firm Saatchi & Saatchi Compton, Inc. Scores of prominent individuals in the arts, sports and business communities have lent their time, names and dollars to the struggle against AIDS.

Medical care for those suffering from AIDS is expensive. Estimates of the average lifetime medical costs per patient in the U.S. have ranged from less than $30,000 to more than $140,000, with more recent figures in the vicinity of from $50,000 to $60,000 per patient. These costs do not, of course, include the many thousands of hours that volunteers, family members and friends have contributed to the care of AIDS patients in cities across the U.S. It should be noted that although the cost of treating a patient with AIDS is high, it is well within the range of costs for severely ill patients with other conditions. Patients who require liver transplants, for example, have lifetime medical costs that are three to four times higher on the average than those of an AIDS patient.

Advances in medical care have begun to lower the cost of high-quality services to AIDS patients. The Kaiser-Permanente Medical Group of northern California, for example, established an outpatient center in 1986 to administer various AIDS therapies, including the life-prolonging drug AZT. During its first 18 months of operation the outpatient treatment center saved an estimated 3,500 hospital days. Although pharmacy costs nearly doubled between 1986 and the first half of 1987, average costs for the care of an AIDS patient declined 20 percent because of a 36 percent drop in overall hospital expenses during that period. New treatments in the future may further reduce and possibly eliminate some costs. On the other hand, new and expensive treatment could increase the average cost of care. The uncertain cost of future therapy is another hazy segment in the crystal ball foretelling the future of AIDS.

Total personal medical costs for AIDS will depend both on the average cost per patient and the number of patients. Uncertainty about the future size of the epidemic increases with the distance of the projection. The U.S. Public Health Service recently predicted that 450,000 cases will have been diagnosed by the end of 1993, extending its earlier estimate of 270,000 by the end of 1991. Personal medical costs for AIDS patients during 1991 have been projected to reach levels of between $4.5 and $8.5 billion.

Other costs associated with AIDS patients are subtler. When a hospital adopts universal precautions requiring frequent use of disposable gloves, gowns, masks and protective eyewear, hires additional infectious-disease specialists and infection-control personnel, follows special blood-screening and laboratory procedures and undertakes education and counseling programs for its staff, such costs are spread over all patients and are not found on the bills of those having a diagnosis of AIDS.

CAMPAIGN by the New York City Department of Health with the help of Saatchi & Saatchi Compton, Inc., is aimed at preventing the spread of AIDS among heterosexuals. This poster was distributed in New York subways in English and Spanish.

The HIV epidemic also results in medical expenditures for patients who are not infected with the virus. The "worried well" who experience general symptoms of fatigue, anxiety or poor appetite may seek medical care and testing because they are concerned about HIV infection. Family members and friends of patients with HIV infection may appropriately seek psychological counseling. HIV infection can also indirectly contribute to the rise of other infections in the community. After declining for many decades, tuberculosis has begun to increase in the U.S. Between 1984 and 1986 reported cases jumped 36 percent in New York City. Today these new cases are found mainly in patients with HIV infection, but as more people in the community develop active tuberculosis the risk of spread to those not infected with HIV will increase. As if to taunt progress in the life sciences in the 20th century, HIV not only has caused the disease most feared in America near the end of the century but also has fueled a resurgence of tuberculosis, the disease most feared at the beginning of the century.

Between 10,000 and 20,000 children in the U.S. are expected to have symptomatic HIV infection in 1991, most of them infected at birth by their mothers. This will represent a 10-to-20-fold increase over the number of newborns afflicted by the end of 1988. In New York City at present between 1 and 2 percent of all women giving birth are infected with HIV, and the proportion rises to more than 5 percent in some areas. The circumstances of life for many of these mothers—poor, ill, unwed and dependent on drugs—prevent them from caring for their infants. Half of the babies may escape infection, yet they have no place to go; many remain in the hospital, where the cost for their care can exceed $250,000 per year. Both

the newborns and those who pay their bills would benefit from expanded nursery care outside the hospital, and if the projected number of infected newborns is even remotely correct, the need for many more nonhospital nursery facilities is acute.

The HIV epidemic exposes and exacerbates shortcomings in the system of paying for health care in the U.S. One in five AIDS patients has no insurance; 40 percent of AIDS patients are covered by Medicaid (more than four times the proportion in the general population). Medicaid, a program designed to cover the medical costs of the indigent, is a partnership between the Federal and state governments. Because of the variability in state rules for eligibility, Medicaid covers only 40 percent of those with incomes below the poverty line and frequently pays less than the cost of care. Even private insurers often do not cover the kinds of services—outpatient, home and hospice care—most needed by people infected with HIV. Private health insurance, for example, generally covers only 15 percent of the cost of drugs prescribed outside the hospital.

These problems can be solved by adopting a number of different strategies: state-based insurance risk pools or subsidies for uninsured patients; reliance on case managers to determine whether insurers should pay for services normally not covered; adjustments in the national standards of Medicaid eligibility and payment; simplification of procedures for states to request flexibility in Medicaid coverage; further extension of insurance coverage for employees who lose their jobs; mandated employer health insurance, and broadened Federal and state support of health insurance. In the case of AIDS, medicine and economy go hand in hand: failure to bring the means of payment into line with patient needs is dime wise and dollar foolish.

Although the costs associated with AIDS are undeniably great, those costs must be put into perspective. The U.S. spends more than half a trillion dollars per year on medical care. Even allowing for a relatively pessimistic projection of the AIDS epidemic, the billions spent on AIDS over the next five years will amount to a small fraction of the country's total health-care expenditures. In the cities and states hardest hit by the epidemic, however, the financial toll will be much heavier. Medical care for the additional cases expected in New York City by 1991 are estimated to cost $100 per resident, in San Francisco $350 per resident.

In parts of Africa and the Caribbean, where HIV infection is more prevalent than in the U.S., weakened economies are much less able to sustain the onslaught of the disease. In the city of Kinshasa in Zaire between 4 and 8 percent of the total population and more than a fourth of the hospitalized patients are thought to be infected with HIV. Many of those infected are in the educated middle class and are business people and professionals. In a dramatic press conference held in October, 1987, the president of Zambia announced that his son had died of AIDS. Demographic projections suggest that the long-term impact of AIDS on these populations may be similar to a prolonged war. In countries where the per capita national product is measured in hundreds of dollars and annual per capita expenditures on health care are $5 or less, a drug such as AZT that costs $8,000 per year might as well be nonexistent.

The World Health Organization's Global Program on AIDS convened an extraordinary World Summit of Ministers of Health in London in January, 1988. Their conference concluded with a declaration on AIDS prevention that emphasized broadening the scope of education, promoting worldwide exchange of information and reinforcing the importance of nondiscriminatory policies. The 41st World Health Assembly in Geneva in May adopted a formal resolution endorsing confidentiality of HIV testing and urging member states to avoid discrimination against AIDS patients in the provision of services, in employment and in travel. A similar call for antidiscrimination laws was the first recommendation of the June 1988 report of the U.S. Presidential Commission on the HIV Epidemic.

Public-health officials should have three primary objectives in coping with the AIDS epidemic. They are, first, to provide compassionate, effective and cost-sensitive care to the people who have the disease; second, to prevent further transmission of the disease, and third, to aggressively pursue scientific research that may lead to more effective prevention, diagnosis and treatment. The first objective requires committed and well-trained health professionals, increased services and a responsive health-care financing system. The second requires a sustained and unprecedented educational effort, judicious use of available public-health measures and special attention to minority communities, intravenous drug users and other populations at high risk of infection. The third requires building new human and institutional capacities, balancing basic and applied objectives and designing coherent research plans.

A strategy to accomplish these objectives stands on four cornerstones. The first is leadership that will inspire, direct and organize the fight against AIDS at local, state, national and international levels. The second is adequate financial resources to do the job, drawn mostly from public sources but also from some private ones. The third is legal protection against discrimination, on which so much else depends. And the fourth is an accurate and timely surveillance system that can track and project the status of the epidemic. The future course of the HIV epidemic is uncertain and a strategy that takes account of such uncertainty is imperative.

Our world has been made a different place by the human immunodeficiency virus. More profoundly, our society is being shaped by our response to the epidemic. Will AIDS enhance understanding and tolerance of different sexual orientations, or will it harden traditional norms of acceptable and deviant sexual behavior? Will AIDS be perceived as a universal threat to all humanity, or will it be regarded as a problem of the underclass, the poor and uneducated, and the minorities? Will AIDS heighten the tension between moralistic and pragmatic approaches to behavior and health, or can solutions be found that are both effective and morally acceptable? Will AIDS evoke the selfless dedication of physicians, nurses and other health professionals, or will caregivers shun AIDS patients and seek other ways to practice their craft? How we choose to answer such questions, and the society we thus shape, is up to us.

FURTHER READING

CONFRONTING AIDS: DIRECTIONS FOR PUBLIC HEALTH, HEALTH CARE, AND RESEARCH. Edited by Roy Widdus. National Academy Press, 1986.

AIDS PREVENTION AND CONTROL. World Summit of Ministers of Health on Programmes for AIDS Prevention. Pergamon Press, 1988.

CONFRONTING AIDS: UPDATE 1988. Edited by Robin Weiss. National Academy Press, 1988.

REPORT OF THE PRESIDENTIAL COMMISSION ON THE HUMAN IMMUNODEFICIENCY VIRUS EPIDEMIC. U.S. Government Printing Office, 1988.

EDUCATION TO PREVENT AIDS: PROSPECTS AND OBSTACLES. Harvey V. Fineberg in *Science*, Vol. 239, No. 4840, pages 592–596; February 5, 1988.

Introducing...

CARE *of the* SURGICAL PATIENT

from SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN *Medicine*

Because the quality of your care depends on the quality of your information.

Treating pre and post operative patients poses a unique set of challenges. Yet in one way it's no different than any other practice issue.

Doing it well takes the right information.

That's why SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN *Medicine* is pleased to announce the publication of *CARE of the SURGICAL PATIENT.*

The definitive resource on pre and post-operative care.

CARE of the SURGICAL PATIENT gives you ready access to the most authoritative and current information on pre and post-operative standards available anywhere.

Written and designed by prominent surgeons under the supervision of the American College of Surgeons' Committee on Pre and Postoperative Care, *CARE of the SURGICAL PATIENT* provides two volumes – over 1,500 pages – of practical information on both critical and elective care.

And, *CARE of the SURGICAL PATIENT* is updated twice a year, with each surgeon-author reviewing his own specialty. Updates include new information on significant topics, such as current developments on AIDS.

In short, *CARE of the SURGICAL PATIENT* presents the standards for pre and postoperative treatment. You simply won't find a more important resource. Or one that organizes its information in such an intelligent way.

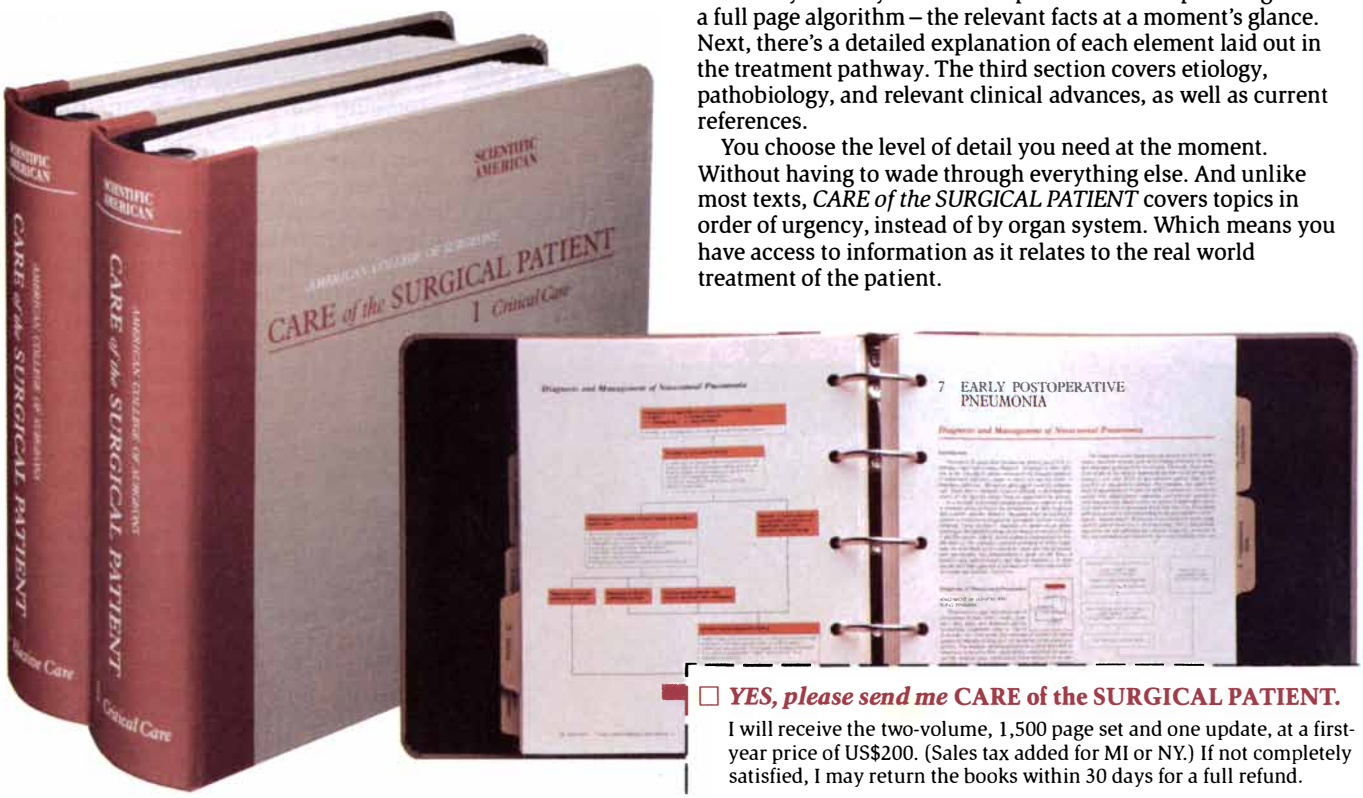
A unique system for rapid information retrieval.

CARE of the SURGICAL PATIENT is designed to get you the information you need, the way you need it.

Quickly. And intelligently.

The key is the system's three-part format. Chapters begin with a full page algorithm – the relevant facts at a moment's glance. Next, there's a detailed explanation of each element laid out in the treatment pathway. The third section covers etiology, pathobiology, and relevant clinical advances, as well as current references.

You choose the level of detail you need at the moment. Without having to wade through everything else. And unlike most texts, *CARE of the SURGICAL PATIENT* covers topics in order of urgency, instead of by organ system. Which means you have access to information as it relates to the real world treatment of the patient.



Try CARE of the SURGICAL PATIENT *Free for 30 days.*

You'll find it the most valuable resource on pre and post-operative care that's ever been published. And if you're not satisfied, just return it. No risk. No obligation.

CARE of the SURGICAL PATIENT, from SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN *Medicine*. No other resource helps you keep up better.

And the better you keep up, the better your care.

☐ ***YES, please send me*** **CARE of the SURGICAL PATIENT.**

I will receive the two-volume, 1,500 page set and one update, at a first-year price of US$200. (Sales tax added for MI or NY.) If not completely satisfied, I may return the books within 30 days for a full refund.

☐ Check enclosed ☐ MasterCard ☐ VISA ☐ Bill me

Acct.# _____ Exp. Date _____

Name _____

Address _____

City _____ State _____ Zip _____

Specialty _____

Or call toll free 1-800 345 8112.

SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN MEDICINE 415 Madison Avenue, New York, NY 10017

C1

SCIENCE AND BUSINESS

Long March to Approval

Companies and clinicians unite to create medical devices

Medical devices, European microchips, television blues, clever fruit

Within the next year at the Mayo Clinic in Rochester, Minn., 20 patients undergoing spinal surgery will help to test a new device that monitors their motor abilities by stimulating the brain so that it triggers muscles in the legs or arms. In Baltimore eight diabetic patients at the Johns Hopkins Diabetes Center have stopped injecting themselves with daily doses of insulin, relying instead on an experimental implanted pump to supply the hormone.

Although these inventions may be the spiritual descendants of earlier medical devices, including pacemakers, the birth process has certainly changed. In the late 1950's Wilson Greatbatch labored in a barn over designs for the first successful implantable pacemaker, using $2,000 of his savings to support the work. Today investigators often ally themselves with companies and spend several years and millions of dollars before an instrument reaches the market. The shift largely reflects the increasingly complex regulatory process the devices must weather.

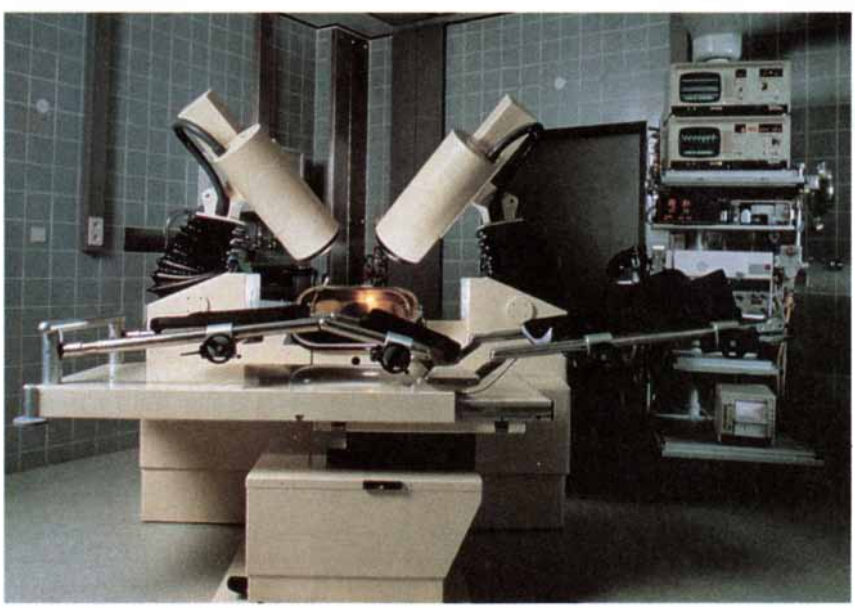
In 1976, spurred by concerns about the safety of complex medical equipment, Congress empowered the Food and Drug Adminstration to regulate devices—from Band-Aids to X-ray machines—in the same way as the agency monitored pharmaceutical products. Under the regulations, developers of devices that could pose significant risks to patients must prove through a series of clinical trials that they are safe and effective. Medical instruments on the market before the 1976 act and later ones judged "substantially equivalent" are exempted until the FDA can assess the available data on them.

Nowadays investigators sometimes begin collaborating with a company when they have only an idea for a device. David R. Holmes, Jr., a cardiologist at the Mayo Clinic, has spent much time testing ways of cleaning obstructing calcific deposits from the aortic valves. One of his latest plans: find the resonant frequency of the deposits, focus sonic energy on them and hope that they will fracture. A California manufacturer responded enthusiastically. Now Holmes is sending specimens of the deposits to the company's engineers, who are in turn designing a device.

Some workers even turn to a consortium of companies. In the development of the programmable, implantable insulin pump at Johns Hopkins, for example, investigators chose Pacesetter Systems in Sylmar, Calif., to manufacture and market the pump, but they worked with two other companies to develop the pump's fluid-handling systems and refine the variety of insulin it infuses.

Investigators begin preclinical trials—usually with animals—when they think the technology is ready and continue until they judge there is enough experience to warrant human trials. Christopher D. Saudek, director of the Johns Hopkins Diabetes Center, supervised five years of animal trials for the implantable insulin pump. Some companies bypass animal studies in the U.S. by substituting clinical experience from abroad. This was the route taken by the medical division of Dornier, a West German company, when it introduced the lithotripter to the U.S. Lithotripters smash kidney stones by aiming sonic energy at the stones. By the time Dornier applied to begin clinical trials in the U.S., the equipment had been approved for sale in Germany.

Before starting trials with human patients, clinicians must gain approval first from their institutional review board and then from the FDA—a process that can be lengthy. For the past year Jasper R. Daube, a neurophysiologist at the Mayo Clinic, has had sitting in his laboratory a magnetic stimulator for testing muscles and nerves. Actuated near a patient's arm, the device stimulates the muscles and causes a jerk. But it is most valuable, Daube says, for testing a patient's motor pathways by stimulating the brain. In this way he hopes the stimulator will help to check for damage to motor coordination—and the likelihood of paralysis—in an anesthetized patient undergoing spinal surgery. Even though doctors in Europe have already



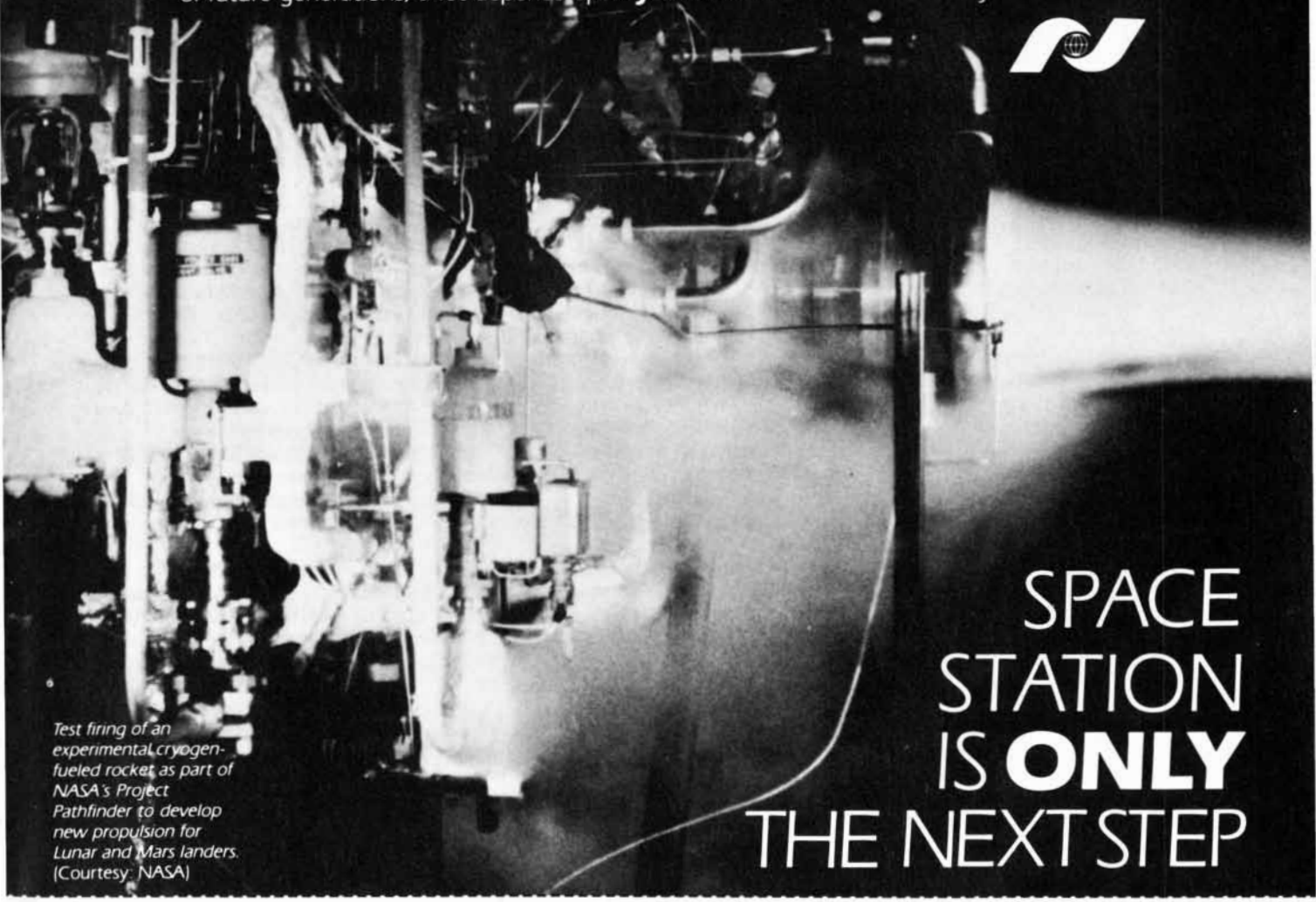
The lithotripter, built by West Germany's Dornier company, crushes kidney stones by aiming sonic waves at them. The first lithotripter was approved by the Food and Drug Administration for U.S. distribution in 1986.

Once involved in a project many of us tend to lose sight of the overall context in which that project began. NASA has called the Space Station: "The Next Logical Step." What most of us forget is what it is a logical step towards.

With **Pioneering the Space Frontier,** the President's National Commission on Space reminded us of the overall context in which the station fits. With the National Space Policy directives of 1988, it has become clear that our overall goals are "to expand human presence and activity beyond Earth orbit into the solar system."

One organization stands alone in its lasting commitment to space settlement: the National Space Society. Our members reflect a growing public concern for vigorous and comprehensive space activities leading to permanent human habitation of the Solar System. If you share this concern, we urge you to join us and become visible in support of this objective.

Whether it is taking the next logical step or preparing the way for the footsteps of future generations, a lot depends upon **your** involvement. Join us today!



Test firing of an experimental cryogen-fueled rocket as part of NASA's Project Pathfinder to develop new propulsion for Lunar and Mars landers. (Courtesy: NASA)

SPACE STATION IS **ONLY** THE NEXT STEP

☐ I am enclosing $30 regular annual dues

☐ I am enclosing $18 youth/sr citizen (under 22/over 64 my age is _____

Please charge my credit card:

☐ MasterCard ☐ VISA ☐ American Express Cards ☐ Diners Club

NAME _____

ADDRESS _____

CITY _____ STATE _____ ZIP _____

CREDIT CARD NUMBER _____ EXP. DATE _____

SIGNATURE _____

MAIL TO

NATIONAL SPACE SOCIETY ★ DEPT SAO★ 922 PENNSYLVANIA AVE SE ★ WASHINGTON, DC 20003 ★ 202/543-1900

employed the device to stimulate the brains of thousands of patients, the Mayo Clinic's institutional review board moved cautiously. Daube had to revise his test protocols several times in order to gain the board's approval. The FDA required still more revisions.

Daube's experience is not unusual. The FDA returns for revisions roughly 60 percent of the applications for permission to begin human trials. Depending on the device, clinical trials can last for anywhere from a few months to several years. Saudek implanted the first programmable insulin pump in a patient in November, 1986; clinical trials are now being expanded to include several sites. The project has so far cost more than $15 million; Pacesetter Systems representatives will not say how much higher they estimate the costs will run.

When investigators have finished the clinical trials, all data are submitted to the FDA for "premarket approval," or permission to sell the product. According to Charles H. Kyper, director of the premarket approval staff, only a very few, simple applications make it through the FDA's evaluation on the first attempt. Kyper says it takes approximately 15 months for a device to win approval once clinical data have been submitted. Much of that time passes as the company gathers additional data, he says; the FDA is supposed to finish its evaluation of a complete application within 180 days. In the first half of fiscal 1988 the FDA had received some 110 applications; Kyper says the agency will probably approve a total of 50 by year-end.

Within the FDA, specific sections of an application are likely to be evaluated by different experts. Coordinating assessments becomes even more complicated if the application describes a device and a drug used jointly, as in the case of lithotripsy applied to gallstones.

In conventional lithotripsy, patients can pass kidney-stone fragments relatively safely. But gallstone gravel lodged in the bile duct could cause serious problems, including jaundice. Consequently workers are adding a chemical agent to the therapy to dissolve the fragments. Even though the drug has already received the FDA's full market approval for independent use, regulators from both the devices and drugs divisions must work together to determine whether the drug can be safely used in conjunction with lithotripsy.

In spite of the difficulty of bringing medical devices to market, they can pay off handsomely for manufacturers and clinicians. Eric B. Rosenbaum, a consultant at Arthur D. Little, estimates that hospitals spent almost $7 billion last year on diagnostic and therapeutic equipment such as magnetic-resonance imagers, pacemakers and balloon catheters. Nonprofit medical centers including the Mayo Clinic and Johns Hopkins are setting up for-profit divisions, in part to exploit the commercial potential of their investigators' ideas. Running experimental technology through human trials in addition puts state-of-the-art equipment into clinics at relatively low cost. *—Elizabeth Corcoran*

Mega Projects

European partnerships aim to make powerful microchips

In the race to build an integrated-circuit industry Europe has tended to be a bench warmer. Indeed, as of last year European companies held only 10 percent of the world market for semiconductors, according to Dataquest, a market-research firm in San Jose, Calif. That may be changing.

In 1984 Siemens in West Germany and Philips in the Netherlands embarked on a five-year program called the MEGA Project to develop and build advanced memory devices. Next year, right on schedule, the two companies will be producing large quantities of chips developed by the project.

Memory chips, essential to electronic devices ranging from the avionics on board civilian and military aircraft to personal computers, have long been a mainstay of the semiconductor industry. Since typical memory chips have a highly regular design, efficient manufacturing techniques can help to lower costs significantly. Two years ago, at the height of the chip-trade disputes between Japan and the U.S., fierce price competition from Japanese memory-chip producers drove all but two of their U.S. counterparts out of the field. As a result U.S. companies, with Government support, established the SEMATECH project to develop better chip-manufacturing techniques. Robert N. Noyce, coinventor of the integrated circuit, has recently agreed to lead the project.

In Europe both industry and government "see the necessity of having a microelectronics industry," says Hans Meyer, a deputy director at Siemens and a MEGA Project manager. "When we compare ourselves with the Japanese, or now with SEMATECH in the U.S., we see something has to be done. That's what the governments also feel."

As a first step, Siemens and Philips agreed to focus on dynamic and static random-access memory chips, called DRAM's and SRAM's. (SRAM's are faster and more expensive than DRAM's.) Although Siemens and Philips engineers designed the chips and manufacturing processes jointly, each company plans to manufacture a different device. Siemens will make four-megabit DRAM's, while Philips will concentrate on one-megabit SRAM's. Earlier this year Siemens started mass production of a smaller DRAM: a one-megabit chip based on technology developed by Toshiba. When production of the larger DRAM's as well as Philips' SRAM's begins in 1989, Meyer says, the MEGA Project will have done its job.

What will follow? Siemens and Philips are now planning an even more ambitious scheme, the Joint European Semiconductor Silicon Initiative, or JESSI. Rather than producing a few specific chips, JESSI will aim to turn out a family of 16- and 64-megabit memory chips. Meyer estimates that some 100 European companies have taken part in planning JESSI, including companies that make equipment for manufacturing chips. Siemens, Philips and France's SGS-Thomson are likely to lead the project, according to R. Hamersma, a managing director of Philips' components division. Government funding is also expected.

Such programs are not cheap. Over the course of the MEGA Project, Siemens will have spent about 2.5 billion West German marks and Philips more than two billion marks. The German and Dutch governments together contributed another 480 million marks. According to Hamersma, preliminary plans for JESSI call for an outlay of as much as 6.5 billion marks between 1989 and 1996.

With a fully integrated European market looming ahead, "there are many people who believe that JESSI might be the first step in trying out some common industry," Meyer says. "But that's not the main focus." Instead he looks for a strong European microelectronics industry. *—E.C.*

Signing Off?

Tune in for the next episode in the television saga

In the 1950's there were about 190 television manufacturers in the U.S. Next April, on the 50th anniversary of RCA's invention of televi-

sion, there may not be a single U.S.-owned company making its own sets.

As of August, Zenith Electronics, in Glenview, Ill., was still selling the sets it made; most of the more than 20 other television plants in the U.S. are owned by Japanese companies. But last year was a bad one for Zenith: the company lost money on television sales and reported its third year-end loss in a row. As a result Zenith has been hounded by rumors that it will sell its consumer-products division.

In mid-August, Zenith would say only that it was "continuing to examine all options to restore overall corporate profitability." But "you don't make any money in televisions," concedes Joseph Reilly, president of Wells-Gardner Electronics in Chicago. The company closed its television assembly line in May.

Even though manufacturers sold more than 19 million color television sets to retailers last year, the producers say that prices are too low to yield a profit. Price wars among manufacturers date back to the 1950's but have intensified as first Japanese and then South Korean manufacturers pursued the U.S. market.

"All studies show that the industry is operating at a loss," notes David Lachenbruch, editor of *Television Digest,* an industry newsletter. "Japanese manufacturers aren't doing any better than the American ones," he adds.

According to Zenith's year-end reports, if 1985 prices had been the same as those of 1984, the company would have reaped a before-tax profit of $98 million from its television and videocassette-recorder sales. Instead Zenith made just over a fourth of that. In contrast, operating profits for Zenith's computer systems and components division jumped by $73 million last year.

Even if Zenith grows weary of television manufacturing, interest in the next generation of television—high-definition or advanced television service—is percolating among U.S. electronics companies. The technology depends on packing broadcasts with much more information than is currently transmitted, enough to make home television pictures as clear as those in a movie theater.

The improved signal calls for new receivers that will have roughly one megabyte of memory, about as much as some small personal computers, says Jack S. Fuhrer, director of television research at the David Sarnoff Research Center in Princeton, N.J. Although no one is yet convinced that U.S. consumers will pay more for a clearer picture, the American Electronics Association is already promoting advanced television as an important potential market for U.S. semiconductor makers. "The technology cuts across every product line you can imagine," says Richard Elkus, cochair of an AEA task force on advanced television. He predicts that the strong players in advanced television will also dominate other industries, including semiconductors.

Advanced television is still more an idea than a product. Possible technical standards for the service in the U.S. are hotly debated. Most of the "high definition" television systems proposed by Japanese and European manufacturers would be incompatible with existing television sets and would force consumers in the U.S. to buy new equipment. A handful of investigators, notably those at the Sarnoff center, are experimenting with ways of delivering compatible albeit somewhat less vivid signals that could in time be upgraded to the status of high-definition television.

Even if advanced television takes hold, points out Robert B. Hansen, president of Zenith's consumer-products group, selling prices will remain a crucial issue. "The same pressures will exist that have pushed consumer electronics out of this country," he wrote recently to the Federal Communications Commission; "there is little about ATV [advanced television] that would change the trend regardless of whose system was adopted." —*E.C.*

Smart Apples

A chip a day may up the fruit's pay

These days a handful of apple-picking operations in Michigan are throwing computers into the packaging line along with the fruit. The microprocessors are unlikely to make it as far as the local grocer's bins, however. The computers are part of an experimental project to analyze precisely where the fruit gets bruised and battered between the tree and the supermarket.

The project, first publicized in *New Scientist,* is the work of H. Roland Zapp, a professor of electrical engineering at Michigan State University, and investigators from the U.S. Department of Agriculture led by Galen W. Brown. Every year, according to Brown, "hundreds of millions of dollars" are lost because fruit is damaged during harvesting, packing and, to a lesser extent, shipping. Although the Agriculture Department has spent many years trying to find ways to reduce the damage, miniaturized electronics have now made it possible to build a sensing device that can follow fruit. Since, as Brown points out, "an apple is a very sensitive fruit," it seemed a promising candidate for a study of where fruit gets battered.

The device for impact measurement fits inside a 3.5-inch-diameter sphere made of foam and beeswax. It incorporates a piezoelectric transducer to measure impacts, a microprocessor to log and time those forces, a memory chip to store the data and a nine-volt, rechargeable battery. The beeswax transmits the vibrations clearly and can be easily molded, Zapp says. Although he first shaped the instrument in the likeness of an apple, he found it recorded forces irregularly. A sphere, he discovered, registers the average forces on apples better.

Since not every bump will bruise, puncture or cut an apple, the investigators practiced dropping the computer and apples from many heights to find out what measurements were worth taking. Even though a Rome apple is tougher than a Macintosh, an impact equivalent to 50 times the force of gravity is enough to inflict a half-inch bruise on both varieties. "At 130 *g* the apple's only good for cider," Brown says.

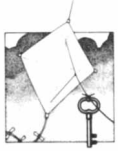
To test the bumpiness of a packing line, the investigators randomly toss four bright blue "apples" into a harvest of some 300 real ones. After the apples bounce down the packing lines, the investigators stop the line, pick out the computers and examine the bruises and cuts on the real apples for later comparison with the computer data, which are downloaded to a personal computer.

After more than a year of experimental runs down 15 different packing lines, the investigators have found that the bagging operation is the most damaging. They are currently working with a company that manufactures bagging machines to try to make the process a gentler one.

The computers may also prove useful for measuring the forces endured by cucumbers, potatoes, glass and even by large medical instruments. Brown notes that at least one company is considering licensing the technology from Michigan State and manufacturing the devices. At a cost of several thousand dollars each, they would quickly pay for their keep in helping packing houses to cut down on bruised fruit, Brown says. —*E.C.*

THE AMATEUR SCIENTIST

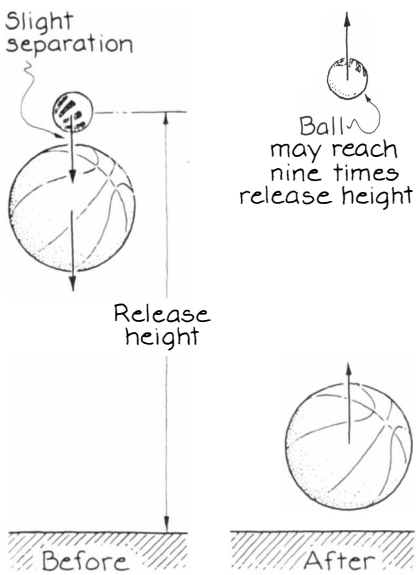
Drop two stacked balls from waist height; the top ball may bounce up to the ceiling



by Jearl Walker

An elastic ball dropped on a hard floor may rebound almost to the height from which it was released. Suppose you hold a second, lighter elastic ball on top of it and release the two together. How high will the balls go? The heavier ball may bounce nearly as high as it did alone, whereas the lighter ball can in principle reach nine times its release height! To be sure, in most cases the lighter ball will not bounce as high as that, but its rebound can often be vigorous enough so that anyone who tries the demonstration should wear safety goggles and take care to stay out of the way of the ball.

A startling version of the two-ball demonstration was recently published by Joseph L. Spradley of Wheaton College in Wheaton, Ill. Hold a baseball above a basketball (it is best to maintain a slight separation) and drop the pair from waist height. The basketball goes almost dead on the floor; the baseball reaches the ceiling. Here safety precautions are a must. I once was bruised when I failed to align the balls properly, so that the baseball shot out sideways like a cannonball, moving faster than I could.



How two balls may bounce

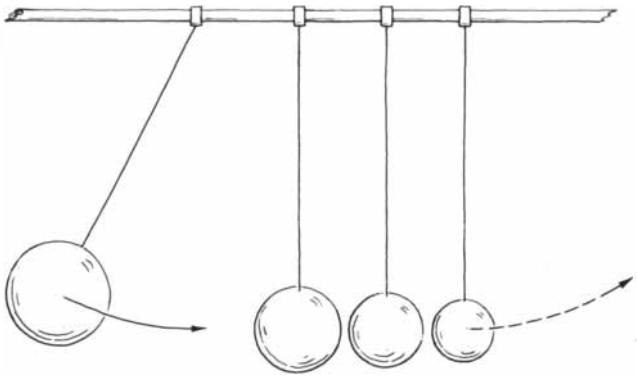
If you drop a lightweight plastic Wiffle ball instead of the baseball, the basketball bounces a little higher and the Wiffle ball actually slams into the ceiling. Even more spectacular launches can be made with a stack of three balls, provided the mass of the balls decreases toward the top of the stack. If all went ideally, the top ball would be propelled to a height that is 49 times its release height. Practical matters reduce the height, but it can still be dramatic.

When a falling stack of balls reaches the floor, the balls undergo a chain of collisions in which kinetic energy is transferred upward through the stack. The last collision reverses the top ball's motion and increases its speed. The height to which it then climbs depends on the square of the speed at which it moves just after the collision. If the stack has only two balls, the collision can at best triple the top ball's speed, sending it up to nine times the release height. With three balls in a stack, the collision can at best increase the top ball's speed sevenfold, so that it goes 49 times higher than its release height. You might think the greatest height would be achieved if all of the bottom ball's energy were transferred to the top ball, but that is not the case. As will be seen below, the highest bounces come when only a fraction of the bottom ball's energy is given to the top ball.

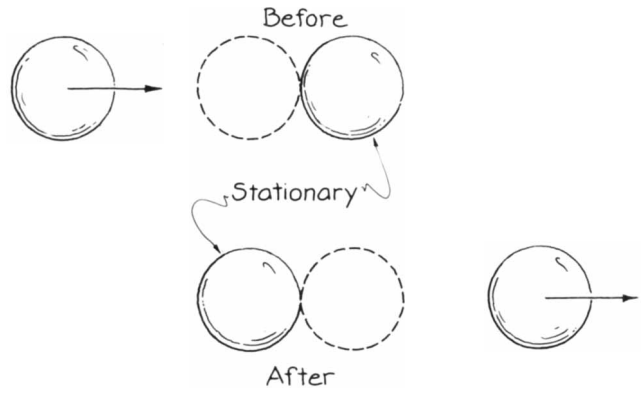
Exactly how is the energy transferred between the balls? As a warm-up for the explanation I shall consider simpler collisions. For a start, picture one ball moving to the right and striking a second, initially stationary ball. Assume that the balls are isolated so that we need not worry about any extra forces on them, such as friction from the surface over which they move. Also assume that the balls collide head-on. During the collision some or all of the first ball's kinetic energy is transferred to the second ball, and the second ball moves to the right. Depending on the details of the collision, the first ball may move to the right or to the left or may even be stationary. The questions are: In a given situation how much energy is transferred, and what speed is imparted to the second ball?

In 1968 John B. Hart and Robert B. Herrmann, who were then at Xavier University in Cincinnati, reported theoretical studies of such collisions. They also conducted experiments with steel balls of various sizes suspended by threads from a rod. To study how energy is transferred in a collision, several balls were hung in a row, with slight separations between them, as in the illustration at the left on the opposite page. The idea was to draw back a ball at one end of the row, release it and then see how the subsequent collisions transferred energy to the ball at the other end. The initial energy of the first ball was set by the height from which it was released. The energy finally imparted to the last ball could be measured by the height to which it swung after being hit. In this arrangement, incidentally, the balls were about as isolated as one could hope for.

Here I shall review only the theoretical findings by Hart and Herrmann, but you can check the results, as they did, with their pendulum apparatus. Consider the case I described above in which a ball strikes another, stationary ball. Two factors are important: momentum and kinetic energy. Momentum is the product of mass and velocity; kinetic energy is half the product of the mass and the square of the speed. Since the balls are isolated, the momentum of the balls can be exchanged in a collision, but the total momentum must remain the same. Such a firm rule does not usually apply to the kinetic energy, which is reduced when some of it is transformed into sound or goes into vibrations or deformations of the balls. If there were no such losses of kinetic energy, the collision would be perfectly elastic. Everyday collisions, however, are not so ideal, and they are said to be inelastic. For example, you can nearly always hear a collision, and so some energy must go into sound.



A pendulum apparatus for studying collisions



A collision between identical masses

One way to symbolize the extent of elasticity is to employ a parameter called the coefficient of restitution. A perfectly elastic collision has a coefficient of exactly 1, whereas a completely inelastic collision has a coefficient of zero. A collision of steel balls, for example, may have a coefficient as high as .99; a collision between a baseball and a basketball has a smaller coefficient. Although a higher coefficient means that more energy is delivered to the second ball, this is no guarantee that the ball will in fact gain a lot of energy. Even if the total kinetic energy remains essentially constant in the collision, the first ball may transfer energy to the second ball only grudgingly.

The extent to which energy is transferred depends not only on elasticity but also on the ratio of the first ball's mass to that of the second ball. Let's go back to the case in which one ball runs into a stationary second ball. If the mass ratio is one and the collision is perfectly elastic, the full energy of the first ball is given to the second ball, and the first ball stops [*see illustration at right above*]. For any other ratio of masses, either smaller or larger, the transfer is less. For example, if the first ball is 100 times as massive as the second one, only about 4 percent of the energy is transferred. Surprisingly, the equation that predicts this transfer has a symmetry. For a given mass ratio it does not matter which ball is initially moving: the same fraction of energy is transferred if the roles are reversed and the lighter ball runs into a stationary, heavier ball. In both cases the transfer is small because the masses are mismatched. The larger the mismatch, the poorer the transfer.

If a third ball of intermediate mass is inserted between the mismatched balls, the transfer improves. Now there is a chain of two collisions, and in each one the colliding masses are more closely matched than they were in the original single collision. Hart and Herrmann found that the transfer is best when the intermediate ball has a mass equal to the geometric mean of the masses of the other balls. (The geometric mean is the square root of the product of the masses.) In my example, the intermediate ball should have a mass 10 times the lighter ball's mass. When the third ball is put in place, the energy transfer jumps to about 11 percent. The equation associated with the transfer still has symmetry: it does not matter whether the chain of collisions begins with the heaviest ball or the lightest one. Aside from the extent of elasticity in the collisions, only the mass ratios affect the energy transfer.

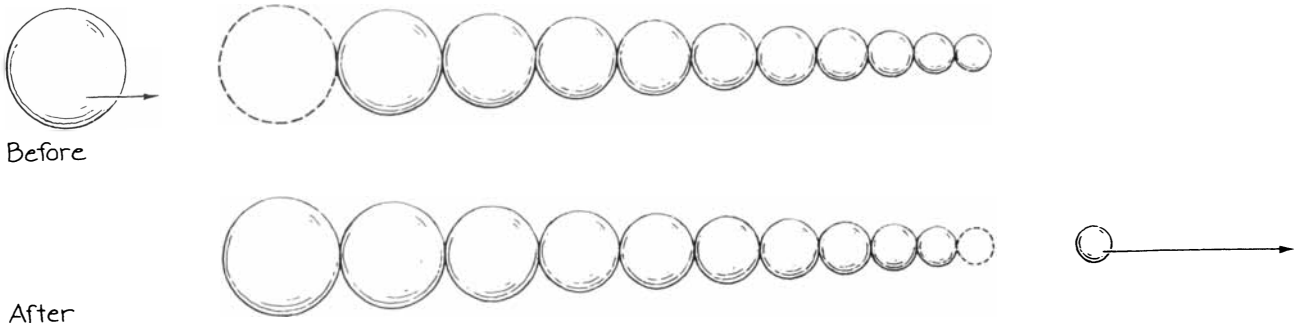
The transfer may improve if even more balls of intermediate mass are inserted into the chain. Hart and Herrmann found that the transfer is optimum if the mass ratios of successive balls are identical. This condition is the same as requiring that each intermediate ball have a mass that is equal to the geometric mean of the masses of the balls next to it.

For example, if the ratio of the first ball's mass to the second ball's mass is 1.05, then the ratio of the second ball's mass to the third ball's mass should also be 1.05, and so on. That is about the right ratio if there are 100 balls inserted between the original two balls, which have a mass ratio of 100. The first, heaviest, ball strikes a ball that is only slightly less massive, and the first ball gives up nearly all of its energy. The second ball then collides with the third one, which is only slightly less massive, and again the transfer is nearly perfect. When the last ball is struck, it receives almost 95 percent of the energy the first ball had initially. Symmetry still holds: the same percent of energy is sent down the line of balls if the transfer goes in the opposite direction.

If even more balls are inserted in the line and the masses are adjusted so that the mass ratio between successive balls is identical throughout the line, the transfer nears 100 percent. The reason is that with a longer chain the balls in each colliding pair are closer to being exactly matched in mass (in which case all of the energy would be transferred). If the balls are hung as adjacent pendulums, the release of the ball at one end sends energy through the chain until the last ball finally swings out and up. During the successive collisions the intermediate balls hardly move and there is little evidence of the energy transfer except for the clatter that sweeps along the line of balls.

So far, the collisions have been considered to be perfectly elastic. The fact that in practice most collisions are inelastic changes the story. When the coefficient of restitution is less than the ideal value of 1, the transfer of energy worsens if the chain of balls is too long. Although a long chain means that the balls in each colliding pair are nearly matched in mass, the steady drain of energy from the balls into sound, vibration and deformation diminishes the energy reaching the last ball.

Hart and Herrmann calculated just how many intermediate balls are needed to maximize the energy transfer to the last ball for a given coefficient of restitution and for a given mass ratio between the end balls. If there are fewer balls in line, the consequent larger mismatch in mass between the members of each pair decreases the transfer; if there are more balls, the inelasticity of the collisions lowers the transfer. For example, suppose that the mass ratio of the end balls is again 100 but that now the coefficient of restitution is .99—only



Chain collisions

slightly less than perfect. The maximum transfer takes place when there are 22 intermediate balls. If the coefficient is .8 there should be only four intermediate balls. And if the coefficient is as low as .19, the best transfer (less than 2 percent) is obtained when the first ball hits the last ball directly. In all the examples, the transfer maintains symmetry.

What conditions will maximize the speed imparted to the last ball? Start again with the case in which there are only two balls and the collision is perfectly elastic. More speed is imparted to the second ball if its mass is small compared to that of the first ball. In the limit where the mass ratio is infinite, the second ball is given a speed that is twice the first ball's initial speed. With such a mass ratio, however, the energy transfer is minuscule. The result may be perplexing. How can the second ball be given its greatest speed when it gains only a tiny amount of energy? The answer lies in the fact that its mass is so small. If it is given even a small amount of energy, its speed will be large.

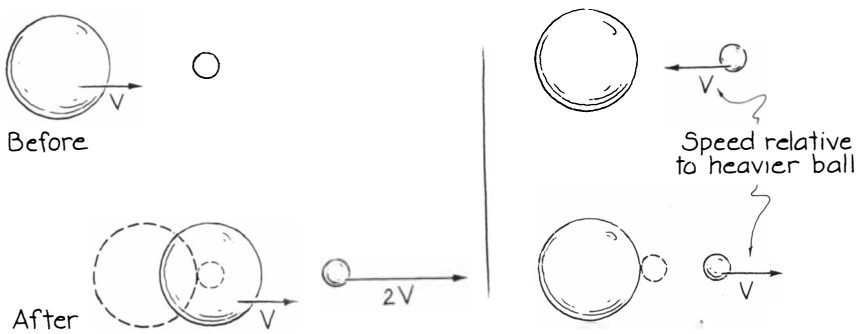
Here is one way to derive the speed of the second ball without resort to any equations. Let V be the speed of the first ball. When the mass ratio is very large, the speed of the first ball hardly changes during the collision. Picture the collision from the perspective of the first ball, as if you could somehow ride along with it [*see illustration below*]. Before the collision the second ball (which is actually stationary) appears to approach you and the first ball with a speed V. If the collision is perfectly elastic, the second ball appears to bounce off the first ball and then move backward with a speed of V relative to the first ball. Since the first ball still has a speed that is approximately V, the speed of the second ball is actually $V + V$, or $2V$. In 1972 James D. Kerwin of the California State Polytechnic University in Pomona reported calculations on a chain of collisions, where each collision is perfectly elastic and involves a massive ball hitting an infinitely lighter ball. The speed doubles with each collision and, if there are n intermediate balls, the last ball ends up with a speed that is 2^n times the first ball's speed. Obviously a long chain results in a fantastic final speed.

Several lessons can be learned from these examples of chain collisions. The extent of energy transfer depends on elasticity and mass ratios; if the masses are chosen properly, the last and lightest object can end up with much of the energy or with a large speed, but the mass ratios required for those two end results differ.

These lessons apply to the chain collisions when a stack of balls is dropped on the floor. The ball on the bottom rebounds from the floor and then runs into the second ball in the stack. The second ball rebounds from the first ball and then runs into the third ball, and so on until the top ball is reached. In each collision in the chain, the energy transfer and the speed imparted to the higher ball depend on elasticity and mass ratios.

The high rebound of a ball from a dropped stack of balls was first reported by Walter Roy Mellen in 1968, not long after the introduction of the Super Ball by the Wham-O Manufacturing Company. (A Super Ball is considerably more elastic than a common rubber ball.) Mellen described putting a small Super Ball on top of a larger Super Ball and dropping the pair. To keep them aligned during the fall, he sometimes stuck a drop of glue or a strip of double-sided tape between them. (He said that neither technique noticeably altered the high rebound of the smaller ball, but my experience is that the effect is more pronounced if there is a slight separation between the balls.) He obtained even larger rebounds when a table-tennis ball was positioned above the smaller Super Ball and the stack of three balls was dropped. (Although a table-tennis ball is larger than the smaller Super Ball, it is lighter, and it is the mass ratio that counts.) Typically the table-tennis ball would shoot up to about 20 times the release height.

Gerhard Stroink of Dalhousie University and several other authors have suggested an easy way to picture what happens to the balls when they are dropped. Start with two balls, the upper one of which has a much smaller mass than the lower one. Assume that the collisions between ball and floor and between ball and ball are perfectly elastic. Let V represent the speed of the balls before the lower ball hits the floor. Just after the lower ball bounces, it heads upward with speed V toward the top ball, which is still headed



The collision of a heavy ball with a light one

downward with speed V [*see illustration at right*]. The balls close on each other at a rate that is the sum of their speeds, or $2V$.

Imagine the impending collision from the perspective of the lower ball. The second ball approaches with a speed of $2V$, bounces off the lower ball and then heads upward at a speed of $2V$ with respect to the lower ball. Since the mass ratio is large, the lower ball is still moving upward at a speed of almost V with respect to the floor. Hence the top ball must have a speed of $V+2V$, or $3V$, relative to the floor. Recall that the height to which a ball bounces depends on the square of its speed right after the collision. In this case, where the second ball's speed is tripled by the collision, it bounces to nine times its release height.

Now add a third, even lighter ball to the top of the stack and imagine the second and third balls just before they collide. The second ball is headed upward at a speed of $3V$ and the third ball is headed downward at a speed of V. The balls close on each other with a relative speed of $V+3V$, or $4V$. After the collision, the third ball heads upward with a speed of $4V$ relative to the second ball. Since the second ball has a speed of $3V$ relative to the floor, the third ball must have a speed of $3V+4V$, or $7V$, relative to the floor. In the ideal setting of infinite mass ratios and perfectly elastic collisions, the third ball should rise to a height 49 times its release height. You may want to continue the analysis to stacks of four or more balls.

Let's return now to the case in which only two balls are dropped and again assume that the collisions are perfectly elastic. If you want a full transfer of energy between the balls so that the lower ball stops when they collide, you must arrange for the mass ratio to be exactly three, in which case the top ball reaches four times its release height. The rebound height is not as dramatic as when the mass ratio is much larger, but the demonstration is still surprising. Here are two balls that bounce well when dropped separately, and yet when they are dropped together the lower one seemingly refuses to bounce at all, whereas the top one bounces much higher than either ball could on its own—even higher than the sum of the individual bounces.

With less elastic collisions, the optimum ratio for a full transfer of energy is somewhat larger. Spradley determined that there can be a complete transfer of energy as long as the coefficient of restitution is at least .62. If the coefficient is .9, the optimum mass ratio is 3.01. If the coefficient is as low as .62, the optimum mass ratio is 3.24.

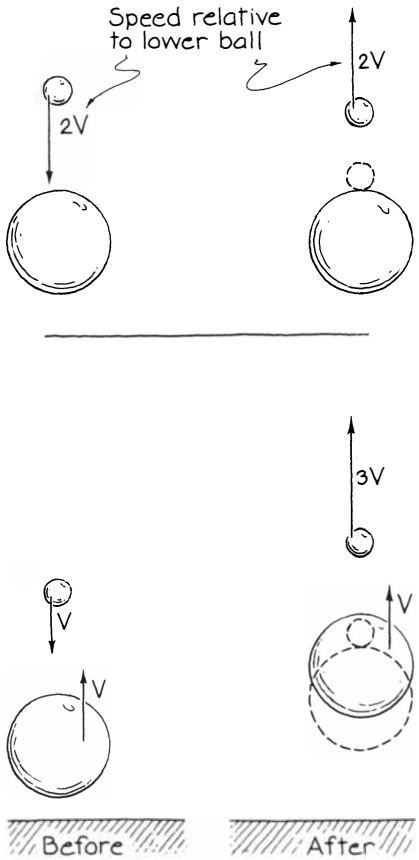
A basketball and a baseball have a mass ratio of about 4. When they are dropped as Spradley recommends, the baseball receives nearly all of the basketball's energy and bounces moderately high, and the basketball hardly rebounds at all. A basketball and a Wiffle ball have a mass ratio of about 28. Since the mass ratio is so much larger than in the case of the baseball, the Wiffle ball probably receives much less energy from the basketball than the baseball does. Yet the Wiffle ball takes off like a rocket, climbing higher than the baseball does. (Of course, the elasticity is also likely to be different in the two demonstrations.)

When three balls are dropped and the collisions are perfectly elastic, what should the mass ratio be between the second and third ball for a full transfer? Can you extend the analysis to even more balls? If the mass ratio between the bottom ball and the top one in a large stack is given, can you determine what masses the intermediate balls should have in order to attain the maximum energy transfer? I don't think anyone has yet worked out the answer.

Sometimes I find that certain balls do not bounce as I expect they will. To cite one example, a very small Super Ball should bounce quite high when it is dropped with a basketball, but often it does not. Why not?

In 1986 D. Rae Carpenter, Jr., David J. Rehbein and Robert J. Bonometti, all of whom were then working at the United States Military Academy at West Point, devised a handy way to launch a stack of two balls. In their scheme a lightweight plastic ball that had been removed from a roll-on deodorant dispenser was put on top of a much heavier steel ball of similar dimensions. Then the balls were placed in the top of a long plastic tube, supported by a paper clip that ran through the sides of the tube. When the paper clip was pulled out, the balls dropped down the tube well aligned. Holes had been drilled along the length of the tube so that air could easily escape as the balls fell. The tube was placed on a hard ceramic or tile floor. The mass ratio of the balls was about nine and the coefficients of restitution for the collisions between ball and floor and between ball and ball were high. The plastic ball would usually shoot up to four or five times its release height.

In 1982 an independent analysis of a bouncing stack of balls was published by R. H. MacMillan of the Cranfield Institute of Technology in England.



A collision between two dropped balls

He described a commercially available toy that works like the bouncing balls. The toy consists of a vertical rod on which three cylinders slide. The cylinders are of different lengths, so that they differ in mass; they are stacked in order of decreasing mass. When you pull the cylinders partway up the rod, separate them slightly and then release them together, they bounce off the base at the bottom of the rod and the top cylinder (the lightest one) is shot so high that it flies off the rod.

FURTHER READING

ENERGY TRANSFER IN ONE-DIMENSIONAL COLLISIONS OF MANY OBJECTS. John B. Hart and Robert B. Herrmann in *American Journal of Physics,* Vol. 36, No. 1, pages 46–48; January, 1968.

VELOCITY, MOMENTUM, AND ENERGY TRANSMISSIONS IN CHAIN COLLISIONS. James D. Kerwin in *American Journal of Physics,* Vol. 40, No. 8, pages 1152–1157; August, 1972.

SUPER BALL PROBLEM. G. Stroink in *The Physics Teacher,* Vol. 21, No. 7, page 466; October, 1983.

VELOCITY AMPLIFICATION IN VERTICAL COLLISIONS. Joseph L. Spradley in *American Journal of Physics,* Vol. 55, No. 2, pages 183–184; February, 1987.

COMPUTER RECREATIONS

On making and breaking codes: Part I

by A. K. Dewdney

"What one man can invent another can discover."

—Sherlock Holmes in "The Adventure of the Dancing Men," by Sir Arthur Conan Doyle

Was the famous detective's remark an expression of cool confidence in his own cryptanalytic resources or a statement of historic fact? Certainly from the advent of the written word until well into this century codes that some human beings have invented to conceal messages of military or commercial import were indeed discovered by others. Just before World War II the encoding process was mechanized, but that did little to change the situation. To paraphrase Holmes, what one machine can encode another machine can decode.

This month's column, the first of two forays into the arcane world of cryptology, ends with a discussion of such a machine-versus-machine confrontation. On one side is the Enigma machine used by the Axis forces 50 years ago, and on the other is a machine called a Bombe. As we shall see, the Bombe ticked its way to a cryptanalytic victory with some help from humans—including Alan M. Turing, one of the founders of computer science. In next month's column I shall continue the story by relating how computers are currently employed to encrypt and decrypt messages.

The earliest codes converted a message in ordinary language (called the plaintext) into a coded one (known as the ciphertext) by substituting one letter of the alphabet for another. The so-called Caesar code, for example, does this according to a simple numbering scheme. If one numbers the letters of the Roman alphabet (*A,B,C*. . .) from 0 to 25, one can specify a particular number, say 13, and add that number to the number corresponding to each letter in the plaintext. The sums represent the letters that constitute the ciphertext. If a sum happens to be greater than 25, one must subtract 26 from it in order to get a number between 0 and 25. For example, *X* (letter number 23) is encoded as *K* (letter number 10), because 23 + 13 = 36 and 36 – 26 = 10.

Julius Caesar is said to have used such a code in case messages from the front fell into enemy hands. One possible plaintext message from the Roman general and its corresponding ciphertext are given below:

```
SEND MMCC REINFORCEMENTS

FRAQ ZZPP ERVASBEPRZRAGF
```

For such a code system to work the intended recipient of the ciphertext must be supplied with a key. In this case the letter *N*, which is letter number 13, provides the key. Knowing this letter, the recipient can retrieve the plaintext merely by subtracting 13 from the number corresponding to each letter in the ciphertext.

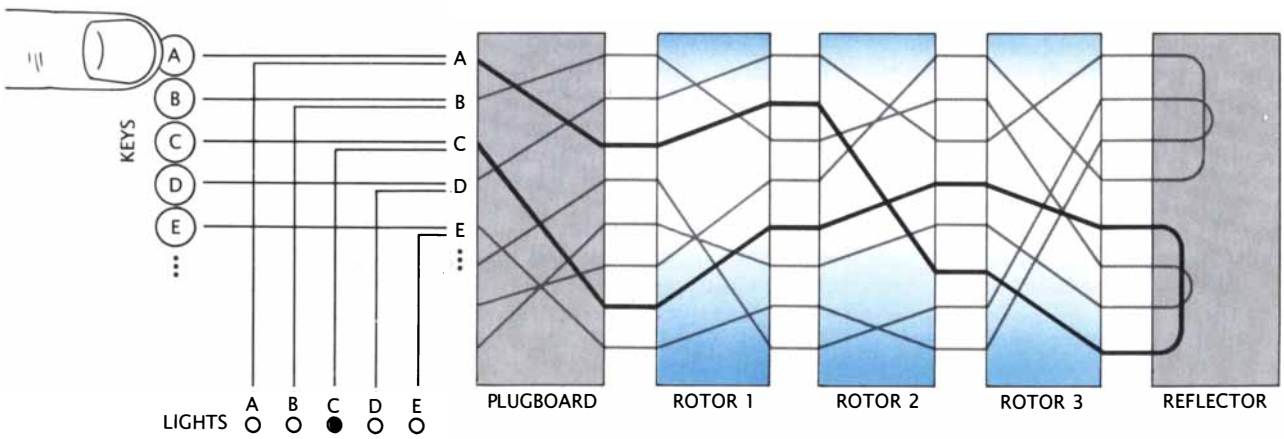
An unintended recipient of the ciphertext (henceforth known as the code breaker) can attempt to decode it by trying every possible letter key. If he or she attempts to decode Caesar's message by assuming *B* is the key, the result would be:

```
TFOE NNDD SFJOGPSDFNFOUT
```

Since this makes no sense, the code breaker would try other possible keys until finally he or she hits on *N*, which turns the garbled message into plain English.

At first glance it would seem that a computer has no place in decoding messages enciphered with Caesar's code, because it would not be able to discriminate between meaningful and meaningless messages each time a new letter key is tried. Yet a computer can be equipped with a "dictionary" that would at least enable it to determine whether the decoded message contained legitimate words. There is, however, a more powerful code-breaking tool: statistics.

Each letter of a language's alphabet has a typical frequency with which it



Schematic diagram of the basic Enigma machine

occurs in text written in that language. For example, the first three letters of the Roman alphabet account for respectively 8, 1.5 and 3 percent of the letters found in ordinary English text. The most frequently occurring letter is *E,* appearing on the average 13 percent of the time. (A complete table of letter frequencies is given in the illustration at the right.)

In the ciphertext of Caesar's hypothetical message the commonest letter is *R,* which occurs four times. A decryption program might therefore assume that *R* stands for *E.* Since the difference between the numerical values of *R* and *E* is 13, the program might further assume that the code's letter key is *N.*

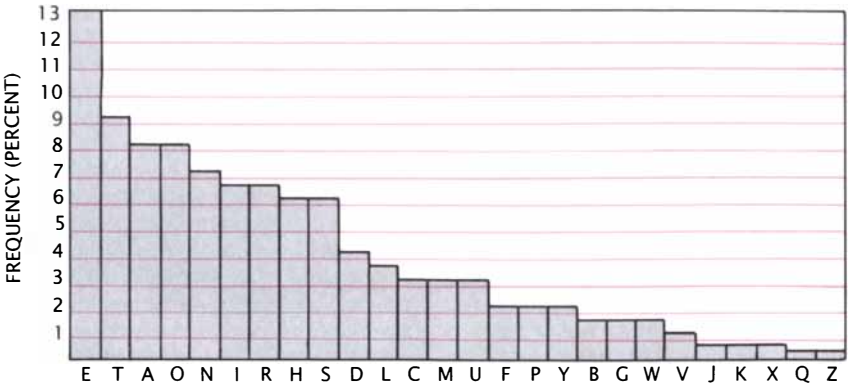
Such a program would happen to be correct in this case, but largely as a result of luck. In actual practice statistical forces can be fruitfully brought to bear only if the code breaker has gathered a large volume of ciphertext. Beyond identifying the most probable candidate for *E,* such a program might also hunt for *T, A* and *O,* which are the next most commonly used letters. It might even match the letter distributions of the ciphertext against typical letter distributions to determine the likeliest keys.

Blaise de Vigenère, a French cryptographer of the 16th century, complicated the Caesar code by proposing that the key be changed in a periodic manner. When one encodes a message à la Vigenère, one changes the letter key for each successive letter in the plaintext, always running in order through the same sequence of letter keys. In essence the sequence itself is the code's key.

Just for fun, suppose the key sequence happens to be *CLEF,* which corresponds to the number sequence 2, 11, 4 and 5. To encode a message using this key sequence one would divide the letters of the plaintext message into groups of four and add 2 to the number value of the first letter of each group, 11 to the second, 4 to the third and 5 to the fourth. As in the Caesar code, the resulting sums represent the number values of the letters of the ciphertext. The example below illustrates how a Vigenère code operates on a plaintext to produce a ciphertext:

key:	CLEFCLEFCLEFCLEF
plaintext:	SENDINTHECAVALRY
ciphertext:	UPRIKYXMGNEACWVD

Enciphered messages can be sent as a continuous string of symbols, as in the preceding example, or in regular blocks. In either case it is assumed that the intended receiver will be able to separate the decoded symbols into proper words.



Frequency distribution of letters in typical English text

If the code breaker knows the period of the key (the number of letters in the key sequence) of a Vigenère code, he or she can break it by applying essentially the same method that is applied to crack Caesar codes. The process, however, takes much longer. To decode the Vigenère ciphertext given above, a code-breaking computer program would have to generate four separate letter distributions, one for every fourth letter starting at *U,* one for every fourth letter starting at *P,* and so on. The program would then compare each distribution with the standard letter-frequency distribution in order to guess each component letter of the key sequence. In essence the problem boils down to four separate Caesar-code decodings. If the code breaker does not know the period of the key, the exercise takes even more time, because each possible period must be tried. In this case having a computer is definitely an advantage, since it is well suited for such repetitive tasks.

It goes without saying that if one is dealing with short messages or relatively long key sequences, many messages would have to be collected before a successful decoding attack of a Vigenère code could be launched. Conversely, if only short key periods are applied in encoding, messages do not have to be very long before it becomes nearly certain that the plaintext will emerge from the computer.

We shall now skip a multitude of clever coding systems developed between the 16th and the mid-20th century to arrive at the German Enigma machine, focus of the most intense decoding effort ever undertaken up to that time. The machine was employed by the German armed forces during World War II to encode radio communications (which were themselves transmitted in telegraphic code) between field units and headquarters. Because radio traffic can be intercepted by anyone with a receiver tuned to the proper frequency, the need for encryption is obvious.

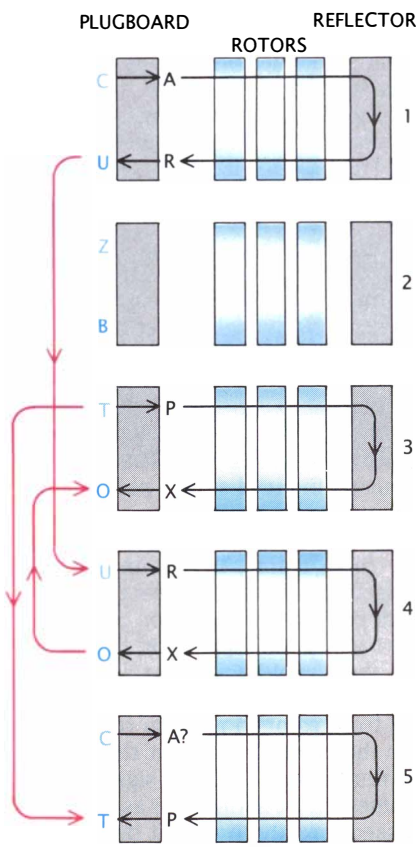
The basic Enigma machine consisted of an alphabetic keyboard, three "rotors," a "reflector" and a bank of 26 light bulbs—one for each letter of the alphabet [*see illustration on opposite page*]. A rotor was a toothed wheel through which ran wires that connected a set of 26 contacts on one side of the rotor with an equal number on the other side. The connections were randomly assigned but fixed. In a given position a rotor would thus represent a particular set of permutations for the 26 possible electrical signals from the keyboard (one for each letter) that might be sent through it. For example, a rotor might send a signal representing the letter *A* to the contact representing the letter *R,* the signal representing *B* to the contact for *D,* and so on. The second rotor, having a different wiring arrangement and set in a different position, took the signal from the first rotor and induced another permutation on it. The last rotor similarly induced a third permutation on the signal.

After a signal had passed through the three rotors, it encountered the reflector: a set of wires that connected each contact with another contact on the back of the third rotor, thus sending the signal back along a different path through the three rotors. In passing from rotor to rotor in reverse order the signal underwent three more permutations. When the signal finally reemerged from the rotor assembly, it passed directly to a light bulb in the display bank.

A key property of the Enigma ma-

chine was that it was self-inverse: if it happened to encode the letter *R* as *Q*, it would—in the same state—encode *Q* as *R*. The self-inverse property meant ciphertext typed into an Enigma machine would emerge as the original plaintext message if the decoding machine had the same initial state as the encoding machine. As a consequence, encoding and decoding amounted to the same simple operation—as long as the rotors were set in the correct positions. Although it was a tremendous convenience for operators of the machine, the self-inverse property—as we shall see—proved to be a fatal weakness in the Enigma code.

What made the Enigma code so fiendishly tough to second-guess was that the first rotor of the machine rotated one step automatically after a key was pressed. After the keys had been pressed 26 times the first rotor returned to its original position, but then the second rotor moved into a new position. Likewise, when the second rotor had moved 26 times, the third rotor would rotate one step. The assembly of rotors essentially operated like the odometer in an automobile. This mechanism ensured that each succeeding letter of plaintext was encoded by a different letter permutation. In all, $26 \times 26 \times 26 = 17{,}576$ different permutations were used for a given letter before the Enigma machine returned to its original state.



A Bombe traces the plugboard logic

The situation is reminiscent of the older Vigenère code but vastly more complicated. Each letter in a key sequence of a Vigenère code also induces a permutation of the alphabet in the sense that it changes a letter in the plaintext into another, namely the one given by the sum of the numbers corresponding to the plaintext letter and the key letter. A Vigenère code, however, makes use of only as many permutations as there are letters in the key sequence before returning to the same "state." To put it in perspective, the period of the "key" for the Enigma machine can be regarded as 17,576.

It would have been virtually impossible to break the Enigma code if the British cryptanalysts had known nothing at all about the encoding process. A statistical attack based on typical letter frequencies in German text would have been useless since a specific letter of plaintext would be encoded as any other letter with almost equal probability. Yet the British were not completely ignorant of how the Enigma machine worked.

Before the war the French intelligence service had obtained copies of instructions for the machine and had passed that information on to the Poles, who made good use of it. By analyzing German radio traffic in the light of the instructions, Polish cryptanalysts managed to deduce the wiring pattern of the three rotors and the reflector. Because the composite permutation comprising the net effect of the three rotors, the reflector and the second pass through the rotors could be readily determined, it was now possible to decode German military messages—if the initial state of the rotors was known. The Polish cryptanalysts in fact were able to ascertain the initial states of the machines from the messages that broadcast, in coded form, the daily rotor settings.

Although the British had learned all of this from the Poles, the information was actually of limited value during the war because, as the war had approached, the Germans made some modifications to their Enigma machines. First, they increased the stock of rotors from three to five. Hence before attempting to decode any intercepted messages it was necessary to determine which three of the five interchangeable rotors were in the machines. Second, some military versions of the machine had a "plugboard" that performed an extra permutation on six or seven pairs of letters before their respective electrical signals entered the rotor system and again after leaving it. The Poles, stretched to the limit of their technical resources, had to give up after these modifications were made.

The British built on the Polish foundation by first assembling a mixed group of cryptanalysts and mathematicians (including Turing) at a Victorian mansion in Buckinghamshire called Bletchley Park. Knowing the Enigma machine's rotor and reflector wirings, the group still had to discover the machine's plugboard wiring. The group based its attack on what is known as the probable-word method.

This method exploits the fact that in some contexts a particular sequence of intercepted symbols almost surely represents a known word. An intercepted ciphertext broadcast from the German naval headquarters, for example, might have had a block of five letters that was interpreted to be—in all likelihood—the encoded version of the German word *U-boot* (an abbreviation for *Unterseeboot,* which means submarine).

Guessing correctly what several ciphertext words were made it possible to work out the plugboard wiring merely by testing all possible wirings and seeing which one yielded the guessed ciphertext-plaintext word pairs. Yet because there are more than a trillion possible plugboard wirings for seven pairs of letter permutations, Turing realized that only an automated and relatively fast machine could carry out the tests.

Actually it was not surprising that Turing resorted to machines in trying to break the machine-based code. The Poles themselves had already employed electromechanical simulators of the Enigma machine. The simulators ticked from one position to the next, attempting to find which combination of rotors would produce a given permutation. They were called Bombes because of the ticking noise they made.

To unravel the plugboard's wiring a new type of Bombe was therefore constructed. The machine incorporated circuits of relays that tested all possible plugboard combinations for logical consistency. The test was simple in principle. Consider, for example, five Enigma machines that have been numbered 1 through 5 [*see illustration on this page*]. The machines have consecutive rotor positions in order to simulate the effect a single Enigma machine would have on each letter of a

five-letter word. (Remember, we are assuming that the initial rotor positions of the Enigma machine that encoded the word are known on the basis of other intelligence.) Analysts have determined that the five-letter ciphertext word *CZTUC* probably stands for the plaintext word *UBOOT*. What plugboard connections were used in encoding the rest of the day's plaintext?

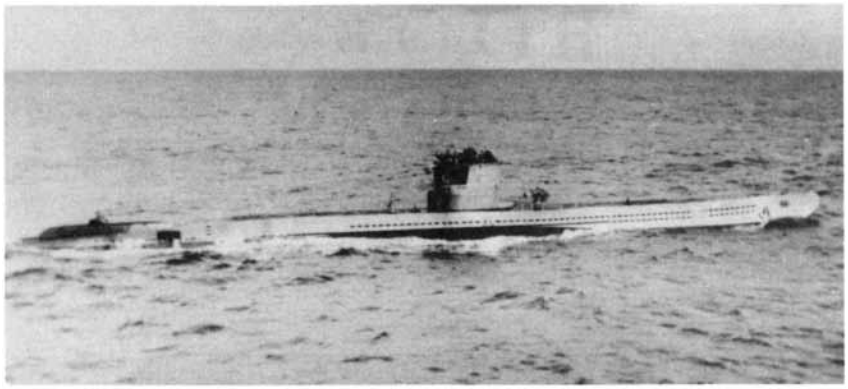
The Turing Bombe would begin with a hypothesized plugboard wiring, say that *C* on the input side of the plugboard was passed on as *A* to the first rotor. Suppose now that Enigma machine 1 transforms the letter *A* into the letter *R*. If the probable word is correct, the plugboard must change the *R* from the machine into a *U* and, because of the self-inverse nature of the machine, *U* into *R*.

That last deduction means that the plugboard for Enigma machine 4 must also change the letter *U* in the ciphertext word to *R*. If machine 4 (whose rotor state is shifted three steps in relation to machine 1) converts the *R* from its plugboard into an *X*, then the Bombe would instantly deduce that *X* and *O* are wired together, since the fourth letter of the plaintext word happens to be *O*.

That fact can now be exploited in the third Enigma machine, which encodes the third letter of *UBOOT*. If it turns out that machine 3 yields an *X* only if it receives a *P* as input, then a plugboard connection between *P* and *T* has been established, since *T* is the third letter of *CZTUC*.

Because *UBOOT* happens to end with a *T*, the Bombe would then arrive at a critical juncture: Will Enigma machine 5 complete the logical loop and transform *P* to *A*, so that the plugboard then yields the *C* that appears in the final position of the corresponding ciphertext word? If not (as was usually the case), the hypothesis that the plugboard linked *C* with *A* was eliminated. The Bombe would then tick on to consider the next hypothesis, say that the plugboard links *C* with *B*. If that hypothesis too is eliminated, then the Bombe would try *C* linked to *C*, and so on. In this way Turing's Bombe would eventually discover the correct plugboard wiring.

The ciphertext word used in the example is rather short and the Enigma machines' letter permutations were deliberately chosen in such a way that the path analyzed by the consistency test could be neatly traced. In reality longer messages far richer in logical implications were used, so that Turing's Bombe could by sheer deduction discover an entire plugboard wiring. At such a time the ticking would stop, signaling a coming explosion perhaps—but not at Bletchley Park.



World War II* U-boots *were equipped with Enigma machines

The question of plugboard wiring was just part of the cryptanalytic effort undertaken by Turing and his wartime colleagues. The daily initial rotor settings, for example, also had to be determined, as did other features of the Enigma, which I do not have the space to discuss. Suffice it to say that the group at Bletchley Park were kept extremely busy breaking the various versions of the Enigma code employed by the Germans. More important perhaps is the fact that their work, which relied on machines to break the codes generated by another machine, signaled the era of automated logic leading to modern computers.

In next month's column I shall continue this cryptological theme into the present day. For now let me just say that there are many hobbyists who practice computer cryptology in their spare time. Some have even written programs that simulate the Enigma machine and the British code-breaking effort. I am grateful to Bartosz Milewski of the University of California at Davis for the description of his rather comprehensive code-breaking package called CRYPTO. The package includes a program that breaks one-rotor Enigma codes. Readers interested in CRYPTO can write to Milewski at the Physics Department, University of California, Davis, Calif. 95616. Some readers might also want to subscribe to *The Cryptogram*, a newsletter published by the American Cryptogram Association, edited by Mike Barlow at 5052 Chestnut Avenue, Pierrefonds, Quebec, Canada H8Z 2A8.

June's column had to do with latticeworks, the intricate patterns one gets by weaving, according to certain geometric rules, lines that meander across a plane. Bob Wallis of Portola Valley, Calif., has discovered a way of generating approximately the same effect on a computer display by superposing four square grids that are shifted or rotated with respect to one another. The program, which depends on Pythagorean numbers (those that correspond to the sides of a right triangle), produces an effect that is simultaneously artistic and hallucinatory. One could get similar patterns by stacking window screens one on top of another and rotating and shifting them.

Janet A. Hoskins, a computer scientist at the University of Manitoba in Winnipeg, has programmed her microcomputer to create drawdowns, the weaver's technical term for a grid-based diagram of a fabric at the intersection of every warp and weft. Her program enables a weaver to observe immediately what effect altering threads would have on the final woven pattern. It also creates drawdowns directly from digitized images.

Finally, core warriors should note that the Third International Core War Tournament will be held on December 3-4 at the headquarters of the International Core Wars Society in Huntington Beach, Calif. Potential entrants may buy guidelines for writing battle programs for the tournament by writing to William R. Buckley, 5712 Kern Drive, Huntington Beach, Calif. 92649. All entries must be received by November 23, 1988.

FURTHER READING

CODES, CIPHERS, AND COMPUTERS: AN INTRODUCTION TO INFORMATION SECURITY. Hayden Book Company, 1982.

ALAN TURING: THE ENIGMA. Andrew Hodges. Burnett Books, 1983.

CRYPTOGRAPHY AND DATA SECURITY. Dorothy Elizabeth Robling Denning. Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, 1983.

BOOKS

A novelistic history of the AIDS epidemic demeans both investigators and patients

by William A. Blattner

AND THE BAND PLAYED ON, by Randy Shilts. St. Martin's Press ($24.95).

Major events in human history tend to spawn their chroniclers: the Trojan War inspired Homer, the decadence of the Roman Empire was chronicled in the *Satyricon* of Petronius Arbiter and its decline was analyzed by Gibbon. The AIDS pandemic also promises to take a major place in the history of our species, but it has not yet attracted a recorder of classic stature. This circumstance has left the field to Randy Shilts, a determined reporter who covers the gay community for the *San Francisco Chronicle.*

Since its publication in October, 1987, *And the Band Played On* has sold 215,000 copies in hardcover and has gone through seven printings. A paperback edition from Viking-Penguin is scheduled for publication this fall. The book has been serialized in magazines and at least one translation (into German) is planned. Clearly, this is *the* AIDS book and has been a potent factor in the public perception of the AIDS problem.

Written with conviction and passion, the story Shilts tells does not flatter its subjects. As the pandemic spreads, scientists and clinicians are shown enmeshed in battles over priority and research turf; the reaction among politicians and Administration officials ranges from indifference and a preoccupation with questions of conservative ideology to open homophobia. The media exploit the lurid aspects of the disease, playing to perceived public revulsion. These themes, explored in meticulous journalistic detail over the course of 605 pages, come together in the book's epilogue: an account of the Third International Conference on Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome, held during the summer of 1987 in Washington, D.C.

The Fourth International Conference on AIDS in Stockholm this past June brought us one year forward from the epilogue of *And the Band Played On.* Unlike the tone of discord, rancor and confrontation that typified the Washington meeting portrayed in the epilogue, there were no yellow-gloved policemen arresting death-clad activists, no open-mike remarks from politicians about "gay" men and no glamorous media events where movie stars and world leaders rubbed shoulders under the glare of omnipresent TV minicams.

Like each of its predecessors, the Fourth AIDS Congress reflected the state of response to the AIDS epidemic. As such it marked an evolution paralleling on a societal scale the progression of feelings experienced by a patient confronted with a life-threatening illness: denial and anger give way to despair, which in the best case may be followed by acceptance and coping.

As scientists of 110 nations filed into the Stockholmsmässen, a modern convention center, they showed a united determination to confront AIDS and the underlying pandemic of HIV infection as a global problem. Luc Montagnier and Robert Gallo spoke from the same podium, their visionary talks punctuated by the symbolic harmony of Sibelius, played by the Swedish National Symphony Orchestra. In contrast, Shilts's book belongs to the first stage of reaction: it is a story in which the harpies of rancor and anger establish a tone so intense that it becomes vitriolic.

Shilts's underlying premise is that America's institutions—political, scientific and media—failed. In a novelistic style *And the Band Played On* portrays the events and personalities of the early days of the epidemic. Conversations are reconstructed and events portrayed against the backdrop of a rising count of AIDS cases. This stylistic device lends a sense of growing urgency to the underlying themes of the book. A "handful of heroes," Shilts writes, "risked their reputations and often their jobs to pioneer early research on AIDS." What of their colleagues? They formed a stupefied scientific establishment that "did not at first devote appropriate attention to the epidemic because they perceived little prestige to be gained in studying a homosexual affliction." Finally, in Shilts's indictment, leading scientists "competed rather than collaborated . . . [diverting] attention and energy away from the central struggle against the disease itself."

This establishment-v.-antiestablishment theme is epitomized in the character of a young Government scientist to whom the author attributes almost clairvoyant insights about the cause of the epidemic. He is, naturally enough, Shilts's oracle on scientific issues. Juxtaposed to this proactive hero are his passive Harvard mentor and a National Cancer Institute (NCI) researcher whose discovery of the first human retrovirus is passed off as "a backward scientific affair."

Shilts's presentation is extremely readable, and it fits a common romantic stereotype. Yet the accomplishments of the scientific establishment in the seven years since the first cases of AIDS were recognized belie Shilts's assertions. It is the scientific establishment, not some romanticized scientific maverick, that has produced the spectacular and timely current accumulation of scientific knowledge about AIDS.

The description, on page 73, of a conversation in which Shilts's clairvoyant hero charts the discovery of the etiology of AIDS implies too much. In reality the concept that a human *T*-lymphotropic retrovirus causes AIDS grew out of scientific insights developed in Bethesda and Boston. Workers who had identified HTLV-I, the first human retrovirus, as one that had a predilection for *T* cells and was transmitted by blood or sexual activity related that finding to another observation, namely that certain animal leukemic viruses are also immunosuppressive. This perception underlay the scientific quest, as precipitous as it was circuitous, that in less than three

WILLIAM A. BLATTNER is chief of the viral epidemiology section of the National Cancer Institute. This review expresses his personal opinions and not necessarily those of the NCI or its parent agencies.

years proved the etiologic agent of AIDS to be a retrovirus, a type of virus that had not been reported to exist in human beings until 1980.

As a result we have a test for the early detection of HIV infection that has made the blood supply largely safe. Fundamental insights about the viral genes have led to the development of a therapy that is already prolonging the life of some infected and lethally ill patients. Such knowledge is also pointing the way to additional therapeutic strategies. Indeed, it can be convincingly argued that never has so much been accomplished so quickly in response to such a complex disease process.

Reality, however, did not provide a suitable foil for Shilts's anger or serve his antiestablishment theme. He portrays the National Institutes of Health as an intellectual country club on Rockville Pike in Bethesda, Md. Detached, self-absorbed gray-haired scientists are imagined "strolling at a leisurely pace. . .[lending] to the NIH the ambience of a golf course." There is only indirect concern for sick people. Rather, "pure science" is pursued in the hope that researchers "will stumble across discoveries that will benefit humankind." In reality the NIH, the Pasteur Institute and a host of other "establishment" research institutes around the world are centers of excellence that draw insight from often brilliant senior scientific mentors. A cadre of young and creative scientists suffuse these institutions with vitality.

It is my belief that were it not for the fundamental investment in basic research made over the past 20 years the discovery of the cause of AIDS might still elude us today. The success of science in unraveling AIDS is stark testimony to the importance of society's investment in the curiosity of scientists. That instinct is crucial to our ability to address this or any other threat to survival.

In turn, the rapid pace of discovery in the AIDS-research arena is creating a new body of knowledge and new technologies that will not only advance the treatment and prevention of AIDS but also alter fundamental insights into a variety of important diseases ranging from cancer to neurodegenerative and rheumatic diseases. The fruits of scientific discovery, while never predictable, are the product of creativity and rigorous inquiry. They do not result from random "stumbling."

Shilts's account of the financial plight of the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) during the critical early days of the epidemic is testimony to the need to support basic research adequately. As the politics of the budget-cutting process bit deeply into the core of national disease-surveillance efforts at the CDC, the ability to detect links between geographically disparate clusters of AIDS cases was jeopardized. The absence of sufficient resources during those days emphasizes the fact that each link of the public-health and research chain is vital to the others. To be sure, the issue of timely funding for research was a problem, which was compounded by severe budget cuts, and it is still an issue being hotly debated today.

Whether the allocation of additional resources early in the epidemic would have altered the timing of the discovery of its cause—as Shilts assumes—is hard to gauge. Experiments take time, and in truth there was only a very small group of scientists who had the proper tools, scientific background and perspective for making the key discoveries. Certainly there was no time to develop that expertise ab initio in the course of a grave epidemic.

Finally, the response of scientists themselves to such a crisis, although it is a complex issue, was certainly not dominated by antihomosexual prejudice, as Shilts charges. It is human nature to accept the validity of one's scientific intellectual investment. How easy can it be to redirect this investment of ego and intellect, particularly when the experiments are going well and funding and publications reinforce the importance of one's work? What Shilts sees as prejudice was inertia. In addressing the scientific response to AIDS, his discussion is simplistic and his antiestablishment biases lead to a distorted perception of reality. These issues need to be assessed in depth as science explores and shares with the public the lessons to be learned from this unprecedented crisis. Unfortunately Shilts does not promote this process.

Shilts displays a discouraging lack of scholarship. Hearsay replaces careful reading of the scientific literature. This is well illustrated in the uncritically propagated innuendo surrounding the scientific competition between Montagnier and Gallo. Yet careful reading of the literature (as summarized in "The Chronology of AIDS Research," *Nature,* Vol. 326, pages 435–436, April 2, 1987, as well as in publications cited there) reveals the chain of discoveries by Montagnier and Gallo that led to the cause of AIDS. The facts of this literature are not presented by Shilts. Thus the reader of *And the Band Played On* is led to the conclusion that allocation of equal credit for the codiscovery of the AIDS agent to Gallo and Montagnier was the result of some political compromise.

In his epilogue Shilts refers to the chronological information as a "pleasant fiction." Such an offhand dismissal of a body of published literature to which honorable men and women have lent their names strongly suggests that Shilts chose his facts carefully: those that support his thesis of indifference, selfishness and bigotry are highlighted, and those that do not are played down or characterized in a derogatory fashion.

Shilts's rendition of the epidemiologic sleuthing that led to the recognition that AIDS is an infectious disease is engaging, but he promotes mythology at the expense of reality. To be sure, he portrays skillfully the individual clinicians and city, state and Federal epidemiologists who pulled together the first threads of evidence linking epidemics of Kaposi's sarcoma and opportunistic infections in young homosexual men. He shows how clinicians connected these cases to similar disease clusters among blood-product recipients, intravenous drug abusers and children. It is true too that the story of patient "zero," the index subject from a case-linkage analysis by the CDC, provides a useful literary device for helping the reader to understand how the AIDS agent spread so rapidly and widely within the gay community. But Shilts's tendency to personify leads him astray. Patient zero, a French Canadian airline steward, was not literally—as the author suggests he was—the first patient to be infected with HIV. He was only one among many contemporaries who simultaneously propagated the unrecognized spread of the AIDS agent.

One useful contribution made by Shilts's book is its portrayal of the sexually active lifestyle that constitutes such an effective vector for HIV. Shilts clouds even this contribution to public understanding by distorting history. In the early 1980's epidemiology and pathogenesis were blurred by diverse information. Until the picture came into focus, the fact that AIDS was a transmissible disease competed with a variety of alternate etiologic hypotheses. Yet Shilts's chief scientific protagonist is portrayed as having the answer but no

SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN

CORRESPONDENCE

Offprints of more than 1,000 selected articles from earlier issues of this magazine, listed in an annual catalogue, are available at $1.25 each. Correspondence, orders and requests for the catalogue should be addressed to W. H. Freeman and Company, 4419 West 1980 South, Salt Lake City, Utah 84104. Offprints adopted for classroom use may be ordered direct or through a college bookstore. Sets of 10 or more Offprints are collated by the publisher and are delivered as sets to bookstores.

Photocopying rights are hereby granted by Scientific American, Inc., to libraries and others registered with the Copyright Clearance Center (CCC) to photocopy articles in this issue of SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN for the flat fee of $1.25 per copy of each article or any part thereof. Such clearance does not extend to the photocopying of articles for promotion or other commercial purposes. Correspondence and payment should be addressed to Copyright Clearance Center, Inc., 21 Congress Street, Salem, Mass. 01970. Specify CCC Reference Number ISSN 0036-8733/88. $1.25 + 0.00.

Editorial correspondence should be addressed to The Editors, SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, 415 Madison Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10017. Manuscripts are submitted at the authors' risk and will not be returned unless accompanied by postage.

Advertising correspondence should be addressed to Advertising Manager, SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, 415 Madison Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10017.

Address subscription correspondence to Subscription Manager, SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, P.O. Box 3187, Harlan, IA. 51593. The date of the last issue on subscriptions appears at the right-hand corner of each month's mailing label. For change of address notify us at least four weeks in advance. Please send your old address (if convenient, on a mailing label of a recent issue) as well as the new one.

Name

New Address

Street

City

State and ZIP

Old Address

Street

City

State and ZIP

resources for discovering the retroviral cause of AIDS; the remainder of the scientific community is either blind or unwilling to accept his insight.

The facts belie this assertion. Investigators in Bethesda, Boston and Paris were intrigued by a retroviral cause, but it was only one of many hypotheses that had to be explored. When he emphasizes the competition among the various workers, Shilts overlooks the ambiguous nature of reality in another respect. Competition is part of the scientific process, as is cooperation. Significant and documentable cooperation existed during those years, manifested by the exchange of reagents and information and even of personnel between the laboratories of HIV's codiscoverers.

Although Shilts's book is filled with novelistic detail in the tradition of *In Cold Blood* and *All the President's Men,* his portrayal of people is two-dimensional. For example, Luc Montagnier of the Pasteur Institute is a vague presence whose contribution to science is overshadowed by the more flamboyant presence of his junior colleagues. Here and elsewhere Shilts missed an opportunity. Scientists are real people, complex and multidimensional. They have their faults and foibles as well as human dignity and the potential for greatness that exists in each of us.

Shilts simplistically classifies his universe of characters into either hero or villain, good or bad, fair-minded or homophobic. The story of Dr. Mervyn Silverman, the former director of the San Francisco Department of Public Health and current president of the American Foundation for AIDS Research, is a case in point. According to Shilts, Silverman "had left an ambiguous legacy" as he grappled with the politically charged AIDS-prevention decisions of the earliest days of the epidemic in San Francisco. Shilts's ultimate judgment: Dr. Silverman's story demonstrates that "people of good intentions would ultimately do far less harm...than...people of bad intentions." In this regard, Silverman becomes a symbol, losing his humanity to Shilts's portrayal. Furthermore, to the detriment of many people, once Shilts identifies his heroes they are deified in a kind of pantheon; the villains he consigns to Hades never get a second chance.

The story of AIDS is still in its early stages; how it will end cannot be described with anything approaching certainty. Yet the positive aspects of the response to AIDS (the agent has been identified, the blood supply protected and promising chemotherapies and immunotherapies have been discovered) are the fruits of the scientific process. If AIDS and other such challenges to our species are to be met successfully this process must be understood and fostered by lay citizens as well as by scientists.

Regrettably, the reader of *And the Band Played On* will gain little sense of how scientific research is conducted. Shilts focuses on controversy and personality rather than on process. In the real world, scientific understanding does not proceed from insight to discovery in a straight line but follows a tortuous and sometimes convoluted path. Scientific discovery draws on failed experiments as well as successful ones.

Shilts simply does not do justice to the complexity of information that confronted the scientific community in tracking the elusive etiology of AIDS. Even during the critical months in late 1983 and early 1984 when the secrets of the cause of the epidemic were finally unraveled in Paris and Bethesda, claims that various viruses, bacteria, fungi and even noninfectious agents (including the drug amylnitrite and overexposure to sperm) were the cause continued to surface on a regular basis.

The fact is that AIDS is a master imitator. As the immune system is destroyed, a rich panoply of microscopic and submicroscopic organisms find a hospitable milieu. A major challenge was to sort out what was cause and what was effect. That was the challenge when Montagnier first cultured and photographed the causative agent. Was this retrovirus yet another passenger? In fact, were it not for the earlier discovery of HTLV-I and the development of associated techniques, it is doubtful that anyone would have believed that a human retrovirus existed, much less that it could be the cause of AIDS.

In place of this complexity the author dramatizes the plight of his scientific protagonist. Like his index case, Shilts's clairvoyant scientific hero is a literary figment who restructures reality for a good read.

Another recurring oversimplification is the concept of before and after. The most prominent example is the public disclosure of Rock Hudson's AIDS illness. In the case of Hudson's death the "before" was the long period of indifference that persisted within important segments of the nation's political leadership. The "after" was

the response of politicians, the press and society itself to this highly publicized event.

There is a better example of the before-and-after paradigm. Four reports from Gallo's laboratory were published together within a year of Montagnier's paper. Those reports proved beyond a shadow of a doubt that HIV was the etiologic agent. Before those publications in the May 4, 1984, issue of *Science* there was no clear cause. After that date all research could focus on preventing infection by understanding the modes of transmission, developing rationally targeted therapies and searching for a vaccine.

Yet "before and after" is an oversimplification that does not do justice to the intricacies of the research paths, followed by many scientists, that led to Montagnier and Gallo's fundamental discovery. This utterly naive assertion that "the AIDS virus was not a particularly difficult microbe to find" trivializes the scientific process; it demeans the brilliance of the scientists who grappled with this formidable adversary.

And The Band Played On appears to be a weighty tome. Yet it is oddly repetitive, even static, in its development. Although the themes are defined early and often, these issues too do not grow and evolve as one progresses through the 600-plus pages. Instead they are restated in a heavy-handed way. Among those injured by this approach are the men and women whose poignant lives and deaths arouse Shilts's anger and compassion. His need to prove a point converts these individuals into thematic symbols. In his overriding effort to browbeat the reader with the failings of society's response to AIDS, he manages to dehumanize the very people whose stories bring home the tragedy.

To me the ultimate sadness of this book is that it represents a lost opportunity. Shilts's position and accomplishments as a journalist who could gain entry both into the gay world and into the world of science and public policy presented a unique opportunity. He could have helped his fellow citizens to share in the effort to cope with AIDS and to understand the tragedy of those afflicted with the disease, so that this challenge and others like it can be surmounted. Perhaps, back in 1987, emotion precluded the writing of such a book. Perhaps another chronicler will find the positive threads in the AIDS story; they are strong enough to produce unity, and therefore hope.

ESSAY

AIDS: An unknown distance still to go

by Lewis Thomas

In a long lifetime of looking at biomedical research, I have never seen anything to touch the progress that has already been made in laboratories working on the AIDS virus. Considering that the disease was recognized only seven years ago and that its agent, HIV, is one of the most complex and baffling organisms on earth, the achievement is an astonishment.

If AIDS had first appeared 10 or 15 years ago, before the research technologies of molecular biology had developed the marvelous tool of recombinant DNA, we would still be completely stuck, quite unable even to make intelligent guesses about the cause of the disease. Thanks to the new methods, which emerged from entirely basic research having nothing at all to do with any medical problem, we now know more about HIV's structure, molecular composition, behavior and target cells than about those of any other virus in the world. The work, in short, is going well. But it is in its early stages, and there is an unknown distance still to go. At the moment three lines of research seem to me to hold the most promise, and already there is a conspicuous shortfall in the funds needed for each of them.

One approach, the most direct of the three but perhaps the most difficult and unpredictable, is in the field of pharmacology. We need a new class of antiviral drugs capable of killing off viruses inside the cells they invade, without killing the cells themselves. These drugs must be comparable in effectiveness to the antibiotics that began to be deployed against bacterial infections 50 years ago. There are a few partially active drugs that may turn out to be the primitive precursors of such a class, but their effectiveness is still incomplete, they are temporarily palliative at best and their toxicity is unacceptable. However, there are no theoretical barriers to the development of decisively effective antivirals, including drugs to stop the replication of retroviruses such as HIV. What is urgently required—is indispensable, in fact—is some new and very deep information about the intimate details of retroviruses and the enzyme systems that enable them to penetrate and multiply within the target cells that are their specialty.

Second, we need an abundance of new information about how the human immune system can neutralize HIV. Even if and when an antiviral drug is in hand that really works to control infection in individual cases, the only imaginable way to prevent the continuing spread of HIV will be by means of a vaccine. The design of a vaccine calls for better understanding of the molecular labels at the surface of the virus and knowledge of which among these labels represents a point of vulnerability for an immune response. Since this particular virus has the strange property of changing its labels from time to time—even at different stages of the disease in the same patient—this will be no easy task. A few vaccine trials are already under way in small cohorts of human subjects. There is no reason to be optimistic about these at the present time, nor is there any way to hurry things up. With a lot of luck, some laboratory may succeed in identifying a stable and genuinely vulnerable target molecule in HIV, and then a vaccine will be feasible.

A third line of research involves the human immune system itself, the primary victim of HIV. Most, if not all, patients with AIDS die from other kinds of infection rather than from any direct, lethal action of the virus itself. The process is a subtle one, something like an end game in chess. What the virus does, selectively and with exquisite precision, is to take out the population of lymphocytes responsible for defending the body against all sorts of microbes in the world outside, most of which are harmless to healthy human beings. In a sense, the patients are not dying because of the HIV virus; they are being killed by great numbers of other bacteria and viruses that can now swarm into a defenseless host. Research is needed to gain a deeper understanding of the biology of the immune cells, in the hope of preserving them or replacing them by transplanting normal immune cells. This may be necessary even if viricidal drugs are developed : by the time such drugs destroy the virus in some patients, the immune system may already have been wiped out, and the only open course will be to replace it.

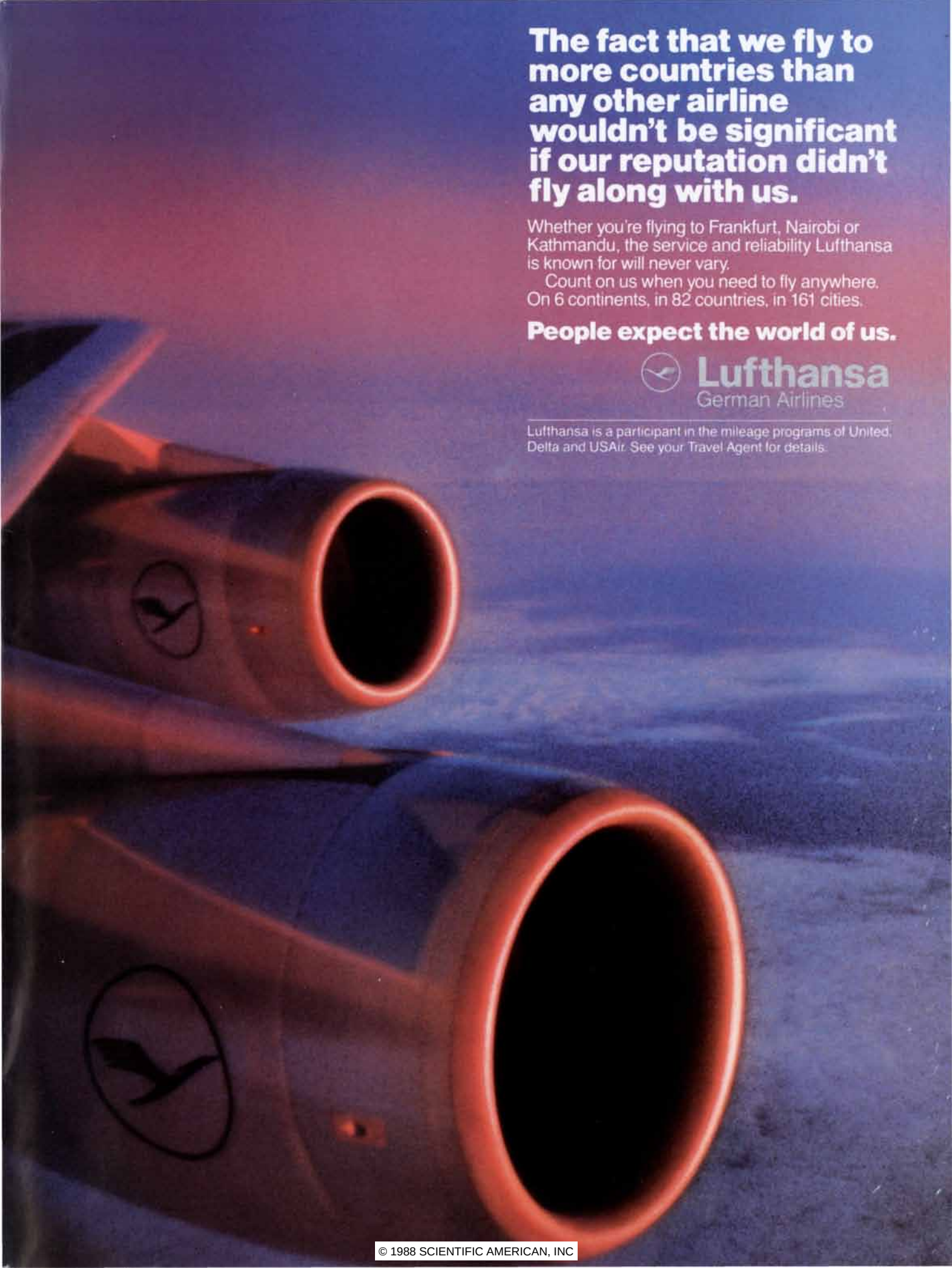
This third line of investigation had become one of the liveliest fields in basic immunology long before the appearance of AIDS, and what is now needed is an intensification of the research. In my own view (perhaps biased because of my background in immunology), it is the most urgent and potentially promising of all current approaches to the AIDS problem.

To sum up, AIDS is a scientific research problem, to be solved only by basic investigation in good laboratories. The research done in the past few years has been elegant and highly productive, with results that tell us one sure thing: AIDS is a soluble problem, albeit an especially complex and difficult one. No one can predict at this stage how it will turn out or where the really decisive answers will be found, but the possibilities are abundant and the prospects are bright.

It is particularly encouraging that the basic research most needed is being conducted by collaborative groups in both academic and industrial establishments. That is a new phenomenon in this country, well worth noting in the present context. Until just recently—the past decade or so—the university laboratories and their counterparts in the pharmaceutical industry tended to hold apart from each other, indeed rather looked down their noses at each other. It took the biological revolution of the 1970's, and specifically the new technologies of recombinant DNA and monoclonal antibodies, to bring scientists from both communities into a close intellectual relation. Now the lines we used to think of as separating basic and applied research into two distinct categories have become more and more blurred. Academic and industrial scientists recognize that they are in the same line of work, and research partnerships are being set up all over the place.

I take this to be an exceedingly healthy transformation in our institutions. One response to the development will have to be the recruiting and training of more bright young people for the work ahead. As an academic, I am delighted to see so many university scientists eyeing new horizons and thinking of career possibilities in industry. It is a good sign for the future of this country in our competition with others in pharmaceutical science, and a good sign as well for the solution to the AIDS problem.

LEWIS THOMAS is president emeritus of the Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center and scholar in residence at the Cornell University Medical College.



DEWAR'S PROFILE:

PETER NORTON

AGE: 43.

HOME: Santa Monica, California.

PROFESSION: Computer wizard. Chairman and CEO, Peter Norton Computing Inc.

HOBBY: Making contributions to L.A.'s many art museums. "When life hands you a large slice of the pie, you share."

LAST BOOK READ: *Don Quixote*, Miguel de Cervantes.

LATEST ACCOMPLISHMENT: Seeing his name in lights. At the Museum of Neon Art where he's on the board of directors.

WHY I DO WHAT I DO: "As a kid, I loved those things on your coat that were supposed to keep you from losing your mittens. Who else would design a program to find information 'lost' in your computer and then build a business on it?"

QUOTE: "I can't believe my life is happening to me."

PROFILE: Quiet, committed and independent. "Not really. I'm just your classic nerd who got lucky."

HIS SCOTCH: Dewar's® "White Label" with water. "It's as much of a splash as I'll ever make."